MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 24

The History of the Lombards

Paul the Deacon

Historia Langobardorum

The History of the Lombards

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

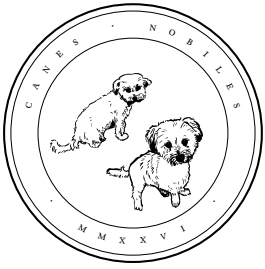


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 24 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows the school edition of Ludwig Bethmann
and Georg Waitz, from the Monumenta Germaniae Historica (Hanover, 1878)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

BOOK I

I · Germany, Mother of Nations 15
II · The Island of Scadinavia 17
III · Ibor and Aio, and Their Mother Gambara 18
IV · The Seven Sleepers of Germany 19
V · The Scritobini, and the Lengths of Shadows 20
VI · The Two Whirlpools of the Ocean 23
VII · The Winnili in Scoringa, and the Vandals' Demand 27
VIII · The Foolish Tale of Godan and Frea 28
IX · Why the Winnili Were Called Lombards 29
X · The Lombards Defeat the Vandals, and Their Famine 30
XI · The Assipitti Bar the Way to Mauringa 31
XII · The Single Combat 32
XIII · The Lombards in Mauringa and Beyond 33
XIV · Agelmund, the First King 34
XV · Lamissio, the Child of the Fishpond 35
XVI · The Bulgars Kill King Agelmund 38
XVII · King Lamissio Defeats the Bulgars 39
XVIII · Lethu, Hildeoc, and Gudeoc 41
XIX · Odoacer Destroys the Rugians 42
XX · Tato Destroys the Heruli 44

BOOK I

(continued)

XXI · Wacho, His Wives and Daughters, and Waltari 49
XXII · Audoin Leads the Lombards into Pannonia 51
XXIII · Alboin Kills the Son of the Gepid King 51
XXIV · Alboin at Turisind's Table 53
XXV · Justinian, His Victories, and His Laws 56
XXVI · Saint Benedict, and Paul's Verses on Him 59
XXVII · Alboin Defeats Cunimund and Takes Rosamund 74

BOOK II

I · Lombards Fight for Narses against the Goths 79
II · Narses Defeats Buccelin and Amingus 80
III · Narses Hangs Sinduald 82
IV · The Plague in Liguria 83
V · Narses Invites the Lombards into Italy 86
VI · Alboin Calls on the Saxons 89
VII · The Lombards Leave Pannonia 90
VIII · The King's Mountain, and the Bison 91
IX · Gisulf Made Duke of Friuli 92
X · The Frankish Kings, Pope Benedict, and Patriarch Paul 94
XI · The Death of Narses 96
XII · Bishop Felix Meets Alboin at the Piave 96
XIII · Venantius Fortunatus 97
XIV · Alboin Takes Venetia, and the Bounds of the Province 101
XV · Liguria and the Two Raetias 102
XVI · The Cottian Alps, Tuscany, and Umbria 103
XVII · Campania, and Lucania with Bruttium 104
XVIII · The Apennine Alps and Emilia 105
XIX · Flaminia and Picenum 107

BOOK II

(continued)

XX · Valeria with Nursia, and Samnium 108
XXI · Apulia with Calabria 110
XXII · Sicily, Corsica, and Sardinia 111
XXIII · Cisalpine Gaul, and the Coming of the Gauls 112
XXIV · The Names of Italy 114
XXV · Alboin Takes Milan and Liguria 115
XXVI · The Siege of Pavia, and the Peoples Alboin Brought 116
XXVII · Alboin Enters Pavia 117
XXVIII · Rosamund Has Alboin Killed 119
XXIX · Helmechis and Rosamund Flee to Ravenna and Die 122
XXX · Albsuinda Sent East, and Peredeo's Revenge 124
XXXI · King Cleph 126
XXXII · Ten Years under the Dukes 127

BOOK III

I · Hospitius Foretells the Lombards' Coming 129
II · The Lombard Who Tried to Kill Hospitius 131
III · Amatus Defeated and Killed 133
IV · Mummolus Defeats the Lombards 134
V · Mummolus Defeats the Saxons 135
VI · The Saxons Leave Italy through Gaul 136
VII · The Saxons Beaten by the Suevi 138
VIII · Amo, Zaban, and Rodanus Raid Gaul 140
IX · Anagnis, Ragilo, Chramnichis, and Euin 142
X · Sigibert Killed, and Euin's Marriage 143

BOOK III

(continued)

XI · Justin the Younger and Tiberius Caesar 144
XII · The Treasures of Tiberius Constantine 147
XIII · The Gold Sent to Chilperic, Gregory, and Classe 151
XIV · Patriarch Probinus Dies; Elias Succeeds 153
XV · Tiberius Dies; Maurice Emperor 153
XVI · King Authari, and the Peace of His Reign 155
XVII · Childebert Invades and Makes Peace 156
XVIII · Brescello Taken, and Droctulft Flees 157
XIX · Droctulft's Death and Epitaph 158
XX · Pope Pelagius and the Error of Elias 161
XXI · Childebert's War with Spain, and Ingund 162
XXII · A Frankish Army Returns without Gain 163
XXIII · The Flood, and the Wonder at Saint Zeno's 164
XXIV · Gregory Made Pope, and the Plague at Rome 165
XXV · Gregory Converts the English 167
XXVI · Patriarch Severus and His Error 168
XXVII · Euin in Istria, and Francio at Comacina 170
XXVIII · Authari Seeks Childebert's Sister 171
XXIX · The Lombards Destroy a Frankish Army 172
XXX · Authari Woos Theudelinda 173
XXXI · A Second Frankish Invasion and Dysentery 178
XXXII · Authari at Reggio 182
XXXIII · Zotto, First Duke of Benevento 183
XXXIV · Guntram's Vision of Treasure 183
XXXV · Authari Dies; Theudelinda Chooses Agilulf 186

BOOK IV

I · Agilulf Ransoms the Captives 189
II · Drought and Locusts 190
III · Mimulf Killed, and the Revolts of Gaidulf and Ulfari 191
IV · Plague, Childebert's War, and Portents 192
V · Gregory Sends the Dialogues to Theudelinda 193
VI · Theudelinda's Good Works 194
VII · Tassilo Made King of the Bavarians 195
VIII · Romanus Retakes Cities, and Agilulf's Peace 195
IX · Gregory's Letters to Theudelinda and Agilulf 197
X · A Comet, Deaths, and the Bavarians 200
XI · Childebert Dies, and the Avars in Thuringia 201
XII · Peace with the Khagan and with Gallicinus 202
XIII · Peace with the Franks, and Rebels Killed 202
XIV · Plague at Ravenna, Mortality at Verona 203
XV · A Bloody Sign, and War among the Franks 203
XVI · Ariulf and the Martyr Savinus 204
XVII · The Lombards Sack Monte Cassino 206
XVIII · Arichis Succeeds Zotto at Benevento 207
XIX · Gregory's Letter to Arichis 208
XX · Agilulf's Daughter Taken; Shipwrights for the Khagan 209
XXI · Theudelinda's Basilica at Monza 210
XXII · The Palace at Monza and Lombard Dress 211
XXIII · Padua Destroyed 212
XXIV · Peace with the Avars, and Istria Laid Waste 213

BOOK IV

(continued)

XXV · Adaloald Born; Monselice Taken 214
XXVI · The Death of Maurice 214
XXVII · Gaidoald and Gisulf Reconciled; Adaloald Baptized 215
XXVIII · Cremona and Mantua Taken, and a Peace 216
XXIX · Gregory's Death and His Humility 217
XXX · Adaloald Raised King; Peace with the Franks 220
XXXI · War with the Saxons, and Lightning at Pavia 220
XXXII · Peace with Smaragdus, and Cities of Tuscany Taken 221
XXXIII · Two Patriarchs 222
XXXIV · John of Conza and Eleutherius 223
XXXV · Peace with the Emperor 224
XXXVI · Phocas, the Pantheon, and Heraclius 224
XXXVII · Romilda Betrays Friuli, and Paul's Ancestors 226
XXXVIII · Taso and Cacco Killed by Treachery 237
XXXIX · Grasulf, and Radoald and Grimoald at Benevento 239
XL · Peace, Istria Plundered, and Deaths 240
XLI · Agilulf Dies; Adaloald, Arioald, and Columbanus 241
XLII · Rothari, His Edict, and Aio's Madness 243
XLIII · The Death of Arichis 245
XLIV · Aio Killed; Radoald Avenges Him 246
XLV · Rothari's Conquests 247
XLVI · Grimoald Duke of Benevento 248
XLVII · Rothari Dies; Rodoald and Gundiperga 249
XLVIII · Rodoald Killed; Aripert King 251
XLIX · The Successors of Heraclius 252

BOOK IV

(continued)

L · Cesara, Queen of the Persians 253
LI · Aripert's Sons, and Grimoald Takes the Kingdom 255

BOOK V

I · Grimoald Marries Aripert's Daughter 261
II · Perctarit Returns and Escapes Again 262
III · Grimoald Spares the Chamberlain and Unulf 268
IV · Unulf and the Chamberlain Go to Perctarit 272
V · Grimoald Defeats the Franks at Rivus 273
VI · Constans Comes to Italy 274
VII · Constans Besieges Benevento 276
VIII · Sesuald's Message from the Walls 279
IX · Mitola Strikes the Emperor's Army 280
X · Romuald Defeats Saburrus 281
XI · Constans Plunders Rome and Sicily and Is Killed 283
XII · Mecetius' Usurpation and Death 285
XIII · The Saracens Sack Syracuse 286
XIV · The Death of Gisa 287
XV · Rains and Thunder 287
XVI · Transamund Made Duke of Spoleto 288
XVII · Ago and Lupus at Friuli 289
XVIII · Lupus Rebels 290
XIX · Lupus Fights the Avars 290
XX · Lupus Killed, and Friuli Ravaged 292
XXI · Grimoald's Ruse against the Avars 293
XXII · Arnefrit Killed at Nimis 294

BOOK V

(continued)

XXIII · Wechtari Routs the Slavs 295
XXIV · Landari and Rodoald 297
XXV · Romuald Marries Lupus' Daughter 297
XXVI · Grimoald Punishes the Deserters 298
XXVII · Forlimpopoli Destroyed 298
XXVIII · Oderzo Destroyed 299
XXIX · Alzeco and the Bulgars at Benevento 300
XXX · Constantine Emperor; Theodore in Britain 301
XXXI · A Comet, Plague, and Pope Donus 302
XXXII · Perctarit Plans to Go to Britain 303
XXXIII · Grimoald Dies; Perctarit Returns 304
XXXIV · Perctarit's Monastery and Rodelinda's Church 306
XXXV · Cunincpert Made Co-ruler 308
XXXVI · Alahis' First Rebellion 308
XXXVII · Perctarit Dies; Cunincpert and Theodote 310
XXXVIII · Alahis Seizes Pavia 312
XXXIX · Cunincpert Regains His Palace 315
XL · Battle of Coronate; the Deacon Seno 319
XLI · Cunincpert's Victory 323

BOOK VI

I · Romuald Takes Taranto; Theuderada's Convent 327
II · Romuald's Successors, and Benedict's Bones Taken 328
III · Ansfrit Seizes Friuli 330
IV · The Sixth Council, and Damian's Letter 331
V · Eclipses and Plague at Rome and Pavia 333

BOOK VI

(continued)

VI · The Fly with One Foot 335
VII · Felix the Grammarian 337
VIII · John, Bishop of Bergamo 338
IX · A Darkened Star, and Vesuvius Erupts 339
X · The Saracens Destroy Carthage 340
XI · Justinian, the Saracens, and Pope Sergius 340
XII · Leo Exiles Justinian 342
XIII · Tiberius Deposes Leo 342
XIV · The Synod of Aquileia Accepts the Fifth Council 343
XV · Cædwalla Baptized at Rome 344
XVI · The Mayors of the Palace, and Arnulf 346
XVII · Cunincpert Dies; Liutpert King 348
XVIII · Raginpert Seizes the Kingdom 349
XIX · Aripert Captures Liutpert 350
XX · Rotharit's Fall and Liutpert's Death 351
XXI · Ansprand Flees to Bavaria 352
XXII · Aripert's Cruelty to Ansprand's Family 353
XXIII · Anschis, Mayor of the Palace 354
XXIV · Ferdulf and the Disaster of Friuli 355
XXV · Corvulus Blinded 359
XXVI · Pemmo and His Sons 359
XXVII · Gisulf of Benevento Raids Campania 361
XXVIII · Aripert Restores the Cottian Alps 362
XXIX · Benedict of Milan 363
XXX · Faroald and Wachilap at Spoleto 364
XXXI · Justinian Regains the Empire 364

BOOK VI

(continued)

XXXII · Philippicus Kills Justinian 366
XXXIII · Serenus Patriarch 367
XXXIV · Philippicus and Anastasius 367
XXXV · Aripert Drowns; Ansprand and Liutprand 369
XXXVI · Theodosius Emperor, and the Tiber Floods 372
XXXVII · English Pilgrims, and Pippin 373
XXXVIII · Liutprand and Rothari's Plot 374
XXXIX · Romuald Duke of Benevento 376
XL · Petronax Restores Monte Cassino 377
XLI · Leo Emperor 379
XLII · Charles Defeats Ragamfred 380
XLIII · Liutprand Confirms the Donation and Marries 381
XLIV · Faroald Takes Classe; Theudo at Rome 382
XLV · Callistus Patriarch; Pemmo Defeats the Slavs 383
XLVI · The Saracens in Spain and Aquitaine 385
XLVII · The Saracens before Constantinople 386
XLVIII · Augustine's Bones Brought to Pavia 387
XLIX · Liutprand's Conquests, and Leo's Iconoclasm 388
L · Romuald and His Wives 390
LI · Pemmo against Callistus 391
LII · Ratchis against the Slavs 394
LIII · Liutprand Cuts Pippin's Hair 395
LIV · The Saracens in Gaul, and Liutprand's Wars 396
LV · Transamund, Gregory, and Hildeprand 398
LVI · Godescalc, and the Fight in the Pentapolis 400
LVII · Liutprand at Spoleto and Benevento 402
LVIII · Liutprand's Buildings and Death 403

BOOK I

De Germania, quod plures nutriat populos, ideoque ex ea multae gentes egrediantur

I · GERMANY, MOTHER OF NATIONS

The cold north breeds people as the hot south breeds disease, and so the whole region from the Don westward is called Germany. From its crowded lands captives are sold southward, and whole nations have gone out to afflict Asia and Europe, Italy above all. So too the Winnili, that is the Lombards, come from the island of Scadinavia.

Septemtrionalis plaga quanto magis ab aestu solis remota est
the-northern region by-as-much more from the-heat of-the-sun removed it-is
et nivali frigore gelida, tanto salubrior corporibus hominum
and with-snowy cold frozen by-so-much healthier for-the-bodies of-men
et propagandis est gentibus coaptata; sicut econtra omnis
and for-to-be-propagated it-is peoples fitted as on-the-contrary every
meridiana regio, quo solis est fervori vicinior, eo
southern region by-as-much-as of-the-sun it-is to-the-heat nearer by-so-much
semper morbis habundat et educandis minus est apta
always with-diseases abounds and for-to-be-reared less it-is fit
mortalibus. Unde fit, ut tantae populorum multitudines
mortals whence it-comes that such-great of-peoples multitudes
arctoo sub axe oriantur, ut non inmerito universa illa regio
arctic under the-axis arise that not undeservedly the-whole that region
Tanai tenus usque ad occiduum, licet et propriis loca
the-Tanais as-far-as all-the-way to the-west although also by-their-own the-places
in ea singula nuncupentur nominibus, generali tamen vocabulo
in it single be-named names by-the-general yet word
Germania vocitetur; quamvis et duas ultra Rhenum provincias
Germany be-called although also two beyond the-Rhine provinces
Romani, cum ea loca occupassent, superiorem inferioremque
the-Romans when those places they-had-occupied upper and-lower

Germaniam dixerint. Ab hac ergo populosa Germania saepe
Germany they-called from this therefore populous Germany often
innumerabiles captivorum turmae abductae meridianis populis
countless of-captives troops led-off to-southern peoples
pretio distrahuntur. Multae quoque ex ea, pro eo quod
for-a-price are-sold-off many also from it for this that
tantos mortalium germinat, quantos alere vix sufficit, saepe
so-many mortals it-produces as-many-as to-feed scarcely it-suffices often
gentes egressae sunt, quae nihilominus et partes Asiae,
peoples gone-out have which nonetheless also the-parts of-Asia
sed maxime sibi contiguam Europam adflixerunt. Testantur
but most to-itself adjoining Europe afflicted bear-witness
hoc ubique urbes erutae per totam Illiricum Galliamque,
to-this everywhere cities overthrown through all Illyricum and-Gaul
sed maxime miserae Italiae, quae pene omnium illarum
but most of-wretched Italy which almost of-all those
est gentium experta saevitiam. Gothi siquidem Wandalique,
has peoples experienced the-savagery the-Goths indeed and-the-Vandals
Rugi, Heroli atque Turcilingi, necnon etiam et aliae feroces
Rugians Heruli and Turcilingi and also even other fierce
et barbarae nationes e Germania prodierunt. Pari etiam
and barbarous nations from Germany came-forth by-equal also
modo et Winnilorum, hoc est Langobardorum, gens, quae
way also of-the-Winnili that is of-the-Lombards the-people which
postea in Italia feliciter regnavit, a Germanorum populis
afterward in Italy happily reigned from of-the-Germans the-peoples
originem ducens, licet et aliae causae egressionis eorum
origin drawing although also other causes of-going-out their
asseverentur, ab insula quae Scadinavia dicitur adventavit.
be-asserted from the-island which Scadinavia is-called came

De Scadinavia insula, et quia ex ea Winilorum, hoc est Langobardorum, gens est egressa

II · THE ISLAND OF SCADINAVIA

Pliny mentions the island, which those who have seen it say is less set in the sea than washed round by it over its low shores. When its people grow too many to live together, they divide into three parts and cast lots for which shall leave and seek a new home.

Cuius insulae etiam Plinius Secundus in libris, quos de
of-which island also Pliny Secundus in the-books which about
natura rerum conposuit, mentionem facit. Haec igitur insula,
the-nature of-things he-composed mention makes this therefore island
sicut retulerunt nobis qui eam lustraverunt, non tam in
as reported to-us those-who it traversed not so-much in
mari est posita, quam marinis fluctibus propter planitiem
the-sea is placed as by-sea waves on-account-of the-flatness
marginum terras ambientibus circumfusa. Intra hanc ergo
of-the-shores the-lands surrounding poured-around within this therefore
constituti populi dum in tantam multitudinem pullulassent,
settled peoples when into such-great a-multitude they-had-sprouted
ut iam simul habitare non valerent, in tres, ut fertur,
that now together to-dwell not they-were-able into three as is-said
omnem catervam partes dividentes, quae ex illis pars patriam
the-whole band parts dividing which from them part the-fatherland
relinquere novasque deberet sedes exquirere, sorte perquirunt.
to-leave and-new should seats to-seek by-lot they-search-out

Quod Ibor et Aio primi duces Winilorum cum matre sua Gambara fuerunt

III · IBOR AND AIO, AND THEIR MOTHER GAMBARA

The part the lot sends out chooses two brothers as dukes, Ibor and Aio, young and outstanding, and sets out to find land to settle. Their mother Gambara is sharp of mind and wise in counsel, and they trust her prudence when matters are in doubt.

Igitur ea pars, cui sors dederat genitale solum excedere
therefore that part to-which the-lot had-given the-native soil to-leave
exteraque arva sectari, ordinatis super se duobus ducibus,
and-foreign fields to-pursue appointed over themselves two dukes
Ibor scilicet et Aionem, qui et germani erant et iuvenili
Ibor namely and Aio who also brothers were and in-youthful
aetate floridi et ceteris praestantiores, ad exquirendas
age blooming and than-the-rest more-excellent for seeking-out
quas possint incolere terras sedesque statuere, valedicentes
which they-could inhabit lands and-seats to-establish bidding-farewell
suis simul et patriae, iter arripiunt. Horum
to-their-people together and to-the-fatherland the-journey seize of-these
erat ducum mater nomine Gambara, mulier quantum inter
was of-the-dukes the-mother by-name Gambara a-woman as-far-as among
suos et ingenio acris et consiliis provida; de cuius in
her-people both in-wit sharp and in-counsels provident in whose in
rebus dubiis prudentia non minimum confidebant.
matters doubtful prudence not least they-trusted

De septem viris apud Germaniam dormientibus

IV · THE SEVEN SLEEPERS OF GERMANY

Paul pauses to tell of a wonder. In a cave on the ocean shore in the far northwest of Germany seven men lie asleep, their bodies and clothes unharmed after so many years, dressed like Romans and revered by the barbarians. A man who tries to strip one has his arms wither, and perhaps they are kept to preach to those nations one day.

Haut ab re esse arbitror, paulisper narrandi ordinem
not from the-matter to-be I-think for-a-little-while of-narrating the-order
postponere, et quia adhuc stilus in Germania vertitur,
to-put-off and because still the-pen in Germany is-turned
miraculum, quod illic apud omnes celebre habetur, seu et
a-miracle which there among all celebrated is-held or also
quaedam alia breviter intimare. In extremis circium
certain other-things briefly to-make-known in the-farthest the-northwest
versus Germaniae finibus, in ipso oceani littore, antrum
toward of-Germany borders on the-very of-the-ocean shore a-cave
sub eminenti rupe conspicitur, ubi septem viri, incertum ex
under a-towering rock is-seen where seven men uncertain from
quo tempore, longo sopiti sopore quiescunt, ita inlaesis
what time with-long lulled sleep rest so with-unharmed
non solum corporibus, sed etiam vestimentis, ut ex hoc
not only bodies but also garments that from this
ipso, quod sine ulla per tot annorum curricula
very-thing that without any through so-many of-years courses
corruptione perdurant, apud indociles easdem et barbaras
corruption they-endure among the-untaught same and barbarous
nationes veneratione habeantur. Hi denique, quantum ad
nations in-veneration they-are-held these finally as-far-as to
habitum spectat, Romani esse cernuntur. E quibus dum unum
dress it-looks Romans to-be are-seen of whom when one

quidam cupiditate stimulatus vellet exuere, mox eius, ut
a-certain-man by-greed spurred wished to-strip soon his as
dicitur, brachia aruerunt, poenaque sua ceteros perterruit,
is-said the-arms withered and-by-punishment his the-rest be-terrified
ne quis eos ulterius contingere auderet. Videres, ad quod eos
lest anyone them further to-touch should-dare you-might-see for what them
profectum per tot tempora providentia divina conservet.
profit through so-many times the-providence divine preserves
Fortasse horum quandoque, quia non aliter nisi christiani
perhaps of-them sometime because not otherwise than Christians
esse putantur, gentes illae praedicatione salvandae sunt.
to-be they-are-thought those peoples by-the-preaching to-be-saved are

De gente Scritobinorum

V · THE SCRITOBINI, AND THE LENGTHS OF SHADOWS

Near the cave live the Scritobini, who have snow even in summer, eat raw meat, wear skins, and hunt leaping on curved wood. There the summer nights are bright and the winter sun unseen. Paul measures his own shadow at Thionville at nineteen and a half feet, and in Egypt and Jerusalem at midsummer there is no shadow at all.

Huic loco Scritobini — sic enim gens illa nominatur —
to-this place the-Scritobini thus for people that is-named
vicini sunt. Qui etiam aestatis tempore nivibus non carent,
neighbors are who even of-summer in-the-time of-snows not lack
nec aliud, utpote feris ipsis ratione non dispares,
nor other as-being from-the-beasts themselves in-reason not different
quam crudis agrestium animantium carnibus vescuntur; de
than on-raw of-wild animals flesh they-feed from
quorum etiam hirtis pellibus sibi indumenta peraptant.
whose also shaggy hides for-themselves garments they-fit

Hi a saliendo iuxta linguam barbaram ethimologiam
these from leaping according-to the-tongue barbarian the-etymology
ducunt. Saltibus enim utentes, arte quadam ligno incurvo
draw by-leaps for using by-art a-certain with-wood bent
ad arcus similitudinem feras adsecuntur. Aput hos est
to of-a-bow the-likeness the-beasts they-pursue among them is
animal cervo non satis absimile, de cuius ego corio, ut
an-animal to-a-deer not very unlike of whose I hide as
fuerat pilis hispidum, vestem in modum tunicae genu
it-had-been with-hairs bristling a-garment in the-manner of-a-tunic to-the-knee
tenus aptatam conspexi, sicut iam fati, ut relatum est,
as-far-as fitted saw as already aforesaid as related it-is
Scritobini utuntur. Quibus in locis circa aestivale solstitium
the-Scritobini use which in places around the-summer solstice
per aliquod dies etiam noctu clarissima lux cernitur, diesque
for some days even by-night a-very-clear light is-seen and-the-days
ibi multo maiores quam alibi habentur; sicut e contrario
there much longer than elsewhere are-held as on the-contrary
circa brumale solstitium, quamvis diei lux adsit, sol
around the-winter solstice although of-the-day the-light be-present the-sun
tamen non ibi videtur, diesque minimi, quam usquam alibi,
yet not there is-seen and-the-days smallest than anywhere else
noctes quoque longiores existunt; quia scilicet, quanto
the-nights also longer stand because namely by-how-much
magis a sole longius disceditur, tanto sol ipse terrae
more from the-sun farther one-withdraws by-so-much the-sun itself to-the-earth
vicinior apparet et umbrae longiores excrescunt. Denique
nearer appears and the-shadows longer grow finally
in Italia, sicut et antiqui scripserunt, circa diem natalis
in Italy as also the-ancients wrote around the-day of-the-Nativity
Domini novem pedes in umbra staturae humanae hora
of-the-Lord nine feet in the-shadow of-stature human at-the-hour

sexta metiuntur. Ego autem in Gallia Belgica in loco
sixth are-measured I moreover in Gaul Belgic in the-place
qui Totonis villa dicitur constitutus, status mei umbram
which of-Toto the-estate is-called settled of-stature my the-shadow
metiens, decem et novem et semis pedes inveni. Sic quoque
measuring ten and nine and a-half feet found thus also
contrario modo, quanto propinquius meridiem versus ad
in-the-contrary way by-how-much nearer the-south toward to
solem acceditur, tantum semper umbrae breviores videntur,
the-sun one-approaches so-much always the-shadows shorter are-seen
in tantum ut solstitio aestivali, respiciente sole de medio
in so-much that at-the-solstice summer looking-back the-sun from the-middle
caeli, in Aegipto et Hierosolimis et in eorum vicinitate
of-the-sky in Egypt and at-Jerusalem and in their neighborhood
constitutis locis nullae videantur umbrae. In Arabia vero hoc
settled places no are-seen shadows in Arabia indeed at-this
ipso tempore sol supra medium caeli ad partem aquilonis
very time the-sun above the-middle of-the-sky to the-part of-the-north
cernitur, umbraeque versa vice contra meridiem videntur.
is-seen and-the-shadows turned about toward the-south are-seen

De duobus umbilicis oceani maris, qui sunt ex utraque parte Brittaniae

VI · THE TWO WHIRLPOOLS OF THE OCEAN

Not far off lies the sea's navel, which swallows and spews the waves twice a day, a whirlpool of the kind Virgil calls Charybdis, and another lies between Britain and Galicia. A Gallic noble tells Paul of a man who alone survives a wreck there, sitting on a bared rock until the swallowed ships rise again and one carries him to shore. The Adriatic may have small channels of the same kind.

Nec satis procul ab hoc de quo praemisimus litore, contra
nor very far from this of which we-have-spoken-before shore against
occidentalem partem, qua sine fine oceanum pelagus patet,
the-western part where without end the-ocean sea lies-open
profundissima aquarum illa vorago est, quam usitato
the-deepest of-waters that whirlpool is which by-a-customary
nomine maris umbilicum vocamus. Quae bis in die fluctus
name of-the-sea the-navel we-call which twice in a-day the-waves
absorbere et rursum evomere dicitur, sicut per universa
to-swallow and again to-vomit-up is-said as through all
illa litora accedentibus ac recedentibus fluctibus celeritate
those shores with-approaching and receding waves with-speed
nimia fieri conprobatur. Huiusmodi vorago sive vertigo
excessive to-happen is-proved of-this-kind the-whirlpool or vortex

a poeta Virgilio Caribdis appellatur; quam ille in freto
by the-poet Virgil Charybdis is-called which he in the-strait
Siculo esse suo in carmine loquitur, hoc modo dicens:
Sicilian to-be his in song tells in-this way saying

'Dextrum Scilla latus, laevum inplacata Caribdis
the-right Scylla side the-left unappeased Charybdis
obsidet, atque imo baratri ter gurgite vastos
besets and at-the-bottom of-the-abyss thrice in-the-gulf vast
sorbet in abruptum fluctus, rursusque sub auras
sucks into the-depth the-waves and-again into the-airs
erigit alternos, et sidera verberat unda'.
raises by-turns and the-stars lashes with-the-wave

Ab hac sane de qua diximus vertigine saepe naves raptim
by this indeed of which we-have-said vortex often ships swiftly
cursimque adtrahi adfirmantur tanta celeritate, ut sagittarum
and-at-a-run to-be-drawn are-affirmed with-such speed that of-arrows
per aera lapsus imitari videantur; et nonnumquam in illo
through the-air the-flight to-imitate they-seem and sometimes in that
baratro horrendo nimis exitu pereunt. Saepe cum iam iamque
abyss by-a-horrible exceedingly end they-perish often when now and-now
mergendae sint, subitis undarum molibus retroactae, tanta
to-be-sunk they-are by-sudden of-the-waves masses driven-back with-such
rursus agilitate exinde elongantur, quanta prius adtractae
again speed thence are-carried-off as-great-as before drawn
sunt. Adfirmant, esse et aliam huiusmodi voraginem inter
they-were they-affirm to-be also another of-this-kind whirlpool between
Brittaniam insulam Galliciamque provinciam; cui etiam rei
Britain the-island and-Gallicia the-province to-which also thing
adstipulantur Sequanicae Aquitaniaeque litora; quae bis in
bear-witness of-the-Seine and-of-Aquitaine the-shores which twice in

die tam subitis inundationibus opplentur, ut, qui fortasse
a-day by-such sudden floods are-filled that who perhaps
aliquantulum introrsus a litore repertus fuerit, evadere
a-little inward from the-shore found may-have-been to-escape
vix possit. Videas earum regionum flumina fontem versus
scarcely can you-may-see of-those regions the-rivers the-source toward
cursu velocissimo relabi ac per multorum milium spatia
with-course most-swift to-flow-back and through of-many miles the-spaces
dulces fluminum limphas in amaritudinem verti. Triginta
the-sweet of-the-rivers waters into bitterness to-be-turned thirty
ferme a Sequanico litore Evodia insula milibus distat.
about from the-Seine shore Evodia the-island miles stands-off
In qua, sicut ab illius incolis adseveratur, vergentium in
in which as by its inhabitants it-is-asserted of-the-flowing into
eandem Caribdin aquarum garrulitas auditur. Audivi quendam
the-same Charybdis waters the-chattering is-heard I-heard a-certain
nobilissimum Gallorum referentem, quod aliquantae naves
most-noble-man of-the-Gauls relating that some ships
prius tempestate convulsae, postmodum ab hac eadem Caribdi
earlier by-a-storm shattered afterward by this same Charybdis
voratae sunt. Unus autem solummodo ex omnibus viris qui
swallowed were one moreover only of all the-men who
in navibus illis fuerant, morientibus ceteris, dum adhuc spirans
in ships those had-been dying the-rest while still breathing
fluctibus supernataret, vi aquarum labentium abductus,
on-the-waves he-swam-on by-the-force of-the-waters gliding drawn
ad oram usque inmanissimi illius baratri pervenit. Qui cum
to the-edge up-to of-the-most-monstrous that abyss came who when
iam profundissimum et sine fine patens chaos adspiceret,
now the-deepest and without end lying-open chaos he-beheld
ipsoque pavore praemortuus se illuc ruiturum exspectaret,
and-by-the-very fear dead-beforehand himself thither to-rush he-awaited

subito, quod sperare non poterat, saxo quodam superiectus
suddenly what to-hope not he-could on-a-rock certain thrown-up
insedit. Decursis siquidem iam omnibus quae sorbendae erant
he-sat run-out since now all which to-be-swallowed were
aquis, orae illius fuerant margines denudati; dumque ibi
waters of-the-edge that had-been the-margins laid-bare and-while there
inter tot angustias anxius vix ob metum palpitans resederet,
among so-many straits anxious scarcely for fear trembling he-sat
dilatamque ad modicum mortem nihilominus operiret, conspicit
and-delayed for a-little-while death nonetheless he-awaited he-sees
ecce subito quasi magnos aquarum montes de profundo
behold suddenly as-if great of-waters mountains from the-deep
resilire navesque, quae absortae fuerant, primas emergere.
to-spring-back and-the-ships which swallowed had-been first to-emerge
Cumque una ex illis ei contigua fieret, ad eam se
and-when one of them to-him near became to it himself
nisu quo potuit adprehendit; nec mora, celeri
with-the-effort with-which he-could he-seized and-without delay with-swift
volatu prope litus advectus, metuendae necis casus evasit,
flight near the-shore carried of-dreaded death the-chance escaped
proprii postmodum periculi relator existens. Nostrum quoque,
of-his-own afterward peril the-relater existing our also
id est Adriaticum, mare, quod licet minus, similiter tamen
that is the-Adriatic sea which although less likewise yet
Venetiarum Histriaeque litora pervadit, credibile est, parvos
of-Venetia and-Istria the-shores invades credible it-is small
huiusmodi occultosque habere meatus, quibus et recedentes
of-this-kind and-hidden to-have passages by-which both receding
aquae sorbeantur et rursum invasurae litora revomantur.
the-waters be-swallowed and again about-to-invade the-shores be-vomited-back
His ita praelibatis, ad coeptam narrandi seriem redeamus.
these thus touched-on to the-begun of-narrating series let-us-return

Quod Winili in Scoringam venerunt, et quia Ambri et Assi Wandalorum duces eis tributa sibi persolvere mandaverunt

VII · THE WINNILI IN SCORINGA, AND THE VANDALS' DEMAND

The Winnili settle for some years in Scoringa. Ambri and Assi, dukes of the Vandals, demand tribute or war. Urged by Gambara, Ibor and Aio choose to defend their liberty by arms and answer that they will fight rather than serve, though the Winnili, all in the flower of youth, are very few.

Igitur egressi de Scadinavia Winnili, cum Ibor et Aione
therefore having-gone-out from Scadinavia the-Winnili with Ibor and Aio
ducibus, in regionem quae adpellatur Scoringa venientes, per
dukes into the-region which is-called Scoringa coming for
annos illic aliquod consederunt. Illo itaque tempore Ambri
years there some settled at-that and-so time Ambri
et Assi Wandalorum duces vicinas quasque provincias bello
and Assi of-the-Vandals the-dukes neighboring all provinces with-war
premebant. Hi iam multis elati victoriis, nuntios ad Winnilos
pressed these now by-many elated victories messengers to the-Winnili
mittunt, ut aut tributa Wandalis persolverent, aut se ad
send that either tributes to-the-Vandals they-should-pay or themselves for
belli certamina praepararent. Tunc Ibor et Aio, adnitente
of-war contests they-should-prepare then Ibor and Aio striving-with-them
matre Gambara, deliberant, melius esse armis libertatem
the-mother Gambara deliberate better to-be by-arms liberty
tueri, quam tributorum eandem solutione foedare. Mandant
to-defend than of-tributes the-same by-the-payment to-defile they-send-word
per legatos Wandalis, pugnaturos se potius quam
through envoys to-the-Vandals about-to-fight themselves rather than
servituros. Erant siquidem tunc Winnili universi iuvenili
about-to-be-slaves were indeed then the-Winnili all in-youthful

aetate florentes, sed numero perexigui, quippe qui unius non
age flourishing but in-number very-few inasmuch-as who of-one not
nimiae amplitudinis insulae tertia solummodo particula fuerint.
excessive of-size island the-third only small-part were

De Godan et Frea ridicula fabula

VIII · THE FOOLISH TALE OF GODAN AND FREA

Antiquity tells a foolish tale. The Vandals ask Godan for victory over the Winnili, and he answers that he will give victory to those he sees first at sunrise. Gambara asks Godan's wife Frea for victory for the Winnili, and Frea has the Winnili women let down their hair about their faces like beards and stand early with the men where Godan looks out. Seeing them, Godan asks who these long-beards are, and Frea makes him grant victory to those he has named. Paul calls it laughable, since victory comes from heaven.

Refert hoc loco antiquitas ridiculam fabulam: quod accedentes
relates in-this place antiquity a-ridiculous fable that approaching
Wandali ad Godan victoriam de Winnilis postulaverint,
the-Vandals to Godan victory over the-Winnili asked
illeque responderit, se illis victoriam daturum quos
and-he answered himself to-those victory about-to-give whom
primum oriente sole conspexisset. Tunc accessisse Gambara
first rising sun he-should-have-seen then to-have-approached Gambara
ad Fream, uxorem Godan, et Winnilis victoriam postulasse,
to Frea the-wife of-Godan and for-the-Winnili victory to-have-asked
Freaque consilium dedisse, ut Winnilorum mulieres solutos
and-Frea counsel to-have-given that of-the-Winnili the-women loosened
crines erga faciem ad barbae similitudinem conponerent
hair about the-face to of-a-beard the-likeness should-arrange
maneque primo cum viris adessent seseque Godan
and-in-the-morning early with the-men be-present and-themselves to-Godan

videndas pariter e regione, qua ille per fenestram
to-be-seen alike from the-quarter where he through the-window
orientem versus erat solitus aspicere, conlocarent. Atque ita
the-east toward was accustomed to-look should-place and so
factum fuisse. Quas cum Godan oriente sole conspiceret,
done to-have-been whom when Godan rising sun beheld
dixisse: 'Qui sunt isti longibarbi'? Tunc Frea subiunxisse,
to-have-said who are these long-beards then Frea to-have-added
ut quibus nomen tribuerat victoriam condonaret. Sicque
that to-whom a-name he-had-given victory he-should-grant and-thus
Winnilis Godan victoriam concessisse. Haec risui digna
to-the-Winnili Godan victory to-have-conceded these of-laughter worthy
sunt et pro nihilo habenda. Victoria enim non potestati
are and for nothing to-be-held victory for not to-the-power
est adtributa hominum, sed de caelo potius ministratur.
is assigned of-men but from heaven rather is-ministered

Quare Winili Langobardi appellati sint, et quod Wotan ipse sit qui apud Romanos Mercurius dicitur

IX · WHY THE WINNILI WERE CALLED LOMBARDS

The Lombards take their name from their long uncut beards, since in their tongue lang means long and bart beard. Wotan, whom they call Godan with a letter added, is the god the Romans call Mercury and all the nations of Germany worship. He is said to have lived long before these times, and in Greece, not Germany.

Certum tamen est, Langobardos ab intactae ferro
certain yet it-is the-Lombards from of-the-untouched by-iron
barbae longitudine, cum primis Winnili dicti fuerint, ita
beard the-length when at-first Winnili called they-had-been so
postmodum appellatos. Nam iuxta illorum linguam
afterward to-have-been-called for according-to their tongue

'lang' longam, 'bart' barbam significat. Wotan sane, quem
lang long bart beard signifies Wotan indeed whom
adiecta littera Godan dixerunt, ipse est qui apud Romanos
with-added letter Godan they-called he it-is who among the-Romans
Mercurius dicitur et ab universis Germaniae gentibus ut
Mercury is-called and by all of-Germany the-peoples as
deus adoratur; qui non circa haec tempora, sed longe
a-god is-worshiped who not around these times but far
anterius, nec in Germania, sed in Grecia fuisse perhibetur.
earlier nor in Germany but in Greece to-have-lived is-held

Quomodo Langobardi Wandalos vicerunt, et de fame Langobardorum

X · THE LOMBARDS DEFEAT THE VANDALS, AND THEIR FAMINE

The Winnili, or Lombards, fight the Vandals fiercely for the glory of their liberty and win. Afterward they suffer a great famine in Scoringa and are sorely dismayed.

Winnili igitur, qui et Langobardi, commisso cum Wandalis
the-Winnili therefore who also Lombards joined with the-Vandals
proelio, acriter, utpote pro libertatis gloria, decertantes, victoriam
battle fiercely as-being for of-liberty the-glory contending victory
capiunt. Qui magnam postmodum famis penuriam in eadem
take who great afterward of-famine want in the-same
Scoringa provincia perpessi, valde animo consternati sunt.
Scoringa province having-suffered greatly in-mind dismayed were

Quia Langobardi in Mauringam transire volentes ab Assipittis sunt impediti

XI · THE ASSIPITTI BAR THE WAY TO MAURINGA

Leaving for Mauringa, the Lombards find the Assipitti barring their way. Too few to fight, they spread word that they have dog-headed men in camp who drink human blood, and they widen their tents and light many fires. The enemy believes it and no longer dares the war it has threatened.

De qua egredientes, dum in Mauringam transire disponerent,
from which going-out when into Mauringa to-cross they-planned
Assipitti eorum iter inpediunt, denegantes eis omnimodis
the-Assipitti their journey hinder denying to-them in-every-way
per suos terminos transitum. Porro Langobardi cum magnas
through their bounds passage further the-Lombards when great
hostium copias cernerent neque cum eis ob paucitatem
of-the-enemy forces they-saw nor with them for the-fewness
exercitus congredi auderent, dumque quid agere deberent
of-the-army to-engage they-dared and-while what to-do they-ought
decernerent, tandem necessitas consilium repperit. Simulant,
they-were-deciding at-last necessity counsel found they-pretend
se in castris suis habere cynocephalos, id est canini
themselves in camp their to-have dog-heads that is of-canine
capitis homines. Divulgant aput hostes, hos pertinaciter
head men they-spread-abroad among the-enemies these obstinately
bella gerere, humanum sanguinem bibere et, si hostem
wars to-wage human blood to-drink and if the-enemy
adsequi non possint, proprium potare cruorem. Utque huic
to-reach not they-can their-own to-drink gore and-that to-this
adsertioni fidem facerent, ampliant tentoria plurimosque in
assertion belief they-might-make they-enlarge the-tents and-very-many in

castris ignes accendunt. His hostes auditis visisque creduli
the-camp fires they-kindle these the-enemies heard and-seen credulous
effecti, bellum quod minabantur iam temptare non audent.
made the-war which they-were-threatening now to-attempt not dare

De monomachia duorum virorum fortium, quorum unus e Langobardis, alter ex Assipittis fuit

XII · THE SINGLE COMBAT

The Assipitti propose a single combat: if their champion wins, the Lombards go back; if he loses, they may pass. A man of slave birth offers to fight if he and his offspring are freed. He fights and wins, gaining passage for the Lombards and freedom for his family.

Habebant tamen apud se virum fortissimum, de cuius
they-had yet among themselves a-man very-brave on whose
fidebant viribus, posse se procul dubio optinere quod
they-trusted strength to-be-able themselves beyond doubt to-obtain what
vellent. Hunc solum pro omnibus pugnaturum obiciunt.
they-wished him alone for all about-to-fight they-put-forward
Mandant Langobardis, unum quem vellent suorum
they-send-word to-the-Lombards one whom they-wished of-their-men
mitterent, qui cum eo ad singulare certamen exiret, ea
they-should-send who with him to single combat should-go-out on-this
videlicet conditione, ut, si suus bellator victoriam caperet,
namely condition that if their warrior victory should-take
Langobardi itinere quo venerant abirent; sin vero
the-Lombards by-the-way by-which they-had-come should-go-away but-if indeed
superaretur ab altero, tum se Langobardis transitum
he-were-overcome by the-other then themselves to-the-Lombards passage
per fines proprios non vetituros. Cumque Langobardi, quem
through bounds their-own not about-to-forbid and-when the-Lombards whom

e suis potius adversus virum bellicosissimum mitterent,
of their-men rather against a-man most-warlike they-should-send
ambigerent, quidam ex servili conditione sponte se
were-in-doubt a-certain-man of servile condition of-his-own-accord himself
optulit, promittit se provocanti hosti congressurum,
offered he-promises himself with-the-challenging enemy about-to-engage
ea ratione, ut, si de hoste victoriam caperet, a se
on-this ground that if over the-enemy victory he-should-take from himself
suaque progenie servitutis naevum auferrent. Quid plura?
and-his offspring of-slavery the-blemish they-should-take-away what more
Gratanter quae postularat sese facturos pollicentur. Adgressus
gladly what he-had-asked themselves about-to-do they-promise having-attacked
hostem, pugnavit et vicit; Langobardis transeundi facultatem,
the-enemy he-fought and conquered for-the-Lombards of-crossing the-capacity
sibi suisque, ut optaverat, iura libertatis indeptus est.
for-himself and-his-people as he-had-wished the-rights of-liberty obtained has

Quod Langobardi in Mauringam transierunt, ac deinde ad ulteriora loca progressi sunt

XIII · THE LOMBARDS IN MAURINGA AND BEYOND

In Mauringa the Lombards free many slaves to swell their numbers, confirming the freedom by an arrow and words of their own tongue. From there they go to Golanda, and then hold Anthab, Banthaib, and Vurgundaib for some years, which Paul takes to be names of districts.

Igitur Langobardi tandem in Mauringam pervenientes,
therefore the-Lombards at-last into Mauringa arriving
ut bellatorum possint ampliare numerum, plures
that of-warriors they-might-be-able to-enlarge the-number very-many
a servili iugo ereptos ad libertatis statum perducunt.
from the-servile yoke rescued to of-liberty the-state they-lead

Utque rata eorum haberi possit ingenuitas, sanciunt
and-that ratified their to-be-held may-be-able the-freeborn-status they-sanction
more solito per sagittam, inmurmurantes nihilominus
by-custom accustomed through an-arrow murmuring nonetheless
ob rei firmitatem quaedam patria verba. Egressi
for of-the-thing the-firmness certain ancestral words having-gone-out
itaque Langobardi de Mauringa, applicuerunt in Golanda,
and-so the-Lombards from Mauringa landed in Golanda
ubi aliquanto tempore commorati, dicuntur post haec
where for-some time having-stayed they-are-said after these-things
Anthab et Banthaib, pari modo et Vurgundaib, per annos
Anthab and Banthaib in-like manner and Vurgundaib for years
aliquod possidisse; quae nos arbitrari possumus esse vocabula
some to-have-possessed which we to-judge can to-be the-names
pagorum seu quorumcumque locorum.
of-districts or of-whatever places

Quia, mortuis Ibor et Aione ducibus, Langobardi primum regem Agelmundum habuerunt

XIV · AGELMUND, THE FIRST KING

When Ibor and Aio die, the Lombards will no longer live under dukes and make themselves a king like other nations. The first is Agelmund, son of Aio, of the noble line of the Gungingi, who by tradition reigns thirty-three years.

Mortuis interea Ibor et Aione ducibus, qui Langobardos
dead meanwhile Ibor and Aio the-dukes who the-Lombards
a Scadinavia eduxerant et usque ad haec tempora
from Scadinavia had-led-out and all-the-way to these times
rexerant, nolentes iam ultra Langobardi esse sub ducibus,
had-ruled unwilling now further the-Lombards to-be under dukes

regem sibi ad ceterarum instar gentium statuerunt.
a-king for-themselves at of-the-other the-likeness peoples established
Regnavit igitur super eos primus Agelmund, filius Aionis,
reigned therefore over them first Agelmund the-son of-Aio
ex prosapia ducens originem Gungingorum, quae aput eos
from the-stock drawing origin of-the-Gungingi which among them
generosior habebatur. Hic, sicut a maioribus traditur,
more-noble was-held he as by the-elders is-handed-down
tribus et triginta annis Langobardorum tenuit regnum.
three and thirty years of-the-Lombards held the-kingdom

De meretrice quae septem infantulos peperit, ex quibus Lamissio unus fuit, et de monomachia eius cum Amazone

XV · LAMISSIO, THE CHILD OF THE FISHPOND

A harlot throws her seven newborn children into a fishpond, and King Agelmund, turning them over with his spear, sees one catch hold of it. He has the boy raised and names him Lamissio from lama, a pond. Lamissio becomes king after Agelmund and is said to kill the strongest of the Amazons in a river to win the Lombards passage, though Paul doubts the Amazons survived so long.

His temporibus quaedam meretrix uno partu septem
in-these times a-certain harlot at-one birth seven
puerulos enixa, beluis omnibus mater crudelior in
little-boys having-brought-forth than-the-beasts all a-mother crueler into
piscinam proiecit negandos. Hoc si cui inpossibile videtur,
a-fishpond threw to-be-drowned this if to-anyone impossible seems
relegat historias veterum, et inveniet, non solum
let-him-read-again the-histories of-the-ancients and he-shall-find not only
septem infantulos, sed etiam novem unam mulierem semel
seven infants but even nine one woman at-once

peperisse. Et hoc certum est maxime aput Aegyptios fieri.
to-have-borne and this certain it-is most among the-Egyptians to-happen
Contigit itaque, ut rex Agelmund, dum iter carperet,
it-happened and-so that the-king Agelmund while the-journey he-was-taking
ad eandem piscinam deveniret. Qui cum equo retento
to the-same fishpond came who when with-the-horse held-back
miserandos infantulos miraretur hastaque, qua manu
the-pitiable infants he-wondered-at and-with-the-spear which in-hand
gerebat, huc illucque eos inverteret, unus ex illis iniecta
he-bore hither and-thither them he-turned-over one of them thrown-on
manu hastam regiam conprehendit. Rex misericordia motus
his-hand the-spear royal seized the-king by-pity moved
factumque altius ammiratus, eum magnum futurum
and-the-deed more-deeply having-wondered-at him great about-to-be
pronuntiat. Moxque eum a piscina levari praecepit, atque
pronounces and-soon him from the-fishpond to-be-lifted he-ordered and
nutrici traditum omni cum studio mandat alendum; et quia
to-a-nurse handed-over all with zeal he-commands to-be-reared and because
eum de piscina, quae eorum lingua 'lama' dicitur, abstulit,
him from the-fishpond which their in-the-tongue lama is-called he-took-away
Lamissio eidem nomen inposuit. Qui cum adolevisset, tam
Lamissio to-him a-name he-gave who when he-had-grown-up so
strenuus iuvenis effectus est, ut et bellicosissimus extiterit
vigorous a-young-man made was that both most-warlike he-stood-out
et post Agelmundi funus regni gubernacula rexerit.
and after of-Agelmund the-funeral of-the-kingdom the-helm ruled
Ferunt hunc, dum Langobardi cum rege suo iter agentes
they-report him while the-Lombards with king their a-journey making
ad quendam fluvium pervenissent et ab Amazonibus essent
to a-certain river had-come and by the-Amazons were
prohibiti ultra permeare, cum earum fortissima in fluvio
prevented further to-cross with of-them the-bravest in the-river

natatu pugnasse eamque peremisse, sibique laudis
by-swimming to-have-fought and-her to-have-slain and-for-himself of-praise
gloriam, Langobardis quoque transitum paravisse. Hoc
the-glory for-the-Lombards also passage to-have-prepared this
siquidem inter utrasque acies prius constitisse, quatenus,
indeed between both lines before to-have-been-agreed inasmuch-as
si Amazon eadem Lamissionem superaret, Langobardi a
if the-Amazon same Lamissio should-overcome the-Lombards from
flumine recederent; sin vero a Lamissione, ut et factum
the-river should-withdraw but-if indeed by Lamissio as also done
est, ipsa vinceretur, Langobardis eadem permeandi fluenta
it-was she should-be-conquered to-the-Lombards the-same of-crossing the-streams
copia praeberetur. Constat sane, quia huius assertionis
the-means should-be-offered it-is-agreed surely that of-this assertion
series minus veritate subnixa est. Omnibus etenim quibus
the-series less on-truth supported is to-all for to-whom
veteres historiae notae sunt patet, gentem Amazonum longe
the-ancient histories known are it-is-plain the-people of-the-Amazons long
antea, quam haec fieri potuerint, esse deletam; nisi
before than these-things to-happen could to-be destroyed unless
forte, quia loca eadem, ubi haec gesta feruntur, non
perchance because the-places same where these-things done are-reported not
satis historiographis nota fuerunt et vix ab aliquo eorum
enough to-the-historians known were and scarcely by any of-them
vulgata sunt, fieri potuerit, ut usque ad id tempus
made-known were to-happen it-could that all-the-way to that time
huiuscemodi inibi mulierum genus haberetur. Nam et ego
of-this-kind there of-women a-kind be-held for also I
referri a quibusdam audivi, usque hodie in intimis
to-be-related by some have-heard up-to today in the-innermost
Germaniae finibus gentem harum existere feminarum.
of-Germany bounds the-people of-these to-exist women

Quomodo Vulgares noctu super castra Langobardorum inruentes, Agelmundum regem interfecerunt et filiam eius captivam duxerunt

XVI · THE BULGARS KILL KING AGELMUND

Across the river the Lombards stay for a time, and long quiet makes them careless, for security is the mother of harm. One night the Bulgars fall on their sleeping camp, kill many and King Agelmund himself, and carry off his only daughter.

Igitur transmeato Langobardi de quo dixeramus flumine, cum
therefore crossed the-Lombards of which we-had-spoken the-river when
ad ulteriores terras pervenissent, illic per tempus aliquod
to the-farther lands they-had-come there for time some
commorabantur. Interea cum nihil adversi suspicarentur et
they-stayed meanwhile when nothing adverse they-suspected and
essent quiete longa minus solliciti, securitas, quae semper
were by-rest long less anxious security which always
detrimentorum mater est, eis non modicam perniciem
of-losses the-mother is to-them not small ruin
peperit. Noctu denique cum neglegentia resoluti cuncti
brought-forth by-night finally when by-negligence relaxed all
quiescerent, subito super eos Vulgares inruentes, plures
were-resting suddenly upon them the-Bulgars rushing very-many
ex eis sauciant, multos prosternunt, et in tantum per
of them wound many lay-low and in so-much through
eorum castra dibachati sunt, ut ipsum Agelmundum regem
their camp raged have that the-very Agelmund the-king
interficerent eiusque unicam filiam sorte captivitatis auferrent.
they-killed and-his only daughter by-the-lot of-captivity carried-off

Quomodo Lamissio rex effectus est, et qualiter Vulgares superavit

XVII · KING LAMISSIO DEFEATS THE BULGARS

The Lombards make Lamissio king, and he turns on the Bulgars, but at the first clash his men flee to camp. Lamissio cries out to them to remember their king's murder and his daughter's captivity, and promises freedom to any slave who fights. Fired by his words and example, they rout the Bulgars and are bolder in war from then on.

Resumptis tamen post haec incommoda Langobardi viribus,
recovered yet after these misfortunes the-Lombards strength
Lamissionem, de quo superius dixeramus, sibi regem
Lamissio of whom above we-had-spoken for-themselves king
constituerunt. Qui, ut erat iuvenili aetate fervidus et ad belli
they-established who as he-was in-youthful age fervent and for of-war
certamina satis prumptus, alumni sui Agelmundi necem
contests quite ready of-the-foster-father his Agelmund the-death
ulcisci cupiens, in Vulgares arma convertit. Primoque mox
to-avenge desiring against the-Bulgars arms turned and-in-the-first soon
proelio commisso, Langobardi hostibus terga dantes, ad castra
battle joined the-Lombards to-the-enemies backs giving to the-camp
refugiunt. Tunc rex Lamissio ista conspiciens, elevata
flee-back then the-king Lamissio these-things seeing raised
altius voce, omni exercitui clamare coepit, ut obprobriorum
higher the-voice to-all the-army to-cry began that of-the-disgraces
quae pertulerunt meminissent revocarentque ante oculos
which they-have-borne they-should-remember and-should-recall before the-eyes
dedecus, quomodo eorum regem hostes iugulaverint, quam
the-shame how their king the-enemies had-slaughtered how
miserabiliter eius natam, quam sibi reginam optaverant,
wretchedly his daughter whom for-themselves queen they-had-wished

captivam abduxerint. Postremo hortatur, ut se suosque
captive they-had-led-off lastly he-exhorts that themselves and-their-people
armis defenderent, melius esse dicens, in bello animam
with-arms they-should-defend better to-be saying in war the-soul
ponere quam ut vilia mancipia hostium ludibriis
to-lay-down than that as-vile slaves of-the-enemies to-the-mockeries
subiacere. Haec et huiuscemodi dum vociferans diceret, et
to-lie-under these and of-this-kind while shouting he-said and
nunc minis nunc promissionibus ad toleranda eorum animos
now by-threats now by-promises for bearing their minds
belli certamina roboraret; si quem etiam servilis conditionis
of-war the-contests he-strengthened if anyone even of-servile condition
pugnantem vidisset, libertate eum simul cum praemiis
fighting he-had-seen with-liberty him together with rewards
donaret: tandem hortatu exemplisque principis, qui
he-presented at-last by-the-exhortation and-examples of-the-prince who
primus ad bellum prosilierat, accensi, super hostes inruunt,
first to war had-leapt-forth kindled upon the-enemies they-rush
pugnant atrociter, et magna adversarios clade prosternunt;
they-fight fiercely and with-great the-adversaries slaughter they-lay-low
tandemque de victoribus victoriam capientes, tam regis
and-at-length over the-victors victory taking as-much of-the-king
sui funus quam proprias iniurias ulciscuntur. Tunc magna
their the-death as their-own injuries they-avenge then great
de hostium exuviis praeda potiti, ex illo iam tempore
from of-the-enemies spoils booty having-gained from that now time
ad expetendos belli labores audaciores effecti sunt.
for seeking of-war labors bolder made were

Quod, mortuo Lamissione, regnum Lethu suscepit, et post hunc filius eius Hildehoc, post quem quoque Godehoc regnavit

XVIII · LETHU, HILDEOC, AND GUDEOC

After Lamissio, the second king, Lethu becomes the third and reigns about forty years. His son Hildeoc succeeds as fourth, and after him Gudeoc becomes the fifth king.

Defuncto post haec Lamissione, qui secundus regnaverat,
having-died after these-things Lamissio who second had-reigned
tertius ad regni gubernacula Lethu ascendit. Qui cum
third to of-the-kingdom the-helm Lethu ascended who when
quadraginta ferme annos regnasset, Hildeoc filium, qui
forty about years he-had-reigned Hildeoc his-son who
quartus in numero fuit, regni successorem reliquit. Hoc
fourth in number was of-the-kingdom successor he-left he
quoque defuncto, quintus Gudeoc regnum suscepit.
also having-died fifth Gudeoc the-kingdom took-up

Bellum inter Odoacar regem Turcilingorum et Feletheum regem Rugorum, et quomodo Langobardi, superatis ab Odoacre Rugis, eorum provinciam possiderunt

XIX · ODOACER DESTROYS THE RUGIANS

Enmity flares between Odoacer, king in Italy, and Feletheus, king of the Rugians beyond the Danube, whom Saint Severinus has warned in vain. Odoacer crushes the Rugians, kills Feletheus, and leads many captives to Italy. The Lombards then move into Rugiland, fertile land, and stay some years.

His temporibus inter Odoacar, qui in Italia per aliquod iam
in-these times between Odoacer who in Italy for some now
annos regnabat, et Feletheum, qui et Feva dictus est, Rugorum
years was-reigning and Feletheus who also Feva called was of-the-Rugians
regem, magnarum inimicitiarum fomes exarsit. Qui Feletheus
the-king of-great enmities the-tinder blazed-up who Feletheus
illis diebus ulteriorem Danubii ripam incolebat, quam a
in-those days the-farther of-the-Danube bank inhabited which from
Norici finibus idem Danubius separat. In his Noricorum
of-Noricum the-bounds the-same Danube separates in these of-Noricum
finibus beati tunc erat Severini coenobium. Qui omni
bounds of-blessed then was Severinus the-monastery who with-all
abstinentiae sanctitate praeditus, multis iam erat virtutibus
of-abstinence holiness endowed by-many already was by-powers
clarus. Qui cum hisdem in locis ad vitae usque metas
famous who when the-same in places to of-life up-to the-bounds
habitasset, nunc tamen eius corpusculum Neapolim retinet. Hic
he-had-dwelt now yet his little-body Naples holds he
saepius hunc de quo diximus Feletheum eiusque coniugem,
very-often this-man of whom we-have-said Feletheus and-his wife
cui vocabulum Gisa fuit, ut ab iniquitate quiescerent,
to-whom the-name Gisa was that from iniquity they-should-rest

verbis coelestibus monuit. Quibus pia verba spernentibus,
with-words heavenly warned whom the-pious words spurning
hoc quod eis postmodum contigit longe antea futurum
this which to-them afterward happened long before about-to-be
praedixit. Adunatis igitur Odoacar gentibus quae eius dicioni
he-foretold united therefore Odoacer the-peoples which his to-the-rule
parebant, id est Turcilingis et Herolis Rugorumque partem,
were-obedient that is the-Turcilingi and Heruli and-of-the-Rugians a-part
quos iam dudum possidebat, necnon etiam Italiae populis,
whom now long-since he-possessed and-also even of-Italy with-the-peoples
venit in Rugiland pugnavitque cum Rugis, ultimaque eos
came into Rugiland and-fought with the-Rugians and-with-final them
clade conficiens, Feletheum insuper eorum regem extincxit;
slaughter finishing Feletheus moreover their king he-killed
vastataque omni provincia, Italiam repetens, copiosam secum
and-laid-waste all the-province Italy seeking-again a-copious with-himself
captivorum multitudinem abduxit. Tunc Langobardi de suis
of-captives multitude led-off then the-Lombards from their
regionibus egressi, venerunt in Rugiland, quae Latino
regions having-gone-out came into Rugiland which in-Latin
eloquio Rugorum patria dicitur, atque in ea, quia erat
speech of-the-Rugians the-fatherland is-called and in it because it-was
solo fertilis, aliquantis commorati sunt annis.
in-soil fertile for-some stayed have years

Mortuo Godehoc, regnavit Claffo, et post hunc Tato, qui delevit regnum Herulorum

XX · TATO DESTROYS THE HERULI

Under Tato, the seventh king, the Lombards live on the open plain called feld. Tato's daughter Rumetruda mocks the small brother of Rodulf, king of the Heruli, and has him speared through a curtained window. Rodulf makes war and plays at the board while a lookout dares not report his army's flight; the Heruli are routed, mistaking flax for water, Rodulf is killed, and Tato takes his banner and helmet.

Inter haec moritur Gudeoc; cui successit Claffo,
among these-things dies Gudeoc to-whom succeeded Claffo
filius suus. Defuncto quoque Claffone, Tato, eiusdem filius,
son his having-died also Claffo Tato of-the-same the-son
septimus ascendit ad regnum. Egressi quoque Langobardi
seventh ascended to the-kingdom having-gone-out also the-Lombards
de Rugiland, habitaverunt in campis patentibus, qui sermone
from Rugiland dwelt in fields open which in-speech
barbarico 'feld' appellantur. Quo in loco dum per trium
barbarian feld are-called which in place while for of-three
annorum spatia morarentur, bellum exortum est inter
years the-spaces they-stayed war arose has between
Tatonem atque Rodulfum Herolorum regem. Quos cum prius
Tato and Rodulf of-the-Heruli the-king who when before
foedera necterent, causa inter eos discordiae ista fuit.
treaties they-were-binding the-cause between them of-discord this was
Germanus Rodulfi regis ad Tatonem serendae pacis gratia
the-brother of-Rodulf the-king to Tato of-to-be-sown of-peace for-the-sake
venerat. Qui cum expleta legatione patriam repeteret,
had-come who when completed the-embassy the-fatherland he-was-seeking-again
contigit, ut ante regis filiae domum, quae Rumetruda
it-happened that before of-the-king of-the-daughter the-house who Rumetruda

dicebatur, transitum haberet. Illa multitudinem virorum
was-called passage he-had she the-multitude of-men
nobilemque comitatum aspiciens, interrogat, quis iste esse
and-the-noble retinue beholding asks who this-man to-be
possit, qui tam sublime obsequium haberet. Dictumque illi
could who so lofty a-following had and-told to-her
est, Rodulfi regis germanum legatione perfuncta patriam
it-was of-Rodulf the-king the-brother the-embassy performed to-the-fatherland
regredi. Mittit puella, qui eum invitaret, ut vini poculum
to-return sends the-girl one-who him should-invite that of-wine a-cup
dignaretur accipere. Ille corde simplici, ut invitatus fuerat,
he-should-deign to-receive he with-heart simple as invited he-had-been
venit; et quia erat statura pusillus, eum fastu superbiae
came and because he-was in-stature small him with-the-disdain of-pride
puella despexit, verbaque adversus eum inrisoria protulit. At
the-girl despised and-words against him mocking brought-forth but
ille verecundia pariter et indignatione perfusus, talia rursus
he with-shame equally and indignation suffused such in-turn
verba respondit, quae ampliorem puellae confusionem adferrent.
words answered which greater to-the-girl confusion should-bring
Tunc illa furore femineo succensa, dolorem cordis cohibere
then she with-fury womanly kindled the-grief of-heart to-restrain
non valens, scelus quod mente conciperat explere contendit.
not being-able the-crime which in-mind she-had-conceived to-fulfill strives
Simulat patientiam, vultum exhilarat, eumque verbis
she-feigns patience her-face she-brightens and-him with-words
iocundioribus demulcens, ad sedendum invitat, talique eum
more-pleasant soothing to sitting invites and-such him
in loco sedere constituit, quo parietis fenestram ad scapulas
in a-place to-sit she-set where of-the-wall the-window at his-shoulders
haberet. Quam fenestram quasi ob hospitis honorem,
he-should-have which window as-if for of-the-guest the-honor

re autem vera ne eum aliqua pulsaret suspicio, velamine
in-thing moreover true lest him any should-strike suspicion with-a-veil
texerat pretioso, praecipiens atrocissima belua propriis
she-had-covered precious instructing the-most-savage beast her-own
pueris, ut, cum ipsa quasi ad pincernam loquens 'Misce'
servants that when she as-if to the-cupbearer speaking mix
dixisset, illi eum a tergo lanceis perforarent. Factumque
should-have-said they him from behind with-lances should-pierce and-done
est; et, mox crudelis femina signum dedit, iniqua mandata
it-was and as-soon-as the-cruel woman the-signal gave the-wicked commands
perficiuntur, ipseque vulneribus transfixus in terram corruens
are-carried-out and-he with-wounds pierced to the-earth collapsing
expiravit. Ea cum Rodulfo regi nuntiata fuissent, tam
expired these-things when to-Rodulf the-king reported had-been such
crudele germani funus ingemuit, dolorisque inpatiens, ad
cruel of-his-brother the-death he-groaned and-of-grief impatient for
ulciscendam fratris mortem exarsit. Foedusque quod cum
avenging of-his-brother the-death he-blazed and-the-treaty which with
Tatone pepigerat inrumpens, eidem bellum indixit. Quid plura?
Tato he-had-made bursting on-him war declared what more
Conveniunt utrorumque in campis patentibus acies. Rodulfus
they-meet of-each in fields open the-lines Rodulf
suos in pugna dirigit; ipse in castris resedens, de spe
his-men into battle directs himself in the-camp sitting of the-hope
victoriae nihil ambigens, ad tabulam ludit. Erant siquidem
of-victory nothing doubting at the-gaming-board plays were indeed
tunc Heroli bellorum usibus exerciti multorumque
then the-Heruli of-wars in-the-practices trained and-of-many
iam strage notissimi. Qui, sive ut expeditius bella
now by-the-slaughter most-renowned who whether that more-freely wars
gererent, sive ut inlatum ab hoste vulnus contemnerent,
they-might-wage or that the-inflicted by the-enemy wound they-might-despise

nudi pugnabant, operientes solummodo corporis verecunda.
naked they-fought covering only of-the-body the-shameful-parts
Horum itaque viribus rex indubitanter fidens, dum ipse
of-these and-so on-the-strength the-king undoubtingly trusting while he
securus ad tabulam luderet, unum e suis in arborem,
secure at the-board was-playing one of his-men into a-tree
quae forte aderat, ascendere iubet, quatenus ei suorum
which by-chance was-present to-climb orders so-that to-him of-his-men
victoriam celerius referret, comminatus eius se caput
the-victory more-quickly he-might-report having-threatened his himself the-head
abscisurum, si Herolorum aciem fugere nuntiaret. Is cum
about-to-cut-off if of-the-Heruli the-line to-flee he-should-announce he when
Herolorum flecti acies et a Langobardis eos opprimi
of-the-Heruli to-be-bent the-line and by the-Lombards them to-be-overwhelmed
conspiceret, interrogatus a rege saepius, quid Heroli gererent,
saw asked by the-king often what the-Heruli were-doing
eos optime pugnare respondit. Nec prius malum quod
them excellently to-fight answered nor before the-evil which
cernebat, loqui non audens, aperuit, quam universae acies
he-saw to-speak not daring disclosed than the-whole lines
hostibus terga praeberent. Qui, licet sero, tandem in vocem
to-the-enemies backs offered who although late at-last into voice
erumpens: 'Ve tibi', inquit, 'misera Herolia, quae caelestis
bursting woe to-you he-says wretched Herulia who of-the-heavenly
Domini plecteris ira'. Ad haec verba conmotus rex ait:
Lord are-punished by-the-wrath at these words moved the-king says
'Numquid fugiunt Heroli mei?' At ille: 'Non', inquit, 'hoc
surely-not flee Heruli my but he not he-says this
ego, sed tu rex ipse dixisti'. Tunc, ut in talibus fieri
I but you king yourself have-said then as in such-things to-happen
adsolet, rex ipse et omnes perturbati, dum quid agerent
is-wont the-king himself and all troubled while what to-do

haesitarent, supervenientibus Langobardis, graviter caeduntur.
they-hesitated coming-upon the-Lombards heavily are-slaughtered
Rex quoque ipse nequicquam fortiter faciens, extinctus est.
the-king also himself in-vain bravely acting killed was
Herolorum vero exercitus dum hac illacque diffugeret, tanta
of-the-Heruli but the-army while hither and-thither it-fled such
super eos caelitus ira respexit, ut viridantia camporum
over them from-heaven wrath looked that the-greening of-the-fields
lina cernentes, natatiles esse aquas putarent; dumque quasi
flax seeing for-swimming to-be waters they-thought and-while as-if
nataturi brachia extenderent, crudeliter hostium feriebantur
about-to-swim their-arms they-stretched cruelly of-the-enemies they-were-struck
a gladiis. Tunc Langobardi, patrata victoria, ingentem, quam
by the-swords then the-Lombards achieved the-victory the-huge which
in castris reppererant, inter se praedam dividunt. Tato
in the-camp they-had-found among themselves booty divide Tato
vero Rodulfi vexillum, quod bandum appellant, eiusque
but of-Rodulf the-standard which bandum they-call and-his
galeam, quam in bello gestare consueverat, abstulit. Atque
helmet which in war to-wear he-had-been-accustomed took-away and
iam ex illo tempore ita omnis Herolorum virtus concidit,
now from that time so all of-the-Heruli the-strength fell
ut ultra super se regem omnimodo non haberent. Iam
that further over themselves a-king in-any-way not they-had now
hinc Langobardi ditiores effecti, aucto de diversis gentibus,
hence the-Lombards richer made increased from different peoples
quas superaverant, exercitu, ultro coeperunt bella
whom they-had-overcome the-army of-their-own-accord began wars
expetere et virtutis gloriam circumquaque protelare.
to-seek and of-valor the-glory round-about to-extend

De morte Tatonis et regno Wachonis, et quomodo Wacho Suavos superavit, et de uxoribus eius et filiabus, et de regno Waltari, filii eius

XXI · WACHO, HIS WIVES AND DAUGHTERS, AND WALTARI

Wacho kills his uncle Tato, and Tato's son Hildechis flees to the Gepids, who are the Lombards' enemies from then on. Wacho subdues the Suevi, as Rothari's edict also records. Of his three wives, Austrigusa bears Wisegarda and Walderada, both married to Frankish kings, and Salinga bears Waltari, the eighth king; all these are Lethings.

At vero Tato post haec de belli triumpho non diu
but indeed Tato after these-things over of-war the-triumph not long
laetatus est. Inruit namque super eum Waccho, filius germani
rejoiced has rushed for upon him Wacho the-son of-brother
sui Zuchilonis, et eum ab hac luce privavit. Conflixit
his Zuchilo and him from this light deprived clashed
quoque adversus Wacchonem Hildechis, filius Tatonis; sed
also against Wacho Hildechis the-son of-Tato but
superante Wacchone devictus, ad Gepidos confugit, ibique
overcoming Wacho defeated to the-Gepids fled and-there
profugus ad vitae fine usque permansit. Quam ob
a-fugitive to of-life the-end up-to remained which on-account-of
causam Gepidi cum Langobardis extunc inimicitias contraxere.
cause the-Gepids with the-Lombards from-then enmities contracted
Eodemque tempore Waccho super Suavos inruit eosque suo
and-at-the-same time Wacho upon the-Suevi rushed and-them to-his
dominio subiugavit. Hoc si quis mendacium et non rei
dominion subjected this if anyone a-lie and not of-the-thing
existimat veritatem, relegat prologum edicti, quem rex
reckons the-truth let-him-read-again the-prologue of-the-edict which king

Rothari de Langobardorum legibus conposuit, et pene in
Rothari about of-the-Lombards the-laws composed and almost in
omnibus hoc codicibus, sicut nos in hac historiola inseruimus,
all this codices as we in this little-history have-inserted
scriptum repperiet. Habuit autem Waccho uxores tres, hoc est
written he-shall-find had moreover Wacho wives three that is
primam Ranicundam, filiam regis Turingorum; deinde
first Ranicunda the-daughter of-the-king of-the-Thuringians then
duxit Austrigusam, filiam regis Gepidorum, de qua
he-married Austrigusa the-daughter of-the-king of-the-Gepids of whom
habuit filias duas: nomen uni Wisegarda, quam tradidit
he-had daughters two the-name to-one Wisegarda whom he-gave
in matrimonium Theudiperto regi Francorum; secunda autem
in marriage to-Theudebert king of-the-Franks the-second moreover
dicta est Walderada, quae sociata est Cusupald, alio regi
called was Walderada who joined was to-Cusupald another king
Francorum, quam ipse odio habens, uni ex suis, qui
of-the-Franks whom he in-hatred having to-one of his-men who
dicebatur Garipald, in coniugium tradidit. Tertiam vero
was-called Garipald in marriage gave the-third indeed
Waccho uxorem habuit Herolorum regis filiam nomine
Wacho wife had of-the-Heruli of-the-king the-daughter by-name
Salingam. Ex ipsa ei natus est filius, quem Waltari
Salinga from her to-him born was a-son whom Waltari
appellavit, quique, Wacchone mortuo, super Langobardos iam
he-called and-who Wacho dead over the-Lombards now
octavus regnavit. Hi omnes Lithingi fuerunt. Sic enim aput
eighth reigned these all Lethings were thus for among
eos quaedam nobilis prosapia vocabatur.
them a-certain noble stock was-called

Mortuo Waltari, regnavit Audoin, qui Langobardos in Pannoniam adduxit

XXII · AUDOIN LEADS THE LOMBARDS INTO PANNONIA

Waltari reigns seven years and dies. Audoin, the ninth king, takes the kingdom after him, and not long afterward leads the Lombards into Pannonia.

Waltari ergo cum per septem annos regnum tenuisset, ab
Waltari therefore when for seven years the-kingdom he-had-held from
hac luce subtractus est. Post quem nonus Audoin regnum
this light withdrawn was after whom ninth Audoin the-kingdom
adeptus est. Qui non multo post tempore Langobardos in
obtained has who not much after time the-Lombards into
Pannoniam adduxit.
Pannonia led

Bellum Gepidorum cum Langobardis, in quo Alboin filium regis Gepidorum extinxit

XXIII · ALBOIN KILLS THE SON OF THE GEPID KING

The long quarrel of Gepids and Lombards comes to war, and Alboin, son of Audoin, kills Turismod, son of the Gepid king Turisind, so that the Gepids flee. The Lombards ask Audoin to let Alboin sit with him at table, but the king answers that by their custom a son may not dine with his father until he has received arms from a foreign king.

Gepidi igitur ac Langobardi conceptam iam dudum
the-Gepids therefore and the-Lombards conceived now long-since
rixam tandem parturiunt, bellumque ab utrisque partibus
the-quarrel at-last bring-forth and-war from both sides

praeparatur. Commisso itaque proelio, dum ambae acies
is-prepared joined and-so the-battle while both lines
fortiter dimicarent et neutra alteri cederet, contigit, ut
bravely fought and neither to-the-other yielded it-happened that
in ipso certamine Alboin, filius Audoin, et Turismodus,
in the-very contest Alboin the-son of-Audoin and Turismod
Turisindi filius, sibi obvii fierent. Quem Alboin spata
of-Turisind the-son each-other meeting became whom Alboin with-a-sword
percutiens, de equo praecipitatum extincxit. Cernentes
striking from the-horse thrown-headlong killed seeing
Gepidi, regis filium, per quem magna ex parte bellum
the-Gepids of-the-king the-son through whom great from part the-war
constiterat, interisse, mox dissolutis animis fugam iniunt.
had-stood to-have-perished soon loosened minds flight they-take-to
Quos Langobardi insequentes acriter sternunt. Caesisque quam
whom the-Lombards pursuing fiercely lay-low and-slain very
plurimis, ad detrahenda occisorum spolia revertuntur. Cumque
many for stripping of-the-slain the-spoils they-return and-when
peracta Langobardi victoria ad sedes proprias remeassent,
completed the-Lombards the-victory to seats their-own had-returned
regi suo Audoin suggerunt, ut eius Alboin conviva
to-king their Audoin they-suggest that his Alboin table-companion
fieret, cuius virtute in proelio victoriam cepissent; ut,
should-become whose by-valor in battle the-victory they-had-taken that
qui patri in periculo, ita et in convivio comes esset.
who to-his-father in danger so also at the-banquet companion should-be
Quibus Audoin respondit, se hoc facere minime posse,
to-whom Audoin answered himself this to-do by-no-means to-be-able
ne ritum gentis infringeret. ‘Scitis’, inquit, ‘non esse aput
lest the-rite of-the-people he-should-break you-know he-says not to-be among

nos consuetudinem, ut regis cum patre filius prandeat,
us the-custom that of-the-king with the-father the-son dine
nisi prius a rege gentis exterae arma suscipiat'.
unless first from a-king of-a-people foreign arms he-receive

Quomodo Alboin cum quadraginta viris ad Turisendum regem, cuius filium interemerat, profectus est arma ab eo petens, ut cum suo patre possit in convivio residere; et quomodo a Turisendo arma accepit

XXIV · ALBOIN AT TURISIND'S TABLE

Alboin goes with forty young men to Turisind, whose son he has killed, and asks for arms. Turisind seats him in his son's place and sighs at the sight, his other son taunts the Lombards as white-footed mares, and a Lombard answers that the prince's own brother lies scattered on the field of Asfeld. Turisind stops the fight and gives Alboin his son's arms, and at home Alboin now sits at his father's table.

His Alboin a patre auditis, quadraginta solummodo
these-things Alboin from his-father heard forty only
secum iuvenes tollens, ad Turisindum, cum quo dudum
with-himself young-men taking to Turisind with whom long-since
bellum gesserat, regem Gepidorum, profectus est, causamque
war he-had-waged the-king of-the-Gepids set-out has and-the-cause
qua venerat intimavit. Qui eum benigne suscipiens, ad suum
for-which he-had-come made-known who him kindly receiving to his
convivium invitavit atque ad suam dexteram, ubi Turismodus,
banquet invited and at his right-hand where Turismod
eius quondam filius, sedere consueverat, collocavit. Inter
his once son to-sit had-been-accustomed placed among
haec dum varii apparatus epulas caperent, Turisindus iam
these-things while of-varied preparation the-feasts they-took Turisind now

dudum sessionem filii mente revolvens natique funus ad
long-since the-seat of-his-son in-mind turning-over and-of-his-son the-death to
animum reducens praesentemque peremptorem eius loco
his-mind bringing-back and-the-present slayer his in-the-place
resedere conspiciens, alta trahens suspiria, sese continere non
to-sit seeing deep drawing sighs himself to-contain not
potuit, sed tandem dolor in voce erupit: 'Amabilis', inquit,
could but at-last the-grief into voice burst lovely he-says
'mihi locus iste est, sed persona quae in eo residet satis
to-me place this is but the-person who in it sits very
ad videndum gravis'. Tunc regis alter qui aderat filius,
for seeing heavy then of-the-king the-other who was-present son
patris sermone stimulatus, Langobardos iniuriis lacessere
of-his-father by-the-speech spurred the-Lombards with-insults to-provoke
coepit, asserens eos, quia a suris inferius candidis utebantur
began asserting them because from the-calves downward white they-used
fasceolis, equabus quibus crure tenus pedes albi sunt similes
bands to-mares whose to-the-shin as-far-as the-feet white are like
esse, dicens: 'Fetilae sunt equae, quas similatis'. Tunc unus e
to-be saying fetilae are mares which you-resemble then one of
Langobardis ad haec ita respondit: 'Perge', ait, 'in campum
the-Lombards to these-things thus answered go says to the-field
Asfeld, ibique procul dubio poteris experiri, quam valide
Asfeld and-there beyond doubt you-shall-be-able to-try how strongly
istae quas equas nominas praevalent calcitrare; ubi sic tui
those whom mares you-name prevail to-kick where thus your
dispersa sunt ossa germani quemadmodum vilis iumenti
scattered are the-bones of-the-brother as of-a-vile beast-of-burden
in mediis pratis'. His auditis, Gepidi confusionem ferre
in the-middle meadows these heard the-Gepids the-confusion to-bear
non valentes, vehementer in ira commoti sunt manifestasque
not being-able violently in anger moved were and-the-manifest

iniurias vindicare nituntur; Langobardi econtra parati ad
insults to-avenge strive the-Lombards on-the-other-hand ready for
bellum, omnes ad gladiorum capulos manus iniciunt. Tunc
war all to of-the-swords the-hilts hands throw then
rex a mensa prosiliens, sese in medium obiecit suosque
the-king from the-table leaping-forth himself into the-midst threw and-his-men
ab ira belloque conpescuit, interminans primitus eum
from anger and-war restrained threatening first him
puniri, qui primus pugnam commisisset; non esse victoriam
to-be-punished who first the-fight had-joined not to-be a-victory
Deo placitam, dicens, cum quis in domo propria hospitem
to-God pleasing saying when anyone in house his-own a-guest
perimit. Sic denique iurgio conpresso, iam deinceps laetis
kills thus finally the-quarrel suppressed now thereafter with-joyful
animis convivium peragunt. Sumensque Turisindus arma
minds the-banquet they-complete and-taking Turisind the-arms
Turismodi filii sui, ea Alboin tradidit, eumque cum pace
of-Turismod son his them to-Alboin handed-over and-him with peace
incolomem ad patris regnum remisit. Reversus ad patrem
safe to of-his-father the-kingdom sent-back having-returned to his-father
Alboin, eius dehinc conviva effectus est. Qui dum cum
Alboin his thereafter table-companion made was who while with
patre laetus regias delicias caperet, ordine cuncta retulit,
his-father joyful the-royal delights he-took in-order all-things related
quae illi aput Gepidos in Turismodi regia contigissent.
which to-him among the-Gepids in of-Turismod the-palace had-happened
Mirantur qui aderant et laudant audaciam Alboin, nec
wonder those-who were-present and praise the-daring of-Alboin nor
minus adtollunt laudibus Turisindi maximam fidem.
less they-raise with-praises of-Turisind the-greatest faith

De regno Iustiniani et victoriis eius

XXV · JUSTINIAN, HIS VICTORIES, AND HIS LAWS

Justinian rules the empire with good fortune: through Belisarius he defeats the Persians, destroys the Vandals, and conquers the Goths, and through John he crushes the Moors. He reduces the laws to the Code, the Digest, the Institutes, and the Novels, and builds Hagia Sophia. In his time Cassiodorus, Dionysius with his Easter reckoning, Priscian, and Arator flourish.

Hac tempestate Iustinianus augustus Romanum imperium
at-this time Justinian augustus the-Roman empire
felici sorte regebat. Qui et bella prospere gessit et
with-happy fortune ruled who both wars prosperously waged and
in causis civilibus mirificus extitit. Nam per Belisarium
in causes civil wonderful stood-out for through Belisarius
patricium Persas fortiter devicit, perque ipsum Belisarium
the-patrician the-Persians bravely conquered and-through the-same Belisarius
Wandalorum gentem, capto eorum rege Gelismero, usque
of-the-Vandals the-people captured their king Gelimer all-the-way
ad internitionem delevit Africamque totam post annos
to destruction destroyed and-Africa whole after years
nonaginta et sex Romano imperio restituit. Rursumque
ninety and six to-the-Roman empire restored and-again
Belisarii viribus Gothorum in Italia gentem, capto
of-Belisarius by-the-strength of-the-Goths in Italy the-people captured
Witichis eorum rege, superavit. Mauros quoque post
Witiges their king he-overcame the-Moors also after
haec Africam infestantes eorumque regem Amtalan per
these-things Africa infesting and-their king Amtalas through
Iohannem exconsule mirabili virtute protrivit. Pari etiam
John the-ex-consul with-wonderful valor crushed in-like also

modo et alias gentes belli iure conpressit. Quam
manner also other peoples of-war by-the-right subdued which
ob causam propter horum omnium victorias, ut
on-account-of cause on-account-of of-these all the-victories that
Alamannicus, Gothicus, Francicus, Germanicus, Anticus,
Alamannicus Gothicus Francicus Germanicus Anticus
Alanicus, Wandalicus Africanusque diceretur, habere
Alanicus Vandalicus and-Africanus he-should-be-called to-have
agnomina meruit. Leges quoque Romanorum, quarum
the-surnames he-merited the-laws also of-the-Romans whose
prolixitas nimia erat et inutilis dissonantia, mirabili
prolixity excessive was and useless discord with-wonderful
brevitate correxit. Nam omnes constitutiones principum, quae
brevity he-corrected for all the-constitutions of-the-princes which
utique multis in voluminibus habebantur, intra duodecim
certainly many in volumes were-held within twelve
libros coartavit eodemque volumen codicem Iustinianum
books he-compressed and-the-same volume the-code Justinian
appellari praecepit. Rursumque singulorum magistratuum sive
to-be-called he-ordered and-again of-single magistrates or
iudicum leges, quae usque ad duo milia pene libros
judges the-laws which all-the-way to two thousand almost books
erant extensae, intra quinquaginta librorum numerum redegit,
were stretched within fifty of-books the-number he-reduced
eumque codicem digestorum sive pandectarum vocabulo
and-it the-code of-digests or of-pandects by-the-word
nuncupavit. Quattuor etiam institutionum libros, in quibus
he-named four also of-institutes books in which
breviter universarum legum textus conprehenditur, noviter
briefly of-all laws the-text is-comprised newly
conposuit. Novas quoque leges, quas ipse statuerat, in unum
he-composed the-new also laws which he had-established into one

volumen redactas, eodem codicem novellam nuncupari sancivit.
volume collected the-same code novel to-be-named he-decreed
Extruxit quoque idem princeps intra urbem Constantinopolim
built also the-same prince within the-city Constantinople
Christo domino, qui est sapientia Dei patris, templum, quod
to-Christ the-Lord who is the-wisdom of-God the-father a-temple which
Greco vocabulo Agian Sophian, id est sanctam sapientiam,
by-a-Greek word Hagia Sophia that is holy wisdom
nominavit. Cuius opus adeo cuncta aedificia excellit, ut in
he-named whose work so-much all buildings excels that in
totis terrarum spatiis huic simile non possit inveniri. Erat
the-whole of-the-lands spaces to-this like not can to-be-found was
enim hic princeps fide catholicus, in operibus rectus, in
for this prince in-faith catholic in works upright in
iudiciis iustus; ideoque ei omnia concurrebant in bonum.
judgments just and-therefore for-him all-things ran-together for good
Huius temporibus Cassiodorus aput urbem Romam tam
in-his times Cassiodorus at the-city Rome as-much
seculari quam divina scientia claruit. Qui inter cetera
in-secular as in-divine knowledge was-famous who among the-other-things
quae nobiliter scripsit psalmorum praecipue occulta
which nobly he-wrote of-the-psalms especially the-hidden-things
potentissime reseravit. Hic primitus consul, deinde senator,
most-powerfully unlocked he first consul then senator
ad postremum vero monachus exstitit. Hoc etiam tempore
at the-last indeed monk became at-this also time
Dionisius abba in urbe Roma constitutus pascale calculum
Dionysius the-abbot in the-city Rome settled the-Easter reckoning
miranda argumentatione conposuit. Tunc quoque aput
with-wonderful argumentation composed then also at
Constantinopolim Priscianus Caesariensis gramaticae artis,
Constantinople Priscian of-Caesarea of-the-grammatical art

ut ita dixerim, profunda rimatus est. Tuncque nihilominus
as so I-might-say the-depths searched-out has and-then nonetheless
Arator, Romanae ecclesiae subdiaconus, poeta mirabilis,
Arator of-the-Roman church subdeacon a-poet wonderful
apostolorum actus versibus exametris exaravit.
of-the-apostles the-acts in-verses hexameter wrote-out

De beato Benedicto et miraculis et laudibus eius

XXVI · SAINT BENEDICT, AND PAUL'S VERSES ON HIM

In these days Benedict shines at Subiaco and then at Cassino, as Gregory tells in his Dialogues, and Paul honors him with a couplet on each of his miracles and with a hymn. He adds, from the poet Mark, that three ravens follow Benedict from Subiaco and two angels show him the road, and that a servant of God at Cassino is told to give way to another friend.

His quoque diebus beatissimus Benedictus pater et prius in
in-these also days the-most-blessed Benedict the-father both first in
loco qui Sublacus dicitur, qui ab urbe Roma quadraginta
the-place which Subiaco is-called which from the-city Rome forty
milibus abest, et postea in castro Cassini, quod Arx
miles is-distant and afterward in the-fort of-Cassino which the-Citadel
appellatur, et magnae vitae meritis et apostolicis virtutibus
is-called both of-great life by-merits and by-apostolic powers
effulsit. Cuius vitam, sicut notum est, beatus papa Gregorius
shone-forth whose life as known it-is the-blessed pope Gregory
in suis dialogis suavi sermone conposuit. Ego quoque pro
in his Dialogues with-sweet speech composed I also for

parvitate ingenii mei ad honorem tanti patris singula eius
the-smallness of-wit my to the-honor of-so-great a-father single his
miracula per singula distica elegiaco metro hoc modo contexui:
miracles in single distichs in-elegiac meter in-this way wove

Ordiar unde tuos, sacer o Benedicte, triumphos,
I-shall-begin whence your holy O Benedict triumphs
virtutum cumulos ordiar unde tuos?
of-virtues the-heaps I-shall-begin whence your
Euge, beate pater, meritum qui nomine prodis,
hail O-blessed father the-merit who in-name you-bring-forth
fulgida lux secli, euge, beate pater!
O-shining light of-the-age hail O-blessed father
Nursia, plaude satis tanto sublimis alumno;
O-Nursia applaud enough for-so-great lofty foster-son
astra ferens mundo, Nursia, plaude satis!
stars bearing to-the-world O-Nursia applaud enough
O puerile decus, transcendens moribus annos
O boyish glory surpassing in-manners the-years
exuperansque senes, o puerile decus!
and-surpassing old-men O boyish glory
Flos, paradise, tuus despexit florida mundi;
the-flower O-paradise your despised the-flowery-things of-the-world
sprevit opes Romae flos, paradise, tuus.
spurned the-riches of-Rome the-flower O-paradise your
Vas pedagoga tulit diremptum pectore tristi;
the-vessel the-nurse bore broken with-breast sad
laeta reformatum vas pedagoga tulit.
joyful restored the-vessel the-nurse bore
Urbe vocamen habens tyronem cautibus abdit;
from-the-City a-name having the-recruit among-the-rocks he-hides

fert pietatis opem Urbe vocamen habens.
he-brings of-piety the-help from-the-City a-name having
Laudibus antra sonant mortalibus abdita cunctis;
with-praises the-caves resound to-mortals hidden all
cognita, Christe, tibi laudibus antra sonant.
known O-Christ to-you with-praises the-caves resound
Frigora, flabra, nives perfers tribus impiger annis;
colds blasts snows you-endure for-three tireless years
tempnis amore Dei frigora, flabra, nives.
you-scorn by-the-love of-God colds blasts snows
Fraus veneranda placet, pietatis furta probantur.
the-fraud venerable pleases of-piety the-thefts are-approved
Qua sacer altus erat, fraus veneranda placet.
by-which the-holy-one nourished was the-fraud venerable pleases
Signat adesse dapes agapes, sed lividus obstat;
he-signs to-be-present the-feasts of-the-love-meal but the-envious-one obstructs
nil minus alma fides signat adesse dapes.
nothing less the-nurturing faith signs to-be-present the-feasts
Orgia rite colit, Christo qui accommodat aurem;
the-rites duly he-keeps for-Christ who lends his-ear
abstemium pascens, orgia rite colit.
the-abstinent feeding the-rites duly he-keeps
Pabula grata ferunt avidi ad spelea subulci;
fodder pleasing bring eager to the-caves the-swineherds
pectoribus laetis pabula grata ferunt.
with-breasts joyful fodder pleasing they-bring
Ignis ab igne perit, lacerant dum viscera sentes;
fire by fire perishes they-tear while the-vitals the-briers
carneus aethereo ignis ab igne perit.
fleshly the-ethereal fire by fire perishes
Pestis iniqua latens procul est deprensa sagaci;
the-pest wicked lurking far is caught by-the-shrewd

non tulit arma crucis pestis iniqua latens.
not it-bore the-arms of-the-cross the-pest wicked lurking
Lenia flagra vagam sistunt moderamine mentem;
gentle scourges the-wandering they-stay by-control mind
excludunt pestem lenia flagra vagam.
they-shut-out the-pest gentle scourges wandering
Unda perennis aquae nativo e marmore manat;
the-wave perennial of-water native from marble flows
arida corda rigat unda perennis aquae.
the-arid hearts it-waters the-wave perennial of-water
Gurgitis ima, calybs capulo divulse, petisti;
of-the-gulf the-depths O-steel from-the-haft torn-away you-sought
deseris alta petens gurgitis ima, calybs.
you-desert the-heights seeking of-the-gulf the-depths O-steel
Iussa paterna gerens dilapsus vivit in aequor;
the-commands paternal bearing having-slipped he-lives into the-sea
currit vectus aquis iussa paterna gerens.
he-runs carried by-the-waters the-commands paternal bearing
Praebuit unda viam prumpto ad praecepta magistri;
offered the-wave a-way to-the-ready to the-precepts of-the-master
cursori ignaro praebuit unda viam.
to-the-runner unknowing offered the-wave a-way
Tu quoque, parve puer, raperis, nec occidis, undis;
you also O-little boy you-are-snatched nor do-you-die in-the-waves
testis ades verax tu quoque, parve puer.
witness you-are-present truthful you also O-little boy
Perfida corda gemunt stimulis agitata malignis;
perfidious hearts groan by-goads stirred malignant
tartareis flammis perfida corda gemunt.
in-hellish flames the-perfidious hearts groan
Fert alimenta corax digitis oblata benignis;
brings the-food the-raven by-fingers offered kindly

dira procul iussus fert alimenta corax.
the-dire far-off ordered brings food the-raven
Pectora sacra dolent inimicum labe peremptum;
breasts holy grieve the-enemy by-ruin killed
discipuli excessum pectora sacra dolent.
of-the-disciple the-departure the-breasts holy grieve
Lyris amoena petens ducibus comitaris opimis;
of-the-Liris pleasant-places seeking by-leaders you-are-accompanied rich
caelitus adtraheris Lyris amoena petens.
from-heaven you-are-drawn of-the-Liris pleasant-places seeking
Anguis inique, furis, luco spoliatus et aris;
O-snake wicked you-rage of-the-grove despoiled and of-the-altars
amissis populis, anguis inique, furis.
lost the-peoples O-snake wicked you-rage
Improbe sessor, abi, sine dentur marmora muris!
O-wicked sitter go-away allow be-given marbles to-the-walls
Cogeris imperio; improbe sessor, abi!
you-are-compelled by-command O-wicked sitter go-away
Cernitur ignis edax falsis insurgere flammis,
is-seen a-fire devouring with-false to-rise-up flames
nec tibi, gemma micans, cernitur ignis edax.
nor to-you O-gem flashing is-seen fire devouring
Dum struitur paries, lacerantur viscera fratris;
while is-built the-wall are-torn the-vitals of-the-brother
sospes adest frater, dum struitur paries.
safe is-present the-brother while is-built the-wall
Abdita facta patent, patulo produntur edaces;
hidden deeds lie-open openly are-betrayed the-greedy
muneris accepti abdita facta patent.
of-a-gift received the-hidden deeds lie-open
Saeve tyranne, tuae frustrantur retia fraudis;
O-savage tyrant of-your are-frustrated the-nets of-fraud

frena capis vitae, saeve tyranne, tuae.
the-reins you-take of-life O-savage tyrant your
Moenia celsa Numae nullo subruentur ab hoste;
the-walls lofty of-Numa no shall-be-overthrown by enemy
turbo, ait, evertet moenia celsa Numae.
a-whirlwind says shall-overturn the-walls lofty of-Numa
Plecteris hoste gravi, ne lites munus ad aram;
you-are-punished by-an-enemy heavy lest you-offer the-gift at the-altar
munera fers aris; plecteris hoste gravi.
gifts you-bring to-the-altars you-are-punished by-an-enemy heavy
Omnia septa gregis praescitum est tradita genti;
all the-folds of-the-flock foreknown it-is handed-over to-a-people
gens eadem reparat omnia septa gregis.
the-people same restores all the-folds of-the-flock
Fraudis amice puer, suado captaris ab ydro;
of-fraud O-friend boy persuasive you-are-caught by the-water-snake
ydro non caperis, fraudis amice puer.
by-the-water-snake not you-are-caught of-fraud O-friend boy
Mens tumefacta, sile, tacita et ne carpe videntem!
O-mind swollen be-silent silent and not carp-at the-seeing-one
Cuncta patent vati; mens tumefacta sile!
all-things lie-open to-the-seer O-mind swollen be-silent
Pellitur atra fames delatis caelitus escis;
is-driven-off black famine brought from-heaven with-foods
nilominus mentis pellitur atra fames.
nonetheless of-the-mind is-driven-off black famine
Pectora cuncta stupent, quod eras sine corpore praesens;
breasts all are-astounded that you-were without body present
quod pervisa mones, pectora cuncta stupent.
because the-things-seen you-warn breasts all are-astounded
Vocis ad imperium tempnunt dare frena loquelis;
of-the-voice at the-command they-scorn to-give reins to-their-talk

e bustis fugiunt vocis ad imperium.
from the-tombs they-flee of-the-voice at the-command
Vocis ad imperium sacris non esse sinuntur;
of-the-voice at the-command at-the-rites not to-be are-allowed
intersunt sacris vocis ad imperium.
they-are-present at-the-rites of-the-voice at the-command
Tellus hiulca sinu corpus propellit humatum;
the-earth gaping from-its-bosom the-body thrusts-out buried
iussa tenet corpus tellus hiulca sinu.
bidden holds the-body the-earth gaping in-its-bosom
Perfidus ille draco mulcet properare fugacem;
perfidious that dragon soothes to-hasten the-fugitive
sistit iter vetitum perfidus ille draco.
stops the-journey forbidden perfidious that dragon
Exitiale malum capitis decussit honorem;
deadly evil of-the-head shook-off the-honor
it procul imperiis exitiale malum.
goes far by-the-commands the-deadly evil
Fulva metalla pius, nec habet, promittit egenti;
the-tawny metals the-pious nor has he-promises to-the-needy
caelitus excepit fulva metalla pius.
from-heaven received the-tawny metals the-pious
Tu miserande, cutem variant cui fella colubrae,
you O-pitiable the-skin dye to-whom the-galls of-the-serpent
incolumem recipis, tu miserande, cutem.
unharmed you-receive-back you O-pitiable the-skin
Aspera saxa vitrum rapiunt, nec frangere possunt;
rough rocks the-glass seize nor to-break can
inlaesum servant aspera saxa vitrum.
unharmed keep the-rough rocks the-glass
Cur, promoconde, times stillam praebere lechiti?
why O-steward do-you-fear a-drop to-give of-the-flask

Dolia, cerne, fluunt; cur, promoconde, times?
the-casks see flow why O-steward do-you-fear
Unde medela tibi, spes est cur nulla salutis?
whence healing to-you hope is why none of-salvation
Qui semper perimis, unde medela tibi?
who always you-kill whence healing to-you
Ah lacrimande senex, hostili concidis ictu;
ah O-lamentable old-man hostile you-fall by-a-stroke
ictu sed resipis, ah lacrimande senex.
by-the-stroke but you-recover ah O-lamentable old-man
Barbara lora manus ignaras criminis arcent;
barbarous thongs the-hands ignorant of-crime restrain
sponte sua fugiunt barbara lora manus.
by-will their flee the-barbarous thongs the-hands
Ille superbus equo reboans clamore minaci,
that-man proud on-horse roaring with-shout threatening
stratus humi recubat ille superbus equo.
stretched on-the-ground lies that-man proud on-horse
Colla paterna ferunt extincti viscera nati;
the-necks paternal bear of-the-dead the-vitals son
viventem natum colla paterna ferunt.
living the-son the-necks paternal bear
Omnia vincit amor, vinxit soror imbre beatum;
all-things conquers love bound the-sister by-the-shower the-blessed-one
somnus abest oculis; omnia vincit amor.
sleep is-absent from-the-eyes all-things conquers love
Simplicitate placens instar petit alta columbae;
by-simplicity pleasing in-the-likeness it-seeks the-heights of-a-dove
regna poli penetrat simplicitate placens.
the-realms of-the-pole it-penetrates by-simplicity pleasing

O nimis apte Deo, mundus cui panditur omnis,
O exceedingly fitted to-God the-world to-whom is-laid-open whole
abdita qui lustras, o nimis apte Deo!
the-hidden-things who you-survey O exceedingly fitted to-God
Flammeus orbis habet iustum super aethera nantem;
a-fiery orb holds the-just-one above the-airs swimming
quem pius ussit amor, flammeus orbis habet.
whom pious burned love the-fiery orb holds
Ter vocitatus adest testis novitatis habendus;
thrice called he-is-present a-witness of-the-novelty to-be-had
carus amore patris ter vocitatus adest.
dear by-the-love of-the-father thrice called he-is-present
Dux bone, bella monens exemplis pectora firmas,
O-leader good wars warning by-examples breasts you-strengthen
primus in arma ruis, dux bone, bella monens.
first into arms you-rush O-leader good wars warning
Congrua signa dedit vitae consortia linquens;
fitting signs he-gave of-life the-fellowships leaving
ad vitam properans congrua signa dedit.
to life hastening fitting signs he-gave
Psalmicen assiduus numquam dabat otia plectro;
the-psalmist assiduous never gave leisure to-the-plectrum
sacra canens obiit psalmicen assiduus.
holy-things singing he-died the-psalmist assiduous
Mens quibus una fuit, tumulo retinentur eodem;
mind to-whom one was in-tomb are-held the-same
gloria par retinet, mens quibus una fuit.
glory equal holds mind to-whom one was
Splendida visa via est facibus stipata coruscis;
shining seen a-way is with-torches crowded flashing
qua sacer ascendit splendida visa via est.
by-which the-holy-one ascended shining seen a-way is

Rupea septa petens nancta est errore salutem;
rocky enclosures seeking found has by-error salvation
errorem evasit rupea septa petens.
error she-escaped rocky enclosures seeking
Poemata parva dedit famulus pro munere supplex;
poems small gave the-servant for a-gift suppliant
exul, inops, tenuis poemata parva dedit.
an-exile needy slight poems small gave
Sint, precor, apta tibi, caelestis tramitis index;
let-them-be I-pray fit to-you of-the-heavenly path O-guide
O Benedicte pater, sint, precor, apta tibi!
O Benedict father let-them-be I-pray fit to-you

Ymnum quoque singula eiusdem patris miracula continentem
a-hymn also single of-the-same father miracles containing
metro iambico archiloico ita texuimus.
in-meter iambic archilochian thus we-have-woven

Fratres, alacri pectore
O-brothers with-eager breast
venite concentu pari,
come with-harmony equal
fruamur huius inclitae
let-us-enjoy of-this renowned
festivitatis gaudiis.
of-the-festivity the-joys

Hac Benedictus aurea
on-this Benedict golden
ostensor arti tramitis
the-revealer of-the-narrow path
ad regna conscendit pater,
to the-realms ascended the-father
captans laborum praemia.
seizing of-labors the-rewards
Effulsit ut sidus novum,
he-shone-forth as a-star new
mundana pellens nubila.
worldly driving-off clouds
Aetatis ipso limine
of-age on-the-very threshold
despexit aevi florida.
he-despised of-the-age the-flowery-things
Miraculorum praepotens,
of-miracles most-powerful
afflatus Alti flamine,
breathed-on of-the-Most-High by-the-breath
resplenduit prodigiis
he-shone-again with-prodigies
ventura seclo praecinens.
the-things-to-come to-the-age foretelling
Laturus esum pluribus,
about-to-bring food to-very-many
panis reformat vasculum;
of-bread he-restores the-little-vessel
artum petens ergastulum,
a-narrow seeking prison
extinxit ignes ignibus.
he-extinguished fires by-fires

Fregit veneni baiulam
he-broke of-poison the-bearer
crucis per arma cymbiam.
of-the-cross through the-arms the-cup
Coercuit mentem vagam
he-restrained the-mind wandering
leni flagello corporis.
with-gentle scourge of-the-body
Funduntur amnes rupibus.
are-poured rivers from-the-rocks
Redit calybs e gurgite,
returns the-steel from the-gulf
currit per undas obsequens.
he-runs over the-waves obeying
Peplo puer vitat necem.
by-the-cloak the-boy escapes death
Virus patescit abditum.
the-poison lies-open hidden
Mandata praepes efficit.
the-commands swift he-carries-out
Hostem ruina conterit.
the-enemy the-ruin crushes
Cedit fremens leo grave.
yields roaring the-lion heavy
Immota fit moles levis.
unmoved becomes the-mass light
Rogus migrat fantasticus.
the-pyre moves phantasmal
Fractum revisit sospitas.
the-broken revisits safety
Excessus absentum patet.
the-departure of-the-absent lies-open

Rector vafer, deprenderis.
O-ruler cunning you-are-caught
Inique possessor, fugis.
O-wicked possessor you-flee
Futura praenoscimini;
the-future-things you-foreknow
arcana cor non contigis.
secrets the-heart not you-hide
Fundantur aedes somniis.
are-founded buildings by-dreams
Tellus vomit cadavera.
the-earth vomits corpses
Dracone frenatur fugax.
by-the-dragon is-reined the-fugitive
Aether pluit nomismata.
the-air rains coins
Vitrum resistit cautibus.
the-glass resists the-rocks
Manant olivo dolia.
flow with-oil the-casks
Vinctum resolvit visio.
the-bound looses a-vision
Vitam receptant funera.
life receive-back the-dead
Tanti potestas luminis
of-so-great the-power of-light
voto sororis vincitur.
by-the-vow of-the-sister is-conquered
Quo plus amat quis, plus valet
by-what more loves anyone more he-avails
enare quam cernit polum.
to-swim-out whom he-sees the-pole

Non ante seclis cognitum
not before to-the-ages known
noctu iubar effulgurat,
by-night a-radiance flashes
quo totus orbis cernitur
by-which the-whole world is-seen
flammisque subvehi pius.
and-by-flames to-be-carried-up the-pious-one
Haec inter instar nectaris
these-things among in-the-likeness of-nectar
miranda plectro claruit.
wondrous-things with-the-plectrum shone
Nam pinxit apte lineam
for he-painted fittingly the-line
vitae sacrae sequacibus.
of-life holy for-his-followers
Iam dux alumnis at potens,
now O-leader to-the-foster-sons but powerful
adsis gregis suspiriis,
be-present of-the-flock to-the-sighs
gliscat bonis ydrum cavens,
let-him-grow for-the-good the-water-snake avoiding
sit callis ut sequax tui!
let-be the-path that a-follower of-you

Libet me breviter referre, quod beatus Gregorius papa
it-pleases me briefly to-relate what blessed Gregory the-pope
minime in huius sanctissimi patris vita descripsit. Denique
by-no-means in of-this most-holy father the-life described finally
cum divina ammonitione a Sublacu in hunc, ubi requiescit,
when by-divine admonition from Subiaco into this where he-rests

locum per quinquaginta ferme milia adventaret, tres eum
place through fifty about miles he-was-approaching three him
corvi, quos alere solitus erat, sunt circumvolitantes secuti.
ravens which to-feed accustomed he-was have flying-around followed
Cui ad omne bivium, usque dum huc veniret, duo
to-whom at every fork-of-the-road all-the-way until hither he-came two
angeli in figura iuvenum apparentes, ostenderunt ei, quam
angels in the-figure of-young-men appearing showed to-him what
viam arripere deberet. In loco autem isto quidam Dei servus
road to-take he-ought in place moreover this a-certain of-God servant
tunc habitaculum habebat, ad quem divinitus ita dictum est:
then a-dwelling had to whom divinely thus said it-was

'His tu parce locis, alter amicus adest'.
these you spare places another friend is-present

Hic autem, hoc est in Cassini arcem, perveniens, in
he moreover that is into of-Cassino the-citadel arriving in
magna se semper abstinentia coartavit. Sed praecipue
great himself always abstinence constrained but especially
quadragesimae tempore inclausus et remotus a mundi
of-Lent at-the-time shut-in and removed from of-the-world
strepitu mansit. Haec omnia ex Marci poetae carmine
the-din remained these all from of-Mark the-poet the-song
sumpsi, qui ad eundem patrem huc veniens, aliquod versus
I-took who to the-same father hither coming some verses
in eius laudem composuit, quos in his libellis cavens
in his praise composed which in these little-books avoiding
nimiam longitudinem minime descripsi. Certum tamen
excessive length by-no-means I-have-written-down certain yet
est, hunc egregium patrem vocatum caelitus ob hoc ad hunc
it-is this excellent father called from-heaven for this to this

fertilem locum et cui opima vallis subiacet advenisse, ut
fertile place and to-which a-rich valley lies-below to-have-come that
hic multorum monachorum, sicut et nunc Deo praesule facta
here of-many monks as also now God presiding made
est, congregatio fieret. His cursim, quae omittenda
has-been a-congregation should-be-made these hastily which to-be-omitted
non erant, narratis, ad nostrae seriem revertamur historiae.
not were narrated to of-our the-series let-us-return history

De morte Audoin et regno Alboin, et quomodo Alboin Cunimundum regem Gepidorum superavit et filiam eius Rosamundam in matrimonium duxit

XXVII · ALBOIN DEFEATS CUNIMUND AND TAKES ROSAMUND

Alboin, the tenth king, marries Chlotsuinda, daughter of the Frankish king Chlothar. When the Gepid king Cunimund breaks the treaty, Alboin allies with the Avars, destroys the Gepids, kills Cunimund, and makes a drinking cup of his skull. He marries Cunimund's daughter Rosamund, to his own ruin, and his fame lives on in the songs of many peoples.

Igitur Audoin, de quo praemiseramus, Langobardorum rex
therefore Audoin of whom we-had-spoken-before of-the-Lombards the-king
Rodelindam in matrimonio habuit; quae ei Alboin, virum
Rodelinda in marriage had who to-him Alboin a-man
bellis aptum et per omnia strenuum, peperit. Mortuus
for-wars fit and in all-things vigorous bore dead
itaque est Audoin, ac deinde regum iam decimus Alboin
and-so was Audoin and then of-the-kings now tenth Alboin
ad regendam patriam cunctorum votis accessit. Qui cum
to ruling the-fatherland of-all by-the-wishes came who when
famosissimum et viribus clarum ubique nomen haberet,
a-most-famous and for-strength renowned everywhere name he-had

Chlotarius rex Francorum Chlotsuindam ei suam filiam in
Chlothar king of-the-Franks Chlotsuinda to-him his daughter in
matrimonio sociavit. De qua unam tantum filiam Alpsuindam
marriage joined of whom one only daughter Alpsuinda
nomine genuit. Obiit interea Turisindus rex Gepidorum;
by-name he-begot died meanwhile Turisind king of-the-Gepids
cui successit Cunimundus in regno. Qui vindicare
to-whom succeeded Cunimund in the-kingdom who to-avenge
veteres Gepidorum iniurias cupiens, inrupto cum Langobardis
the-old of-the-Gepids injuries desiring broken with the-Lombards
foedere, bellum potius quam pacem elegit. Alboin vero cum
the-treaty war rather than peace chose Alboin but with
Avaribus, qui primum Hunni, postea de regis proprii
the-Avars who first Huns afterward from of-the-king their-own
nomine Avares appellati sunt, foedus perpetuum iniit. Dehinc
the-name Avars called were a-treaty perpetual entered thereafter
ad praeparatum a Gepidis bellum profectus est. Qui cum
to the-prepared by the-Gepids war set-out has who when
adversus eum e diverso properarent, Avares, ut cum Alboin
against him from the-opposite they-hastened the-Avars as with Alboin
statuerant, eorum patriam invaserunt. Tristis ad Cunimundum
they-had-agreed their fatherland invaded sad to Cunimund
nuntius veniens, invasisse Avares eius terminos edicit. Qui
a-messenger coming to-have-invaded the-Avars his borders announces who
prostratus animo et utrimque in angustiis positus, hortatur
struck-down in-mind and on-both-sides in straits placed exhorts
tamen suos primum cum Langobardis confligere; quos si
yet his-men first with the-Lombards to-clash whom if
superare valerent, demum Hunnorum exercitum e patria
to-overcome they-were-able at-last of-the-Huns the-army from the-fatherland
pellerent. Committitur ergo proelium. Pugnatum est totis
they-might-drive is-joined therefore the-battle fought it-was with-all

viribus. Langobardi victores effecti sunt, tanta in Gepidos
strength the-Lombards victors made were such against the-Gepids
ira saevientes, ut eos ad internitionem usque delerent
with-anger raging that them to destruction up-to they-destroyed
atque ex copiosa multitudine vix nuntius superesset. In
and from the-copious multitude scarcely a-messenger survived in
eo proelio Alboin Cunimundum occidit, caputque illius
that battle Alboin Cunimund killed and-the-head his
sublatum, ad bibendum ex eo poculum fecit. Quod genus
taken-off for drinking from it a-cup made which kind
poculi apud eos 'scala' dicitur, lingua vero Latina patera
of-cup among them scala is-called in-the-tongue indeed Latin patera
vocitatur. Cuius filiam nomine Rosimundam cum magna
is-called whose daughter by-name Rosamund with great
simul multitudine diversi sexus et aetatis duxit captivam;
together a-multitude of-different sex and age he-led captive
quam, quia Chlotsuinda obierat, in suam, ut post patuit,
whom because Chlotsuinda had-died to his as afterward appeared
perniciem, duxit uxorem. Tunc Langobardi tantam adepti
ruin he-took as-wife then the-Lombards such obtained
sunt praedam, ut iam ad amplissimas pervenirent divitias.
have booty that now to most-ample they-came riches
Gepidorum vero ita genus est deminutum, ut ex illo iam
of-the-Gepids but so the-race was diminished that from that now
tempore ultra non habuerint regem. Sed universi qui superesse
time further not they-had a-king but all who to-survive
bello poterant aut Langobardis subiecti sunt, aut usque
the-war could either to-the-Lombards subjected were or up-to
hodie, Hunnis eorum patriam possidentibus, duro imperio
today the-Huns their fatherland possessing under-hard rule
subiecti gemunt. Alboin vero ita praeclarum longe lateque
subjected groan of-Alboin but so famous far and-wide

nomen percrebuit, ut hactenus etiam tam aput Baioariorum
the-name spread that until-now even as-much among of-the-Bavarians
gentem quamque et Saxonum, sed et alios eiusdem linguae
the-people as also of-the-Saxons but also other of-the-same tongue
homines eius liberalitas et gloria bellorumque felicitas et
men his liberality and glory and-of-wars the-good-fortune and
virtus in eorum carminibus celebretur. Arma quoque praecipua
valor in their songs is-celebrated arms also excellent
sub eo fabricata fuisse, a multis hucusque narratur.
under him made to-have-been by many until-now is-told

BOOK II

Quomodo Langobardi conducti a Narsete chartolario eidem contra Gothos auxilium praestiterunt

I · LOMBARDS FIGHT FOR NARSES AGAINST THE GOTHS

Narses, the imperial chartularius governing Italy, prepares war against Totila, king of the Goths, and asks his ally Alboin for help. Alboin sends a chosen band across the Adriatic, which fights beside the Romans until the Goths and Totila are destroyed and goes home with gifts. While the Lombards hold Pannonia, they help the empire against its enemies.

Igitur cum circumquaque frequentes Langobardorum victoriae
therefore when round-about frequent of-the-Lombards the-victories
personarent, Narsis chartolarius imperialis, qui tunc praeerat
resounded Narses the-chartulary imperial who then was-over
Italiae, bellum adversus Totilam Gothorum regem praeparans,
Italy war against Totila of-the-Goths the-king preparing
cum iam pridem Langobardos foederatos haberet, legatos
since now long-before the-Lombards allied he-had envoys
ad Alboin dirigit, quatenus ei pugnaturum cum Gothis
to Alboin directs so-that to-him about-to-fight with the-Goths
auxilium ministraret. Tunc Alboin electam e suis manum
help he-should-furnish then Alboin a-chosen from his-men band
direxit, qui Romanis adversum Getas suffragium ferrent.
sent which to-the-Romans against the-Getae support should-bring
Qui per maris Adriatici sinum in Italiam transvecti,
who through of-the-sea Adriatic the-gulf into Italy carried-across
sociati Romanis pugnam inierunt cum Gothis; quibus
joined to-the-Romans battle entered with the-Goths whom
usque ad internitionem pariter cum Totila suo rege deletis,
all-the-way to destruction together with Totila their king destroyed

honorati multis muneribus victores ad propria remearunt.
honored with-many gifts victors to their-own returned
Omnique tempore quo Langobardi Pannoniam possiderunt
and-in-all the-time in-which the-Lombards Pannonia possessed
Romanae rei publicae adversum aemulos adiutores fuerunt.
of-the-Roman thing public against the-rivals helpers they-were

Quomodo Narsis Buccellinum et Amingum Francorum duces superavit, et de morte Leutharii tercii ducis

II · NARSES DEFEATS BUCCELIN AND AMINGUS

Narses makes war on Buccelin, whom the Frankish king Theudebert has left with Amingus to subdue Italy, and after Buccelin has plundered nearly all of it, defeats and kills him at Tannetum. Amingus, helping the Gothic count Widin in his revolt, dies by Narses' sword, and Widin is exiled. A third duke, Leuthar, dies a natural death by Lake Garda on his way home laden with booty.

His temporibus Narsis etiam Buccellino duci bellum
in-these times Narses also on-Buccelin the-duke war
intulit. Quem Theudepertus rex Francorum, cum in Italia
brought whom Theudebert king of-the-Franks when into Italy
introisset, reversus ad Gallias, cum Amingo alio duce ad
he-had-entered having-returned to the-Gauls with Amingus another duke for
subiciendam Italiam dereliquerat. Qui Buccellinus cum pene
subjugating Italy had-left who Buccelin when almost
totam Italiam direptionibus vastaret et Theudeperto suo regi
all Italy with-plunderings laid-waste and to-Theudebert his king
de praeda Italiae munera copiosa conferret, cum in Campania
from the-booty of-Italy gifts copious brought when in Campania
hiemare disponeret, tandem in loco cui Tannetum
to-winter he-was-arranging at-last in the-place to-which Tannetum

nomen est gravi bello a Narsete superatus, extinctus est.
the-name is in-heavy war by Narses overcome killed was
Amingus vero dum Widin Gothorum comiti contra Narsetem
Amingus but while to-Widin of-the-Goths the-count against Narses
rebellanti auxilium ferre conatus fuisset, utrique a Narsete
rebelling help to-bring tried had both by Narses
superati sunt. Widin captus Constantinopolim exiliatur.
overcome were Widin captured to-Constantinople is-exiled
Amingus vero, qui ei auxilium praebuerat, Narsetis
Amingus but who to-him help had-offered of-Narses
gladio perimitur. Tertius quoque Francorum dux nomine
by-the-sword is-slain a-third also of-the-Franks duke by-name
Leutharius, Buccellini germanus, dum multa praeda onustus
Leuthar of-Buccelin the-brother while with-much booty laden
ad patriam cuperet reverti, inter Veronam et Tridentum
to the-fatherland he-desired to-return between Verona and Trent
iuxta lacum Benacum propria morte defunctus est.
near the-lake Benacus by-his-own death died has

Quomodo Narsis Sinduald Herulorum regulum sibi rebellantem extinxit

III · NARSES HANGS SINDUALD

Narses rewards Sinduald, king of the Brenti, a remnant of the Heruli, but when Sinduald rebels in pride and seeks to reign, Narses defeats him and hangs him from a high beam. Through Dagisteus Narses holds all Italy. He is devout, generous to the poor, and a restorer of churches, and wins his victories more by prayer than by arms.

Habuit nihilominus Narsis certamen adversus Sinduald
had nonetheless Narses a-contest against Sinduald
Brentorum regem, qui adhuc de Herulorum stirpe remanserat,
of-the-Brenti the-king who still of of-the-Heruli the-stock had-remained
quos secum in Italiam veniens olim Odoacar adduxerat.
whom with-himself into Italy coming once Odoacer had-brought
Huic Narsis fideliter sibi primum adhaerenti multa
on-this-man Narses faithfully to-himself at-first adhering many
beneficia contulit; sed novissime superbe rebellantem et
benefits conferred but at-last proudly rebelling and
regnare cupientem, bello superatum et captum celsa de
to-reign desiring by-war overcome and captured a-lofty from
trabe suspendit. Eo quoque tempore Narsis patricius per
beam he-hanged at-that also time Narses the-patrician through
Dagisteum magistrum militum, virum bellicosum et fortem,
Dagisteus the-master of-the-soldiers a-man warlike and brave
universos Italiae fines obtenuit. Hic Narsis prius quidem
all of-Italy the-bounds obtained this Narses before indeed
chartularius fuit, deinde propter virtutum merita patriciatus
chartulary was then on-account-of of-virtues the-merits of-the-patriciate
honorem promeruit. Erat autem vir piissimus, in religione
the-honor earned was moreover a-man most-pious in religion

catholicus, in pauperes munificus, in recuperandis basilicis
catholic toward the-poor munificent in recovering basilicas
satis studiosus, vigiliis et orationibus in tantum studens,
quite zealous in-vigils and prayers in so-much eager
ut plus supplicationibus ad Deum profusis quam armis
that more by-supplications to God poured-forth than by-arms
bellicis victoriam obtineret.
warlike victory he-obtained

De signis pestilentiae et mortalitate quae tempore Narsetis Italiam vastavit

IV · THE PLAGUE IN LIGURIA

In Narses' time a great plague strikes Italy, Liguria above all. Marks appear on houses and clothes that no washing removes, and swellings in the groin bring a fever that kills in three days; houses and villages stand empty, harvests unreaped, and an unseen army's trumpets are heard. Justinian dies and Justin the Younger succeeds, and Narses exiles Bishop Vitalis of Altino.

Huius temporibus in provincia praecipue Liguriae maxima
in-his times in the-province especially of-Liguria a-very-great
pestilentia exorta est. Subito enim apparebant quaedam
pestilence arisen has suddenly for appeared certain
signacula per domos, hostia, vasa vel vestimenta, quae si quis
little-marks on houses doors vessels or garments which if anyone
voluisset abluere, magis magisque apparebant. Post annum
had-wished to-wash-off more and-more they-appeared after a-year
vero expletum coeperunt nasci in inguinibus hominum vel
indeed completed began to-arise in the-groins of-men or
in aliis deligatioribus locis glandulae in modum nucis seu
in other more-delicate places swellings in the-manner of-a-nut or

dactuli, quas mox subsequebatur febrium intolerabilis aestus,
of-a-date which soon followed of-fevers intolerable heat
ita ut in triduo homo extingueretur. Sin vero aliquis
so that in three-days the-man was-extinguished but-if indeed anyone
triduum transegisset, habebat spem vivendi. Erat autem
three-days had-passed he-had hope of-living there-was moreover
ubique luctus, ubique lacrimae. Nam, ut vulgi
everywhere mourning everywhere tears for as of-the-common-people
rumor habebat, fugientes cladem vitare, relinquebantur domus
the-rumor held fleeing the-disaster to-avoid were-left houses
desertae habitatoribus, solis catulis domum servantibus.
deserted by-inhabitants only the-puppies the-house guarding
Peculia sola remanebant in pascuis, nullo adstante pastore.
the-flocks alone remained in the-pastures no standing-by shepherd
Cerneres pridem villas seu castra repleta agminibus
you-might-see the-day-before estates or forts filled with-throngs
hominum, postera vero die universis fugientibus cuncta
of-men on-the-next indeed day all fleeing all-things
esse in summo silentio. Fugiebant filii, cadavera insepulta
to-be in the-utmost silence fled the-sons the-corpses unburied
parentum relinquentes, parentes obliti pietatis viscera
of-their-parents leaving the-parents having-forgotten piety the-vitals
natos relinquebant aestuantes. Si quem forte antiqua pietas
children left burning-with-fever if anyone perchance the-ancient piety
perstringebat, ut vellit sepelire proximum, restabat ipse
touched that he-wished to-bury his-neighbor remained he
insepultus; et dum obsequebatur, perimebatur, dum funeri
unburied and while he-was-obliging he-was-killed while to-the-funeral
obsequium praebebat, ipsius funus sine obsequio manebat.
the-service he-offered his funeral without service remained
Videres seculum in antiquum redactum silentium: nulla vox
you-might-see the-world into ancient reduced silence no voice

in rure, nullus pastorum sibilus, nullae insidiae bestiarum
in the-country no of-shepherds whistle no ambushes of-beasts
in pecudibus, nulla damna in domesticis volucribus. Sata
among the-cattle no losses among domestic fowl the-crops
transgressa metendi tempus intacta expectabant messorem;
having-passed of-reaping the-time untouched awaited the-reaper
vinea amissis foliis radiantibus uvis inlaesa manebat hieme
the-vineyard lost its-leaves with-shining grapes unharmed remained winter
propinquante. Nocturnis seu diurnis horis personabat tuba
approaching in-nightly or daily hours resounded the-trumpet
bellantium, audiebatur a pluribus quasi murmur exercitus.
of-warriors was-heard by very-many as-if the-murmur of-an-army
Nulla erant vestigia commeantium, nullus cernebatur percussor,
no were footprints of-passers-by no-one was-seen the-striker
et tamen visum oculorum superabant cadavera mortuorum.
and yet the-sight of-the-eyes surpassed the-corpses of-the-dead
Pastoralia loca versa fuerant in sepulturam hominum, et
pastoral places turned had-been into the-burial-ground of-men and
habitacula humana facta fuerant confugia bestiarum. Et
dwellings human made had-been refuges of-beasts and
haec quidem mala intra Italiam tantum usque ad fines
these indeed evils within Italy only all-the-way to the-bounds
gentium Alamannorum et Baioariorum solis Romanis
of-the-peoples of-the-Alamanni and of-the-Bavarians to-the-Romans alone
acciderunt. Inter haec Iustiniano principe vita decidente,
happened among these-things Justinian the-prince from-life departing
Iustinus minor rem publicam aput Constantinopolim
Justin the-younger the-thing public at Constantinople
regendam suscepit. His quoque temporibus Narsis patricius,
to-be-ruled took-up in-these also times Narses the-patrician
cuius ad omnia studium vigilabat, Vitalem episcopum Altinae
whose for all-things zeal was-watchful Vitalis the-bishop of-Altinum

civitatis, qui ante annos plurimos ad Francorum regnum
city who before years very-many to of-the-Franks the-kingdom
confugerat, hoc est ad Agonthiensem civitatem, tandem
had-fled that is to the-Agunt city at-last
conprehensum aput Siciliam exilio damnavit.
caught in Sicily with-exile condemned

De invidia Romanorum adversus Narsetem, et quomodo eum accusaverunt apud imperatorem, et qualiter ipse Narsis Langobardos ad Italiam possidendam invitavit

V · NARSES INVITES THE LOMBARDS INTO ITALY

Narses, grown rich, is denounced by the Romans to the emperor and Sophia. The emperor sends Longinus to replace him, and Sophia sends word that the eunuch should portion out wool to her maids. Narses replies that he will weave her a web she cannot put down while she lives, and from Naples sends envoys and fruits to the Lombards, bidding them leave poor Pannonia for rich Italy. Fiery armies are seen in the sky.

Igitur deleta, ut dictum est, vel superata Narsis omni
therefore destroyed as said it-is or overcome Narses all
Gothorum gente, his quoque de quibus diximus pari modo
of-the-Goths people these also of whom we-have-said in-like manner
devictis, dum multum auri sive argenti seu ceterarum
conquered when much of-gold or of-silver or of-the-other
specierum divitias adquisisset, magnam a Romanis, pro
kinds riches he-had-acquired great from the-Romans for
quibus multa contra eorum hostes laboraverat, invidiam
whom many-things against their enemies he-had-labored envy
pertulit. Qui contra eum Iustiniano augusto et eius coniugi
he-bore who against him to-Justinian augustus and his wife

Sophiae in haec verba suggesserunt, dicentes quia: 'Expedierat
Sophia in these words suggested saying that it-had-been-better
Romanis, Gothis potius servire quam Grecis, ubi Narsis
for-the-Romans the-Goths rather to-serve than the-Greeks where Narses
eunuchus imperat et nos servitio premit; et haec noster
the-eunuch commands and us with-servitude presses and these-things our
piissimus princeps ignorat. Aut libera nos de manu eius,
most-pious prince knows-not either free us from the-hand his
aut certe et civitatem Romanam et nosmet ipsos gentibus
or certainly both the-city Roman and ourselves very to-the-nations
tradimus'. Cumque hoc Narsis audisset, haec breviter retulit
we-hand-over and-when this Narses had-heard these briefly he-gave-back
verba: 'Si male feci cum Romanis, male inveniam'. Tunc
words if badly I-have-done with the-Romans badly may-I-find then
augustus in tantum adversus Narsetem commotus est, ut
augustus in so-much against Narses moved was that
statim in Italiam Longinum praefectum mitteret, qui Narsetis
at-once into Italy Longinus the-prefect he-sent who of-Narses
locum obtineret. Narsis vero, his cognitis, valde pertimuit;
the-place should-hold Narses but these-things learned greatly feared
et in tantum maxime ab eadem Sophia augusta territus est,
and in so-much most by the-same Sophia augusta terrified was
ut regredi ultra Constantinopolim non auderet. Cui illa
that to-return further to-Constantinople not he-dared to-whom she
inter cetera, quia eunuchus erat, haec fertur mandasse, ut
among the-rest because a-eunuch he-was this is-said to-have-sent-word that
eum puellis in genicio lanarum faceret pensa
him for-the-girls in the-women-workshop of-wools she-would-make the-weights
dividere. Ad quae verba Narsis dicitur haec responsa dedisse:
to-divide to which words Narses is-said these answers to-have-given
talem se eidem telam orditurum, qualem ipsa, dum viveret,
such himself for-her a-web about-to-begin as she while she-lived

deponere non possit. Itaque odio metuque exagitatus in
to-lay-down not could and-so by-hatred and-fear stirred to
Neapolim Campaniae civitatem secedens, legatos mox ad
Naples of-Campania a-city withdrawing envoys soon to
Langobardorum gentem dirigit, mandans, ut paupertina
of-the-Lombards the-people directs sending-word that the-poor
Pannoniae rura desererent et ad Italiam cunctis refertam
of-Pannonia fields they-should-desert and to Italy with-all filled
divitiis possidendam venirent. Simulque multimoda
riches to-be-possessed they-should-come and-at-the-same-time manifold
pomorum genera aliarumque rerum species, quarum Italia ferax
of-fruits kinds and-of-other things species of-which Italy fertile
est, mittit, quatenus eorum ad veniendum animos possit
is he-sends so-that their for coming the-minds he-might-be-able
inlicere. Langobardi laeta nuntia et quae ipsi
to-entice the-Lombards the-joyful news and what they-themselves
praeobtabant gratanter suscipiunt deque futuris commodis
were-wishing-for gladly receive and-about future advantages
animos adtollunt. Continuo aput Italiam terribilia noctu
their-minds raise at-once in Italy terrible by-night
signa visa sunt, hoc est igneae acies in caelo apparuerunt,
signs seen were that is fiery lines in the-sky appeared
eum scilicet qui postea effusus est sanguinem coruscantes.
that namely which afterward poured-out was blood flashing

Quomodo Alboin Saxones ad suum auxilium adscivit

VI · ALBOIN CALLS ON THE SAXONS

Before setting out for Italy, Alboin asks his old friends the Saxons for help, and more than twenty thousand come with their wives and children. Hearing of this, the Frankish kings Chlothar and Sigibert settle the Suevi and other peoples in the lands the Saxons have left.

Alboin vero ad Italiam cum Langobardis profecturus ab
Alboin but to Italy with the-Lombards about-to-set-out from
amicis suis vetulis Saxonibus auxilium petiit, quatenus
friends his old the-Saxons help sought so-that
spatiosam Italiam cum pluribus possessurus intraret. Ad
spacious Italy with more about-to-possess he-might-enter to
quem Saxones plus quam viginti milia virorum cum uxoribus
whom the-Saxons more than twenty thousand of-men with wives
simul et parvulis, ut cum eo ad Italiam pergerent,
together and little-children that with him to Italy they-might-proceed
iuxta eius voluntatem venerunt. Hoc audientes Chlotarius
according-to his will came this hearing Chlothar
et Sigisbertus reges Francorum, Suavos aliasque gentes in
and Sigibert the-kings of-the-Franks the-Suevi and-other peoples in
locis de quibus idem Saxones exierant posuerunt.
the-places from which the-same Saxons had-gone-out placed

Qualiter Alboin cum Langobardis, relicta Pannonia, ad Italiam venit

VII · THE LOMBARDS LEAVE PANNONIA

Alboin gives Pannonia to his friends the Huns, on condition that the Lombards may reclaim it if they ever return. The Lombards, who have lived there forty-two years, set out for Italy with wives, children, and goods in April of the first indiction, the day after Easter, in the year 568.

Tunc Alboin sedes proprias, hoc est Pannoniam, amicis
then Alboin seats his-own that is Pannonia to-friends
suis Hunnis contribuit, eo scilicet ordine, ut, si quo
his the-Huns granted in-this namely order that if at-any
tempore Langobardis necesse esset reverti, sua rursus arva
time for-the-Lombards necessary it-were to-return their again fields
repeterent. Igitur Langobardi, relicta Pannonia, cum
they-should-seek-back therefore the-Lombards left Pannonia with
uxoribus et natis omnique supellectili Italiam properant
wives and children and-all goods to-Italy hasten
possessuri. Habitaverunt autem in Pannoniam annis
about-to-possess-it dwelt moreover in Pannonia years
quadraginta duobus. De qua egressi sunt mense Aprili,
forty two from which gone-out they-have in-the-month of-April
per indictionem primam, alio die post sanctum pascha,
through the-indiction first on-the-next day after holy Easter
cuius festivitas eo anno iuxta calculi rationem
whose festival in-that year according-to of-the-calculation the-reckoning
ipsis Kalendis Aprilibus fuit, cum iam a Domini
on-the-very Kalends of-April was when now from of-the-Lord
incarnatione anni quingenti sexaginta octo essent evoluti.
the-incarnation years five-hundred sixty eight had rolled-by

Quomodo Alboin ad Italiae fines veniens, montem Regis ascendit, et de bisontibus feris

VIII · THE KING'S MOUNTAIN, AND THE BISON

Reaching the edge of Italy, Alboin climbs a mountain and looks out over as much of Italy as he can see, and so it is called the King's Mountain. Bison are said to live on it, and an old man tells Paul he has seen the hide of one on which fifteen men could lie side by side.

Igitur cum rex Alboin cum omni suo exercitu vulgique
promiscui multitudine ad extremos Italiae fines pervenisset,
montem qui in eisdem locis prominet ascendit, indeque,
prout conspicere potuit, partem Italiae contemplatus est. Qui
mons propter hanc, ut fertur, causam ex eo tempore
mons Regis appellatus est. Ferunt, in hoc monte
bisontes feras enutriri. Nec mirum, cum usque huc Pannoniam
pertingat, quae horum animantium ferax est. Denique retulit
mihi quidam veracissimus senex, tale se corium in hoc
monte occisi bisontis vidisse, in quo quindecim, ut aiebat,
homines, unus iuxta alium potuisset cubare.

therefore when king Alboin with all his army and-of-the-common-people
mixed the-multitude to the-farthest of-Italy bounds had-come
the-mountain which in the-same places towers he-ascended and-thence
as-far-as to-view he-could part of-Italy contemplated has which
mountain on-account-of this as is-said cause from that time
the-mountain of-the-King called is they-report on this mountain
bison wild to-be-reared nor wonder since up-to here Pannonia
reaches which of-these animals fertile is finally related
to-me a-certain most-truthful old-man such himself a-hide on this
mountain of-a-killed bison to-have-seen on which fifteen as he-said
men one beside another could lie

Quomodo Alboin Venetiarum fines ingressus, in Foroiuli Gisulfum suum nepotem ducem constituit

IX · GISULF MADE DUKE OF FRIULI

Entering Venetia at Friuli unopposed, Alboin considers whom to set over it, Italy being closed by sea and Alps and open only on the east. He chooses his nephew Gisulf, his groom, or marpahis. Gisulf will take the rule only if he may choose the Lombard farae, or families, to live with him, and the king grants these and herds of good mares as well.

Indeque Alboin cum Venetiae fines, quae prima est Italiae
and-thence Alboin when of-Venetia the-bounds which the-first is of-Italy
provincia, sine aliquo obstaculo, hoc est civitatis vel potius
province without any obstacle that is of-the-city or rather
castri Foroiulani terminos introisset, perpendere coepit,
of-the-fort of-Friuli the-borders had-entered to-weigh began
cui potissimum primam provinciarum quam ceperat
to-whom best the-first of-the-provinces which he-had-taken
committere deberet. Siquidem omnis Italia, quae versus
to-commit he-ought indeed all Italy which toward
meridiem vel potius in eorum extenditur, Tyrreni
the-south or rather into the-southeast stretches of-the-Tyrrhenian
sive Adriatici maris fluctibus ambitur, ab occiduo vero et
or Adriatic sea by-the-waves is-surrounded from the-west indeed and
aquilone iugis Alpium ita circumcluditur, ut nisi per
the-north by-the-ridges of-the-Alps so is-shut-in that unless through
angustos meatus et per summa iuga montium non possit
narrow passages and over the-highest ridges of-the-mountains not it-can
habere introitum; ab orientali vero parte, qua Pannoniae
have entrance from the-eastern indeed side where to-Pannonia
coniungitur, et largius patentem et planissimum habet
it-is-joined both more-widely lying-open and most-level it-has

ingressum. Igitur, ut diximus, dum Alboin animum intenderet,
an-entry therefore as we-have-said while Alboin his-mind turned
quem in his locis ducem constituere deberet, Gisulfum,
whom in these places duke to-establish he-ought Gisulf
ut fertur, suum nepotem, virum per omnia idoneum, qui
as is-said his nephew a-man in all-things suitable who
eidem strator erat, quem lingua propria 'marpahis' appellant,
to-him groom was whom in-tongue their-own marpahis they-call
Foroiulanae civitati et totae illius regioni praeficere statuit.
to-the-Friulian city and to-all that region to-set-over he-decided
Qui Gisulfus non prius se regimen eiusdem civitatis et
who Gisulf not before himself the-rule of-the-same city and
populi suscepturum edixit, nisi ei quas ipse eligere
people about-to-take-up declared unless to-him those-which he to-choose
voluisset Langobardorum faras, hoc est generationes vel
should-wish of-the-Lombards the-farae that is generations or
lineas, tribueret. Factumque est, et annuente sibi rege
lines he-should-grant and-done it-was and assenting to-him the-king
quas obtaverat Langobardorum praecipuas prosapias, ut
those-which he-had-wished of-the-Lombards the-chief stocks that
cum eo habitarent, accepit. Et ita demum doctoris honorem
with him they-might-dwell he-received and so at-last of-the-leader the-honor
adeptus est. Poposcit quoque a rege generosarum equarum
obtained has he-asked also from the-king of-noble mares
greges, et in hoc quoque liberalitate principis exauditus est.
herds and in this also by-the-liberality of-the-prince heard he-was

Qui reges eo tempore Francis imperabant, et de Benedicto papa deque Paulo Aquileiensi patriarcha

X · THE FRANKISH KINGS, POPE BENEDICT, AND PATRIARCH PAUL

When the Lombards invade, Chlothar's four sons rule the Franks from Paris, Orléans, Soissons, and Metz. The patriarch Paul flees from Aquileia to Grado with his church's treasure, and a winter of deep snow is followed by a summer of unheard-of plenty. Sigibert beats the Avars by the Elbe, marries Brunhild, who comes from Spain, and later loses to the Avars.

His diebus, quibus Langobardi Italiam invaserunt, Francorum
in-these days in-which the-Lombards Italy invaded of-the-Franks
regnum, mortuo iam eorum rege Chlotario, eius filii quadrifarie
the-kingdom dead now their king Chlothar his sons fourfold
regebant divisum. Primusque ex his Aripertus sedem habebat
ruled divided and-the-first of these Charibert the-seat had
apud Parisios. Secundus vero Gunthramnus civitati praesidebat
at Paris the-second but Guntram over-the-city presided
Aurelianensi. Tertius quoque Hilpericus cathedram habebat
of-Orléans the-third also Chilperic the-throne had
apud Sessionas in loco Chlotarii, patris sui. Quartus
at Soissons in the-place of-Chlothar father his the-fourth
nihilominus Sigisbertus apud urbem regnabat Metensem.
nonetheless Sigibert at the-city reigned of-Metz
Hoc etiam tempore Romanam ecclesiam vir sanctissimus
at-this also time the-Roman church a-man most-holy
Benedictus papa regebat. Aquileiensi quoque civitati eiusque
Benedict the-pope ruled over-the-Aquileian also city and-its
populis beatus Paulus patriarcha praeerat. Qui Langobardorum
peoples blessed Paul the-patriarch was-over who of-the-Lombards
barbariem metuens, ex Aquileia ad Gradus insulam confugiit
the-barbarism fearing from Aquileia to Grado the-island fled

secumque omnem suae thesaurum ecclesiae deportavit. Hoc
and-with-himself all of-his the-treasure church carried-off in-this
anno superiori hieme tanta nix in planitie cecidit, quanta
year in-the-former winter such snow on the-plain fell as-much-as
in summis Alpibus cadere solet; sequenti vero aestate tanta
on the-highest Alps to-fall is-wont in-the-following indeed summer such
fertilitas extitit, quanta nulla aetas adseveratur meminisse.
fertility arose as-much-as no age is-asserted to-remember
Eo quoque tempore comperta Hunni, qui et Avares, morte
at-that also time learned the-Huns who also Avars the-death
Chlotarii regis, super Sigisbertum, eius filium, inruunt. Quibus
of-Chlothar the-king upon Sigibert his son rush whom
ille in Turingia occurrens, eos iuxta Albem fluvium potentissime
he in Thuringia meeting them near the-Elbe river most-powerfully
superavit, eisdemque petentibus pacem dedit. Huic Sigisberto
overcame and-to-them asking peace gave to-this Sigibert
de Hispaniis adveniens Brunicheldis matrimonio iuncta est,
from the-Spains coming Brunhild in-marriage joined was
de qua ille filium Childepertum nomine suscepit. Rursumque
of whom he a-son Childebert by-name received and-again
Avares cum Sigisperto in locis ubi et prius pugnantes,
the-Avars with Sigibert in the-places where also before fighting
Francorum proterentes exercitum, victoriam sunt adepti.
of-the-Franks crushing the-army victory have obtained

De morte Narsetis

XI · THE DEATH OF NARSES

Narses returns from Campania to Rome and dies there not long after. His body is carried to Constantinople in a lead coffin with all his riches.

Narsis vero de Campania Romam regressus, ibidem non
Narses but from Campania to-Rome having-returned there not
post multum tempus ex hac luce subtractus est. Cuius
after much time from this light withdrawn was whose
corpus positum in locello plumbeo, cum omnibus eius
body placed in a-little-coffin of-lead with all his
divitiis Constantinopolim est perlatum.
riches to-Constantinople was carried

De Felice episcopo Tarvisiano, quomodo Alboin ad Plabem fluvium occurrit

XII · BISHOP FELIX MEETS ALBOIN AT THE PIAVE

When Alboin reaches the river Piave, Felix, bishop of Treviso, comes to meet him. The king, being most generous, grants all his church's property at his request and confirms it by a decree.

Igitur Alboin cum ad fluvium Plabem venisset, ibi ei
therefore Alboin when to the-river Piave he-had-come there him
Felix episcopus Tarvisianae ecclesiae occurrit. Cui rex, ut
Felix the-bishop of-the-Treviso church met to-whom the-king as
erat largissimus, omnes suae ecclesiae facultates postulanti
he-was most-generous all of-his church the-resources to-him-asking
concessit et per suum pracmaticum postulata firmavit.
granted and through his decree the-things-asked confirmed

De hoc eodem Felice et Fortunato sapientissimo viro

XIII · VENANTIUS FORTUNATUS

Fortunatus, Felix's companion, born near Ceneda and taught at Ravenna, is cured with him of a disease of the eyes by oil from Saint Martin's lamp, and goes to Martin's tomb at Tours. He settles at Poitiers, writes lives of saints, a Life of Martin, hymns, and verses to friends, and becomes bishop there. Paul gives the epitaph he wrote for his tomb.

Sane quia huius Felicis fecimus mentionem, libet quoque
surely because of-this Felix we-have-made mention it-pleases also
nos pauca de venerabili et sapientissimo viro Fortunato
us a-few-things about the-venerable and most-wise man Fortunatus
retexere, qui hunc Felicem suum adseverat socium fuisse.
to-retell who this Felix his asserts companion to-have-been
Denique hic de quo loquimur Fortunatus natus quidem in
finally he of whom we-speak Fortunatus born indeed in
loco qui Duplabilis dicitur fuit; qui locus haut longe a
the-place which Duplavilis is-called was which place not far from
Cenitense castro vel Tarvisiana distat civitate. Sed tamen
the-Ceneda fort or the-Treviso stands-off city but yet
Ravennae nutritus et doctus, in arte gramatica sive rethorica
at-Ravenna reared and taught in the-art grammatical or rhetorical
seu etiam metrica clarissimus extitit. Hic cum oculorum
or even metrical most-renowned stood-out he when of-the-eyes
dolorem vehementissimum pateretur, et nihilominus Felix iste
a-pain most-violent he-suffered and nonetheless Felix this
ipsius socius pari modo oculos doleret, utrique ad basilicam
his companion in-like manner in-the-eyes was-pained both to the-basilica
beatorum Pauli atque Iohannis, quae intra eadem urbem sita
of-the-blessed Paul and John which within the-same city situated

est, perrexere. In qua etiam altarium in honore beati Martini
is went in which also an-altar in honor of-blessed Martin
confessoris constructum propinquam habet fenestram, in qua
the-confessor built near has a-window in which
lucerna ad exibendum lumen est constituta. De cuius oleo
a-lamp for showing light is set from whose oil
mox sibi isti, Fortunatus scilicet et Felix, dolentia lumina
soon to-themselves they Fortunatus namely and Felix the-pained eyes
tetigerunt. Ilico dolore fugato sanitatem, quam obtabant,
touched at-once the-pain driven-off the-health which they-wished
adepti sunt. Qua de causa Fortunatus in tantum beatum
obtained have which for cause Fortunatus in so-much blessed
Martinum veneratus est, ut, relicta patria, paulo antequam
Martin venerated has that left his-fatherland a-little before
Langobardi Italiam invaderent, Turonis ad eiusdem beati viri
the-Lombards Italy invaded to-Tours to of-the-same blessed man
sepulchrum properaret. Qui sibi, ut in suis ipse carminibus
the-tomb he-hastened who to-himself as in his himself songs
refert, illuc properandi per fluenta Tiliamenti et Reunam
relates thither of-hastening through the-streams of-the-Tagliamento and the-Reuna
perque Osupum et Alpem Iuliam perque Aguntum castrum
and-through Osopo and the-Alp Julian and-through Aguntum the-fort
Dravumque et Byrrum fluvios ac Briones et Augustam
and-the-Drava and the-Byrrus rivers and the-Breones and Augusta
civitatem, quam Virdo et Lecha fluentant, iter fuisse
the-city which the-Virdo and the-Lech flow-past the-journey to-have-been
describit. Qui postquam Turonos iuxta votum proprium
describes who after to-Tours according-to vow his-own
advenit, Pictavis pertransiens, illuc habitavit, et multorum
he-came to-Poitiers passing-through there dwelt and of-many
ibidem sanctorum gesta partim prosa, partim metrali
there saints the-deeds partly in-prose partly in-metrical

ratione conscripsit; novissimeque in eadem civitate primum
reckoning wrote and-last in the-same city first
presbiter, deinde episcopus ordinatus est, atque in eodem loco
presbyter then bishop ordained was and in the-same place
digno tumulatus honore quiescit. Hic beati Martini vitam
with-worthy buried honor rests he of-blessed Martin the-life
quattuor in libris heroico versu contexuit, et multa alia
four in books in-heroic verse wove and many other-things
maximeque ymnos singularum festivitatum et praecipue ad
and-especially hymns of-individual festivals and especially to
singulos amicos versiculos, nulli poetarum secundus, suavi
single friends little-verses to-none of-the-poets second in-sweet
et diserto sermone conposuit. Ad cuius ego tumulum, cum
and eloquent speech composed at whose I tomb when
illuc orationis gratia adventassem, hoc epitaphium, rogatus
thither of-prayer for-the-sake I-had-come this epitaph asked
ab Apro, eiusdem loci abbate, scribendum contexui:
by Aper of-the-same place the-abbot to-be-written wove

Ingenio clarus, sensu celer, ore suavis,
by-wit renowned in-sense quick in-mouth sweet
cuius dulce melos pagina multa canit,
whose sweet melody page many sings
Fortunatus, apex vatum, venerabilis actu,
Fortunatus the-summit of-poets venerable in-act
Ausonia genitus, hac tumulatur humo.
in-Ausonia born in-this is-buried earth
Cuius ab ore sacro sanctorum gesta priorum
whose from mouth holy of-the-saints the-deeds former
discimus: haec monstrant carpere lucis iter.
we-learn these-things show to-take of-light the-path

Felix, quae tantis decoraris, Gallia, gemmis,
happy who by-such-great are-adorned O-Gaul gems
lumine de quarum nox tibi tetra fugit.
by-the-light of which night for-you dark flees
Hos modicos prompsi plebeio carmine versus,
these small I-brought-forth in-plebeian song verses
ne tuus in populis, sancte, lateret honor.
lest your among the-peoples O-holy-one should-lie-hidden honor
Redde vicem misero: ne iudice spernar ab aequo,
return the-favor to-the-wretched lest the-judge I-be-spurned by just
eximiis meritis posce, beate! precor.
by-excellent merits ask O-blessed-one I-pray

Haec paucis de tanto viro, ne eius vitam sui cives
these-things in-few about so-great a-man lest his life his citizens
funditus ignorarent, delibavimus; nunc ad historiae seriem
utterly should-not-know we-have-touched-on now to of-the-history the-series
revertamur.
let-us-return

Quomodo Alboin Venetiarum provincia cepit, et de nomine vel finibus eiusdem Venetiae

XIV · ALBOIN TAKES VENETIA, AND THE BOUNDS OF THE PROVINCE

Alboin takes Vicenza, Verona, and the other cities of Venetia except Padua, Monselice, and Mantua. Venetia reaches from Pannonia to the Adda, as the annals show, and Istria is joined to it as one province. Aquileia was its capital, and now Forum Julii, named from Julius Caesar's market.

Igitur Alboin Vincentiam Veronamque et reliquas Venetiae
therefore Alboin Vicenza and-Verona and the-remaining of-Venetia
civitates, exceptis Patavium et Montemsilicis et Mantuam,
cities excepted Padua and Monselice and Mantua
cepit. Venetia enim non solum in paucis insulis, quas nunc
took Venetia for not only in few islands which now
Venetias dicimus, constat, sed eius terminus a Pannoniae
the-Venetias we-call consists but its border from of-Pannonia
finibus usque Adduam fluvium protelatur. Probatur hoc
the-bounds up-to the-Adda river is-extended it-is-proved this
annalibus libris, in quibus Pergamus civitas esse legitur
by-the-annal books in which Bergamo a-city to-be is-read
Venetiarum. Nam et de lacu Benaco in historiis ita
of-the-Venetias for also about the-lake Benacus in histories thus
legimus: 'Benacus lacus Venetiarum, de quo Mincius fluvius
we-read Benacus a-lake of-the-Venetias from which the-Mincio river
egreditur'. Eneti enim, licet aput Latinos una littera
goes-out the-Eneti for although among the-Latins one letter
addatur, Grece laudabiles dicuntur. Venetiae etiam Histria
be-added in-Greek praiseworthy are-called to-Venetia also Istria
conectitur, et utraeque pro una provincia habentur. Histria
is-joined and both for one province are-held Istria

autem ab Histro flumine cognominatur. Quae secundum
moreover from the-Hister river is-named which according-to
Romanam historiam amplior, quam nunc est, fuisse
the-Roman history larger than now it-is to-have-been
perhibetur. Huius Venetiae Aquileia civitas extitit caput;
is-held of-this Venetia Aquileia the-city was the-head
pro qua nunc Forum Iulii, ita dictum, quod Iulius
in-place-of which now Forum Iulii so called because Julius
Caesar negotiationis forum ibi statuerat, habetur.
Caesar of-trade a-forum there had-established is-held

De Liguria secunda Italiae provincia, et de duabus Retiis

XV · LIGURIA AND THE TWO RAETIAS

Paul now describes the other provinces of Italy. The second, Liguria, named from gathering legumes, holds Milan and Pavia and reaches to the Gauls. Between it and Swabia lie the two Raetias among the Alps.

Non ab re esse arbitror, si etiam ceteras Italiae provincias
not from the-matter to-be I-think if also the-other of-Italy provinces
breviter adtingamus. Secunda provincia Liguria a legendis,
briefly we-touch-on the-second province Liguria from gathering
id est colligendis, leguminibus, quorum satis ferax est,
that is collecting legumes of-which quite fertile it-is
nominatur. In qua Mediolanum est et Ticinus, quae alio
is-named in which Milan is and Ticinum which by-another
nomine Papia appellatur. Haec usque ad Gallorum fines
name Pavia is-called this all-the-way to of-the-Gauls the-bounds
extenditur. Inter hanc et Suaviam, hoc est Alamannorum
is-extended between this and Swabia that is of-the-Alamanni

patriam, quae versus septemtrionem est posita, duae
the-fatherland which toward the-north is placed two
provinciae, id est Retia prima et Retia secunda, inter Alpes
provinces that is Raetia first and Raetia second among the-Alps
consistunt; in quibus proprie Reti habitare noscuntur.
stand in which properly the-Raetians to-dwell are-known

De quinta provincia Italiae, quae Alpes Cottiae appellantur, et de sexta, quae Tuscia dicitur

XVI · THE COTTIAN ALPS, TUSCANY, AND UMBRIA

The fifth province, the Cottian Alps, named from King Cottius, runs southeast from Liguria to the Tyrrhenian Sea and meets the Gauls on the west; it holds Acqui, Tortona, Bobbio, Genoa, and Savona. The sixth, Tuscany, named from incense, contains Rome, and Umbria within it holds Perugia and Spoleto.

Quinta vero provincia Alpes Cottiae dicuntur, quae sic a
the-fifth indeed province the-Alps Cottian are-called which thus from
Cottio rege, qui Neronis tempore fuit, appellatae sunt. Haec
Cottius the-king who of-Nero in-the-time was called were this
a Liguria in eorum versus usque ad mare Tyrrenum
from Liguria in the-southeast toward all-the-way to the-sea Tyrrhenian
extenditur, ab occiduo vero Gallorum finibus copulatur. In
is-extended from the-west indeed of-the-Gauls to-the-bounds is-joined in
hac Aquis, ubi aquae calidae sunt, Dertonam et monasterium
this Acqui where waters hot are Tortona and the-monastery
Bobium, Genua quoque et Saona civitates habentur. Sexta
of-Bobbio Genoa also and Savona cities are-held the-sixth
provincia Tuscia est, quae a ture, quod populus illius
province Tuscia is which from incense which the-people of-it
superstitiose in sacrificiis deorum suorum incendere solebant,
superstitiously in the-sacrifices of-gods their to-burn were-accustomed

sic appellata est. Haec habet intra se circium versus Aureliam,
thus called is this has within itself the-northwest toward the-Aurelia
ab orientis vero partem Umbriam. In hac provincia Roma, quae
on of-the-east indeed the-part Umbria in this province Rome which
olim totius mundi caput extitit, est constituta. In Umbria
once of-the-whole world the-head was is set in Umbria
vero, quae istius in parte ponitur, Perusium et lacus Clitorius
indeed which of-this in part is-placed Perugia and the-lake Clitorius
Spoletiumque consistunt. Umbria autem dicta est, quod
and-Spoleto stand Umbria moreover called is because
imbribus superfuerit, cum aquosa clades olim populos devastaret.
the-rains it-survived when a-watery disaster once the-peoples laid-waste

De Campania septima Italiae provincia, et de Lucania sive Britia, quae est octava

XVII · CAMPANIA, AND LUCANIA WITH BRUTTIUM

The seventh province, Campania, runs from Rome to the Sele, with Capua, Naples, and Salerno, and is named from the plain of Capua. The eighth, Lucania with Bruttium, runs from the Sele to the Sicilian strait, with Paestum, Cosenza, and Reggio.

Septima quoque provincia Campania ab urbe Roma usque
the-seventh also province Campania from the-city Rome all-the-way
ad Siler Lucaniae fluvium producitur. In qua opulentissimae
to the-Sele of-Lucania river is-drawn-out in which most-opulent
urbes Capua, Neapolim et Salernus constitutae sunt. Quae
cities Capua Naples and Salerno set are which
ideo Campania appellata est propter uberrimam Capuae
therefore Campania called is on-account-of the-most-fertile of-Capua
planitiem; ceterum ex maxima parte montuosa est. Porro
plain for-the-rest for the-greatest part mountainous it-is further

octava Lucania, quae nomen a quodam luco accepit, a
the-eighth Lucania which its-name from a-certain grove received from
Silere fluvio inchoat, cum Brittia, quae ita a reginae
the-Sele river begins with Bruttium which so from of-a-queen
quondam suae nomine appellata est, usque ad fretum Siculum
once its the-name called is all-the-way to the-strait Sicilian
per ora maris Tyrreni, sicut et duae superiores, dextrum
along the-shores of-the-sea Tyrrhenian as also the-two former the-right
Italiae cornu tenens pertingit; in qua Pestus et Lainus,
of-Italy horn holding reaches in which Paestum and Laino
Cassianum et Consentia Regiumque sunt positae civitates.
Cassano and Cosenza and-Reggio are placed cities

De Appenninis Alpibus, quae nona est Italiae provincia, et de Emilia decima

XVIII · THE APENNINE ALPS AND EMILIA

The ninth province, the Apennine Alps, divides Tuscany from Emilia and Umbria from Flaminia and is named for Hannibal's Carthaginians; Victor's history shows it is not one province with the Cottian Alps. The tenth, Emilia, runs toward Ravenna with Piacenza, Parma, Reggio, Bologna, and Imola.

Nona denique provincia in Appenninis Alpibus conputatur,
the-ninth finally province in the-Apennine Alps is-reckoned
quae inde originem capiunt, ubi Cottiarum Alpes finiuntur.
which thence origin take where of-the-Cottian Alps are-ended
Hae Appenninae Alpes per mediam Italiam pergentes,
these Apennine Alps through the-middle-of Italy proceeding
Tusciam ab Emilia Umbriamque a Flamminia dividunt. In
Tuscia from Emilia and-Umbria from Flaminia divide in
qua sunt civitates Ferronianus et Montembellium, Bobium et
which are the-cities Ferronianus and Montebello Bobbio and

Urbinum, necnon et oppidum quod Verona appellatur. Alpes
Urbino and-also also the-town which Verona is-called the-Alps
autem Appenninae dictae sunt a Punicis, hoc est Annibale et
moreover Apennine called are from the-Punic that is Hannibal and
eius exercitu, qui per easdem Romam tendentes transitum
his army who through the-same toward-Rome making-for passage
habuerunt. Sunt qui Alpes Cottias et Appenninas unam dicant
had there-are who the-Alps Cottian and Apennine one say
esse provinciam; sed hos Victoris revincit historia, quae Alpes
to-be province but these of-Victor refutes the-history which the-Alps
Cottias per se provinciam appellat. Decima porro Emilia a
Cottian by itself a-province calls the-tenth further Emilia from
Liguria incipiens, inter Appenninas Alpes et Padi fluenta
Liguria beginning between the-Apennine Alps and of-the-Po the-streams
versus Ravennam pergit. Haec locupletibus urbibus decoratur,
toward Ravenna proceeds this with-rich cities is-adorned
Placentia scilicet et Parmaque, Regio et Bononia Corneliique
Piacenza namely and Parma Reggio and Bologna and-of-Cornelius
foro, cuius castrum Imolas appellatur. Extiterunt quoque qui
forum whose fort Imola is-called there-were also who
Emiliam et Valeriam Nursiamque unam provinciam dicerent.
Emilia and Valeria and-Nursia one province said
Sed horum sententia stare non potest, quia inter Emiliam
but their opinion to-stand not can because between Emilia
et Valeriam Nursiamque Tuscia et Umbria sunt constitutae.
and Valeria and-Nursia Tuscia and Umbria are set

De Flamminia undecima Italiae provincia, et de Piceno, quae duodecima conputatur

XIX · FLAMINIA AND PICENUM

The eleventh province, Flaminia, lies between the Apennines and the Adriatic, with Ravenna and the Pentapolis, and is named, like Aurelia and Emilia, from a Roman road. The twelfth, Picenum, runs to the Pescara, and takes its name from a woodpecker that perched on its settlers' banner.

Dehinc undecima provinciarum est Flamminia, quae inter
thereafter the-eleventh of-the-provinces is Flaminia which between
Appenninas Alpes et mare est Hadriaticum posita. In
the-Apennine Alps and the-sea is Adriatic placed in
qua nobilissima urbium Ravenna et quinque aliae civitates
which the-most-noble of-cities Ravenna and five other cities
consistunt, quae Greco vocabulo Pentapolim appellantur.
stand which by-a-Greek word the-Pentapolis are-called
Constat autem, Aureliam Emiliamque et Flamminiam a
it-is-agreed moreover the-Aurelia and-the-Emilia and the-Flaminia from
constratis viis, quae ab urbe Roma veniunt, et ab eorum
the-paved roads which from the-city Rome come and from their
vocabulis a quibus sunt constratae talibus nominibus
names by whom they-were paved by-such names
appellari. Post Flamminiam duodecima Picenus occurrit, habens
to-be-called after Flaminia twelfth Picenum meets-us having
ab austro Appenninos montes, ex altera vero parte Hadriaticum
on the-south the-Apennine mountains on the-other indeed side the-Adriatic
mare. Haec usque ad fluvium Piscariam pertendit. In qua
sea this all-the-way to the-river Pescara reaches in which
sunt civitates Firmus, Asculus et Pinnis et iam vetustate
are cities Fermo Ascoli and Penne and now by-age

consumpta Hadria, quae Hadriatico pelago nomen dedit. Huius
consumed Adria which to-the-Adriatic sea the-name gave of-this
habitatores cum a Savinis illuc properarent, in eorum vexillo
the-inhabitants when from the-Sabines thither they-were-hastening on their standard
picus consedit, atque hac de causa Picenus nomen accepit.
a-woodpecker settled and this for cause Picenum the-name received

De Valeria et Nursia, quae pro provincia tercia decima ponitur, et de quarta decima Samnium

XX · VALERIA WITH NURSIA, AND SAMNIUM

The thirteenth province, Valeria with Nursia, holds Tivoli, Rieti, Amiternum, and the Marsi with Lake Fucino, whom Paul counts in it since the ancients do not list them apart. The fourteenth, Samnium, holds Chieti, Isernia, and wealthy Benevento, and its people are named from spears.

Porro tertia decima Valeria, cui est Nursia adnexa, inter
further the-third tenth Valeria to-which is Nursia joined between
Umbriam et Campaniam Picenumque consistit. Quae ab
Umbria and Campania and-Picenum stands which on
oriente Samnitum regionem adtingit. Huius pars occidua,
the-east of-the-Samnites the-region touches of-this the-part western
quae ab urbe Roma initium capit, olim ab Etruscorum
which from the-city Rome beginning takes once from of-the-Etruscans
populo Etruria dicta est. Haec habet urbes Tiburim, Carsiolis
the-people Etruria called was this has cities Tivoli Carsioli
et Reate, Furconam et Amiternum regionemque Marsorum
and Rieti Forcona and Amiternum and-the-region of-the-Marsi
et eorum lacum qui Fucinus appellatur. Marsorum quoque
and their lake which Fucinus is-called of-the-Marsi also
regionem ideo intra Valeriam provinciam aestimo conputari,
the-region therefore within the-Valeria province I-reckon to-be-counted

quia in catalogo provinciarum Italiae minime ab antiquis
because in the-catalog of-the-provinces of-Italy by-no-means by the-ancients
descripta est. Si quis autem hanc per se provinciam esse vera
described it-is if anyone moreover this by itself a-province to-be by-true
ratione conprobaverit, huius rationabilis sententia modis erit
reckoning shall-have-proved his reasonable opinion in-ways shall-be
omnibus tenenda. Quarta decima Samnium inter Campaniam
all to-be-held the-fourth tenth Samnium between Campania
et mare Hadriaticum Apuliamque, a Piscaria incipiens,
and the-sea Adriatic and-Apulia from the-Pescara beginning
habetur. In hac sunt urbes Theate, Aufidenam, Hisernia et
is-held in this are cities Chieti Aufidena Isernia and
antiquitate consumpta Samnium, a qua tota provincia
by-antiquity consumed Samnium from which the-whole province
nominatur, et ipsa harum provinciarum caput ditissima
is-named and itself of-these provinces the-head most-rich
Beneventus. Porro Samnites nomen accipere olim ab hastis,
Benevento further the-Samnites the-name to-have-received once from the-spears
quas ferre solebant quasque Greci saynia appellant.
which to-carry they-were-accustomed and-which the-Greeks saynia call

De Apulia et Calabria et Sallento, quae quinta decima provincia appellatur

XXI · APULIA WITH CALABRIA

The fifteenth province is Apulia with Calabria and the Salentine region, with Lucera, Siponto, Canosa, Acerenza, Brindisi, Taranto, and Otranto. Its name comes from perishing, since the sun quickly withers green things there.

Quinta decima provinciarum est Apulia, cumsociata sibi
the-fifth tenth of-the-provinces is Apulia associated with-itself
Calabria. Intra quam est regio Salentina. Haec ab occidente
Calabria within which is the-region Salentine this from the-west
vel africo habet Samnium et Lucaniam, a solis vero
or southwest has Samnium and Lucania from of-the-sun indeed
ortu Hadriatico pelago finitur. Haec habet urbes satis
the-rising by-the-Adriatic sea is-bounded this has cities quite
opulentas, Luceriam, Sepontum, Canusium, Agerentiam,
opulent Lucera Siponto Canosa Acerenza
Brundisium et Tarentum et in sinistro Italiae cornu,
Brindisi and Taranto and on the-left of-Italy horn
quod quinquaginta milibus extenditur, aptam mercimoniis
which fifty miles is-extended suited for-trade
Ydrontum. Apulia autem a perditione nominatur; citius
Otranto Apulia moreover from destruction is-named more-quickly
enim ibi solis fervoribus terrae virentia perduntur.
for there of-the-sun by-the-heats of-the-earth the-green-things are-destroyed

Sexta decima provincia Italiae Sicilia est, septima decima Corsica, octava decima Sardinia

XXII · SICILY, CORSICA, AND SARDINIA

The sixteenth province is the island of Sicily, named after the leader Siculus. Corsica is the seventeenth and Sardinia the eighteenth, named after Corsus and Sardus, a son of Hercules.

Sexta decima provincia Sicilia insula conputatur. Quae
the-sixth tenth province Sicily the-island is-reckoned which
Tyrreno mari seu Ionio alluitur de Siculique ducis
by-the-Tyrrhenian sea or Ionian is-washed from and-of-Siculus of-the-leader
proprio nomine nuncupatur. Septima decima Corsica; octava
own the-name is-named the-seventh tenth Corsica the-eighth
decima Sardinia ponitur. Quae utraeque Tyrrenis fluctibus
tenth Sardinia is-placed which both by-Tyrrhenian waves
ambiuntur. Porro Corsica a duce suo Corso, Sardinia a
are-surrounded further Corsica from leader its Corsus Sardinia from
Sarde, Herculis filio, nominatur.
Sardus of-Hercules the-son is-named

Ob quam causam aliqua pars Italiae Gallia Cisalpina vocatur, et de Gallorum in Italiam primo adventu

XXIII · CISALPINE GAUL, AND THE COMING OF THE GAULS

The old historians give the name Cisalpine Gaul to Liguria, part of Venetia, Emilia, and Flaminia. Paul tells how Brennus and three hundred thousand Gauls, lured by Italian wine, came into Italy: a hundred thousand died near Delphi, a hundred thousand became the Galatians to whom Paul the apostle wrote, and a hundred thousand founded Pavia, Milan, Bergamo, and Brescia.

Certum est tamen, Liguriam et partem Venetiae, Emiliam
certain it-is yet Liguria and part of-Venetia Emilia
quoque Flamminiamque veteres historiographos Galliam
also and-Flaminia the-old historians Gaul
Cisalpinam appellasse. Inde est, quod Donatus gramaticus in
Cisalpine to-have-called thence it-is that Donatus the-grammarian in
expositione Vergilii Mantuam in Gallia esse dixit; indeque
the-exposition of-Virgil Mantua in Gaul to-be said and-thence
est, quod in Romana historia legitur Ariminum in Gallia
it-is that in the-Roman history is-read Rimini in Gaul
constitutum. Siquidem antiquissimo tempore Brennus rex
set indeed in-most-ancient time Brennus king
Gallorum, qui aput Senonas urbem regnabat, cum trecentis
of-the-Gauls who at of-the-Senones city reigned with three-hundred
milibus Gallorum Senonum ad Italiam venit eamque usque ad
thousand of-Gauls Senones to Italy came and-it all-the-way to
Senogalliam, quae a Gallis Senonibus vocitata est, occupavit.
Senigallia which from the-Gauls Senones called was occupied
Causa autem cur Galli in Italiam venerint haec fuisse
the-cause moreover why the-Gauls into Italy came this to-have-been
describitur. Dum enim vinum degustassent ab Italia delatum,
is-described while for wine they-had-tasted from Italy brought

aviditate vini inlecti ad Italiam transierunt. Horum centum
by-greed for-wine enticed to Italy they-crossed of-these a-hundred
milia non longe a Delphos insula properantes, Grecorum
thousand not far from Delphi the-island hastening of-the-Greeks
gladiis extincta sunt; alia vero centum milia in Galatia
by-the-swords extinguished were other but a-hundred thousand into Galatia
ingressa, primum Gallogreci, postea vero Galatae appellata
having-entered first Gallo-Greeks afterward indeed Galatians called
sunt. Et hi sunt quibus doctor gentium scripsit epistulam
were and these are to-whom the-teacher of-the-gentiles wrote an-epistle
Paulus. Centum milia quoque Gallorum, quae in Italia
Paul a-hundred thousand also of-Gauls who in Italy
remanserunt, Ticinum Mediolanumque, Bergamum Brexiamque
remained Pavia and-Milan Bergamo and-Brescia
construentes, Cisalpinae Galliae regioni nomen dederunt.
building of-Cisalpine Gaul to-the-region the-name gave
Istique sunt Galli Senones, qui olim urbem Romuleam
and-these are the-Gauls Senones who once the-city Romulean
invaserunt. Sicut enim dicimus Galliam Transalpinam, quae
invaded as for we-say Gaul Transalpine which
ultra Alpes habetur, sic Galliam Cisalpinam hac parte, quae
beyond the-Alps is-held thus Gaul Cisalpine this part which
infra Alpes est, vocitamus.
below the-Alps is we-call

Quare Italia sic vocatur, ut quid etiam Ausoniam vel Latium dicitur

XXIV · THE NAMES OF ITALY

Italy is named after Italus, a leader of the Sicilians, or after its great oxen, itali. It is called Ausonia after Auson, son of Ulysses, and Latium because Saturn hid there fleeing Jupiter. Paul returns to his history.

Italia quoque, quae has provincias continet, ab Italo Siculorum
Italy also which these provinces contains from Italus of-the-Sicilians
duce, qui eam antiquitus invasit, nomen accepit. Sive ob hoc
the-leader who it anciently invaded the-name received or for this
Italia dicitur, quia magni in ea boves, hoc est itali, habentur.
Italy is-called because great in it oxen that is itali are-held
Ab eo namque quod est italus per diminutionem, licet una
from that for which is italus by diminution although one
littera addita altera inmutata vitulus, appellatur. Italia etiam
letter added another changed vitulus is-called Italy also
Ausonia dicitur ab Ausono, Ulixis filio. Primitus tamen
Ausonia is-called from Auson of-Ulysses the-son at-first yet
Beneventana regio hoc nomine appellata est; postea vero tota
the-Beneventan region by-this name called was afterward indeed the-whole
sic coepit Italia vocitari. Dicitur quoque etiam Latium Italia,
thus began Italy to-be-called is-called also even Latium Italy
pro eo quod Saturnus Iovem, suum filium, fugiens intra eam
for this that Saturn Jupiter his son fleeing within it
invenisset latebram. — Igitur postquam de Italiae provinciis
had-found a-hiding-place therefore after about of-Italy the-provinces
vel ipsius nomine, intra quam res gestas describimus,
or its name within which the-deeds done we-describe
sufficienter est dictum, nunc ad historiae ordinem redeamus.
sufficiently it-is said now to of-the-history the-order let-us-return

Quomodo Alboin Mediolanium ingressus est et universas Liguriae civitates cepit, et de Honorato archiepiscopo, et de obitu Pauli patriarchae, et quia ei Probinus successit

XXV · ALBOIN TAKES MILAN AND LIGURIA

Alboin enters Liguria and takes Milan on the third of September, and then all its cities except those on the coast. Archbishop Honoratus flees to Genoa, and the patriarch Paul dies after twelve years and leaves the church to Probinus.

Alboin igitur Liguriam introiens, indictione ingrediente tertia,
Alboin therefore Liguria entering in-the-indiction beginning third
tertio Nonas Septembris, sub temporibus Honorati
on-the-third-day before-the-Nones of-September in the-times of-Honoratus
archiepiscopi Mediolanium ingressus est. Dehinc universas
the-archbishop Milan entered has thereafter all
Liguriae civitates, praeter has quae in litore maris sunt
of-Liguria the-cities except those which on the-shore of-the-sea are
positae, cepit. Honoratus vero archiepiscopus Mediolanium
placed took Honoratus but the-archbishop Milan
deserens, ad Genuensem urbem confugit. Paulus quoque
deserting to the-Genoese city fled Paul also
patriarcha annis duodecim sacerdotium gerens, ab hac luce
the-patriarch for-years twelve the-priesthood holding from this light
subtractus est regendamque ecclesiam Probino reliquit.
withdrawn was and-to-be-ruled the-church to-Probinus left

Quomodo Ticinensis civitas tribus annis obsessa est, et quia Langobardi Tusciam invaserunt, et quia plures de aliis gentibus secum in Italia adduxerunt

XXVI · THE SIEGE OF PAVIA, AND THE PEOPLES ALBOIN BROUGHT

Pavia holds out for over three years against the Lombard army, while Alboin takes everything up to Tuscany except Rome, Ravenna, and some coastal forts, the Romans being weakened by plague and famine. He brings many from other peoples with him, and villages are still called Gepid, Bulgar, Sarmatian, and Suevian.

Ticinensis eo tempore civitas ultra tres annos obsidionem
the-Ticinese at-that time city beyond three years the-siege
perferens, se fortiter continuit, Langobardorum exercitu
enduring itself bravely held of-the-Lombards the-army
non procul iuxta ea ab occidentali parte residente. Interim
not far near it on the-western side sitting meanwhile
Alboin, eiectis militibus, invasit omnia usque ad Tusciam,
Alboin driven-out the-soldiers invaded all-things all-the-way to Tuscia
praeter Romam et Ravennam vel aliqua castra quae erant
except Rome and Ravenna or some forts which were
in maris litore constituta. Nec erat tunc virtus Romanis,
on of-the-sea the-shore set nor was then strength to-the-Romans
ut resistere possint, quia et pestilentia, quae sub Narsete
that to-resist they-could because both the-pestilence which under Narses
facta est, plurimos in Liguria et Venetiis extincxerat, et
made was very-many in Liguria and the-Venetias had-destroyed and
post annum, quem diximus fuisse ubertatis, fames nimia
after the-year which we-have-said to-have-been of-plenty famine excessive
ingruens universam Italiam devastabat. Certum est autem,
falling-upon all Italy was-laying-waste certain it-is moreover
tunc Alboin multos secum ex diversis, quas vel alii reges
then Alboin many with-himself from different which either other kings

vel ipse ceperat, gentibus ad Italiam adduxisse. Unde
or he-himself had-taken peoples to Italy to-have-brought whence
usque hodie eorum in quibus habitant vicos Gepidos,
up-to today their in which they-dwell the-villages Gepid
Vulgares, Sarmatas, Pannonios, Suavos, Noricos sive aliis
Bulgar Sarmatian Pannonian Suevian Norican or by-other
huiuscemodi nominibus appellamus.
of-this-kind names we-call

Quomodo Alboin Ticinum ingressus est

XXVII · ALBOIN ENTERS PAVIA

After a siege of three years and some months Pavia surrenders. As Alboin rides in by Saint John's gate his horse falls and will not rise, until a Lombard tells him to break his vow to put the people to the sword, since they are truly Christian. When Alboin promises pardon, the horse rises, he harms no one, and the people gather to him in Theoderic's palace with new hope.

At vero Ticinensis civitas post tres annos et aliquod menses
but indeed the-Ticinese city after three years and some months
obsidionem perferens, tandem se Alboin et Langobardis
the-siege enduring at-last itself to-Alboin and the-Lombards
obsidentibus tradidit. In quam cum Alboin per portam quae
besieging surrendered into which when Alboin through the-gate which
dicitur Sancti Iohannis ab orientali urbis parte introiret,
is-called of-Saint John from the-eastern of-the-city side was-entering
equus eius in portae medio concidens, quamvis calcaribus
horse his in of-the-gate the-middle falling although with-spurs
stimulatus, quamvis hinc inde hastarum verberibus caesus,
pricked although on-this-side on-that of-spears with-blows struck
non poterat elevari. Tunc unus ex eisdem Langobardis taliter
not could to-be-raised then one of the-same Lombards thus

regem adlocutus est dicens: ‘Memento, domine rex, qualem
the-king addressed has saying remember O-lord king what-kind-of
votum vovisti. Frange tam durum votum, et ingredieris
a-vow you-have-vowed break so hard a-vow and you-shall-enter
urbem. Vere etenim christianus est populus in hac civitate’.
the-city truly for Christian is the-people in this city
Siquidem Alboin voverat, quod universum populum, quia se
indeed Alboin had-vowed that all the-people because itself
tradere noluisset, gladio extingueret. Qui postquam
to-surrender it-had-been-unwilling with-the-sword he-would-destroy who after
talem votum disrumpens civibus indulgentiam promisit,
such a-vow breaking to-the-citizens pardon he-promised
mox eius equus consurgens, ipse civitatem ingressus, nulli
soon his horse rising he the-city having-entered to-none
laesionem inferens, in sua promissione permansit. Tunc
harm bringing in his promise remained then
ad eum omnis populus in palatium, quod quondam rex
to him all the-people into the-palace which once king
Theudericus construxerat, concurrens, post tantas animum
Theoderic had-built running-together after so-great its-mind
miserias de spe iam fidus coepit futura relevare.
miseries from hope now trusting began future to-raise

Quomodo Alboin, postquam tribus regnaverat annis, consilio suae coniugis ab Helmechis interfectus est

XXVIII · ROSAMUND HAS ALBOIN KILLED

After three and a half years in Italy Alboin, drunk at a feast at Verona, has Rosamund served wine in the cup made of her father's skull, which Paul has seen in Ratchis' hand. Plotting with Helmechis, she tricks Peredeo into her bed so that he must join the killing, ties Alboin's sword fast as he sleeps, and he dies fighting with a footstool. Duke Giselpert later robs his tomb.

Qui rex postquam in Italia tres annos et sex menses
which king after in Italy three years and six months
regnavit, insidiis suae coniugis interemptus est. Causa
he-reigned by-the-plots of-his wife slain was the-cause
autem interfectionis eius fuit. Cum in convivio ultra quam
moreover of-killing his was when at a-banquet beyond what
oportuerat aput Veronam laetus resederet, cum poculo quod
it-had-been-fitting at Verona joyful he-sat with the-cup which
de capite Cunimundi regis sui soceris fecerat reginae ad
from the-head of-Cunimund the-king his father-in-law he-had-made to-the-queen for
bibendum vinum dari praecepit atque eam ut cum patre
drinking wine to-be-given he-ordered and her that with father
suo laetanter biberet invitavit. Hoc ne cui videatur
her joyfully she-should-drink he-invited this lest to-anyone it-seem
inpossibile, veritatem in Christo loquor: ego hoc poculum
impossible the-truth in Christ I-speak I this cup
vidi in quodam die festo Ratchis principem ut illut
have-seen on a-certain day festal Ratchis the-prince that it
convivis suis ostentaret manu tenentem. Igitur Rosemunda ubi
to-guests his he-might-show in-hand holding therefore Rosamund when
rem animadvertit, altum concipiens in corde dolorem, quem
the-thing she-noticed deep conceiving in heart a-grief which

conpescere non valens, mox in mariti necem patris
to-restrain not being-able soon toward of-her-husband the-death of-her-father
funus vindicatura exarsit, consiliumque mox cum Helmechis,
the-death about-to-avenge blazed and-counsel soon with Helmechis
qui regis scilpor, hoc est armiger, et conlactaneus erat,
who of-the-king the-scilpor that is armor-bearer and foster-brother was
ut regem interficeret, iniit. Qui reginae persuasit, ut ipsa
that the-king he-should-kill entered who the-queen persuaded that she
Peredeo, qui erat vir fortissimus, in hoc consilium adsciret.
Peredeo who was a-man most-brave into this counsel should-draw
Peredeo cum reginae suadenti tanti nefas consensum
Peredeo when to-the-queen persuading of-such-great wickedness consent
adhibere nollet, illa se noctu in lectulo suae
to-apply he-was-unwilling she herself by-night in the-little-bed of-her
vestiariae, cum qua Peredeo stupri consuetudinem habebat,
wardrobe-woman with whom Peredeo of-lewdness the-habit had
supposuit; ubi Peredeo rem nescius veniens, cum regina
put-in-place where Peredeo the-thing unknowing coming with the-queen
concubuit. Cumque illa patrato iam scelere ab eo quaereret,
lay and-when she accomplished now the-crime from him asked
quam se esse existimaret, et ipse nomen suae amicae,
whom himself to-be he-thought and he the-name of-his mistress
quam esse putabat, nominasset, regina subiunxit: 'Nequaquam
whom to-be he-thought had-named the-queen added by-no-means
ut putas, sed ego Rosemunda sum', inquit. 'Certe nunc
as you-think but I Rosamund am she-says certainly now
talem rem, Peredeo, perpetratam habes, ut aut tu Alboin
such a-thing O-Peredeo perpetrated you-have that either you Alboin
interficies, aut ipse te suo gladio extinguet'. Tunc ille
shall-kill or he you with-his sword shall-destroy then he
intellexit malum quod fecit, et qui sponte noluerat, tali
understood the-evil which he-did and who willingly had-been-unwilling in-such

modo in regis necem coactus adsensit. Tunc Rosemunda,
way for of-the-king the-death compelled assented then Rosamund
dum se Alboin in meridie sopori dedisset, magnum
while himself Alboin at midday to-sleep had-given great
in palatio silentium fieri praecipiens, omnia alia arma
in the-palace silence to-be-made ordering all other arms
subtrahens, spatham illius ad lectuli caput, ne tolli
taking-away the-sword his at of-the-little-bed the-head lest to-be-lifted
aut evaginari possit, fortiter conligavit, et iuxta consilium
or to-be-drawn it-could firmly bound and according-to the-counsel
Peredeo Helmechis interfectorem omni bestia crudelior
of-Peredeo Helmechis the-killer than-every beast crueler
introduxit. Alboin subito de sopore experrectus, malum quod
brought-in Alboin suddenly from sleep having-awakened the-evil which
imminebat intellegens, manum citius ad spatham porrexit;
was-impending understanding his-hand more-quickly to the-sword stretched
quam strictius religatam abstrahere non valens, adprehenso
which more-tightly bound to-draw not being-able seized
tamen scabello subpedaneo, se cum eo per aliquod
yet the-stool footstool himself with it for some
spatium defendit. Sed heu pro dolor! vir bellicosissimus et
space defended but alas for grief a-man most-warlike and
summae audaciae nihil contra hostem praevalens, quasi unus
of-the-highest daring nothing against the-enemy prevailing as-if one
de inertibus interfectus est, uniusque mulierculae consilio
of the-inert killed was and-of-one little-woman by-the-counsel
periit, qui per tot hostium strages bello famosissimus
perished who through so-many of-enemies slaughters in-war most-famous
extitit. Cuius corpus cum maximo Langobardorum fletu
stood-out whose body with greatest of-the-Lombards weeping
et lamentis sub cuiusdam scalae ascensu, quae palatio
and laments under of-a-certain stair the-ascent which to-the-palace

erat contigua, sepultum est. Fuit autem statura procerus
was adjoining buried was he-was moreover in-stature tall
et ad bella peragenda toto corpore coaptatus. Huius
and for wars to-be-waged with-the-whole body fitted his
tumulum nostris in diebus Giselpert, qui dux Veronensium
tomb our in days Giselpert who duke of-the-Veronese
fuerat, aperiens, spatham eius et si quid in ornatu ipsius
had-been opening the-sword his and if anything in adornment his
inventum fuerat abstulit. Qui se ob hanc causam vanitate
found had-been took-away who himself for this cause with-vanity
solita aput indoctos homines Alboin vidisse iactabat.
accustomed among untaught men Alboin to-have-seen boasted

Quia Helmechis regnare voluit, sed non potuit, et quomodo cum Rosemunda ad Ravennam confugiit, et quomodo inde sunt extincti

XXIX · HELMECHIS AND ROSAMUND FLEE TO RAVENNA AND DIE

Helmechis tries to seize the kingdom, but the Lombards seek to kill him, and he and Rosamund flee by ship to Longinus at Ravenna with Albsuinda and the Lombard treasure. Longinus, wanting Rosamund as his wife, urges her to kill Helmechis, and she gives Helmechis poison; feeling it, he makes her drink the rest at sword point, and both die by God's judgment.

Igitur Helmechis, extincto Alboin, regnum eius invadere
therefore Helmechis killed Alboin the-kingdom his to-invade
conatus est. Sed minime potuit, quia Langobardi, nimium
tried has but by-no-means he-could because the-Lombards greatly
de morte illius dolentes, eum moliebantur extinguere.
over the-death of-him grieving him were-striving to-destroy
Statimque Rosemunda Longino praefecto Ravennae mandavit,
and-at-once Rosamund to-Longinus the-prefect of-Ravenna sent-word

ut citius navem dirigeret, quae eos suscipere possit.
that more-quickly a-ship he-should-direct which them to-take-up could
Longinus tali nuntio laetus effectus, festinanter navem
Longinus by-such news glad made hastily a-ship
direxit, in qua Helmechis cum Rosemunda, sua iam coniuge,
directed into which Helmechis with Rosamund his now wife
noctu fugientes ingressi sunt. Auferentesque secum
by-night fleeing entered have and-carrying-off with-themselves
Albsuindam, regis filiam, et omnem Langobardorum
Albsuinda of-the-king the-daughter and all of-the-Lombards
thesaurum, velocius Ravennam pervenerunt. Tunc Longinus
the-treasure more-swiftly to-Ravenna arrived then Longinus
praefectus suadere coepit Rosemundae, ut Helmechis
the-prefect to-persuade began Rosamund that Helmechis
interficeret et eius se nuptiis copularet. Illa ut erat
she-should-kill and his herself to-marriage should-join she as she-was
ad omnem nequitiam facilis, dum optat Ravennatium
to every wickedness easy while she-wishes of-the-Ravennese
domina fieri, ad tantum perpetrandum facinus adsensum
mistress to-become for so-great to-be-perpetrated a-crime assent
dedit; atque dum Helmechis se in balneo ablueret,
gave and while Helmechis himself in the-bath was-washing
egredienti ei de lavacro veneni poculum, quod salutis
going-out to-him from the-bath of-poison a-cup which of-health
esse adseverabat, propinavit. Ille ubi sensit se mortis
to-be she-asserted she-drank-to-him he when he-perceived himself of-death
poculum bibisse, Rosemunda, evaginato super eam gladio,
the-cup to-have-drunk Rosamund drawn over her the-sword
quod reliquum erat bibere coegit. Sicque Dei omnipotentis
what remaining was to-drink compelled and-thus of-God almighty
iudicio interfectores iniquissimi uno momento perierunt.
by-the-judgment the-killers most-wicked in-one moment perished

Quomodo Longinus post eorum mortem Alpsuindam cum Langobardorum thesauro imperatori direxit, et de Peredeo, quomodo in Constantinopolim leonem occidit, et quia duos patricios interemit

XXX · ALBSUINDA SENT EAST, AND PEREDEO'S REVENGE

Longinus sends Albsuinda and the treasure to the emperor. Some say Peredeo goes too, kills a lion in the arena, and is blinded lest he do harm. He hides knives in his sleeves, asks to speak with the emperor, and stabs to death the two patricians sent to hear him, killing two of the emperor's men for his two eyes.

His ita peremptis, Longinus praefectus Albsuindam cum
these thus slain Longinus the-prefect Albsuinda with
Langobardorum thesauris Constantinopolim ad imperatorem
of-the-Lombards the-treasures to-Constantinople to the-emperor
direxit. Adfirmant aliqui, etiam Peredeo pariter cum Helmechis
directed affirm some also Peredeo together with Helmechis
et Rosemunda Ravenna venisse atque exinde cum Albsuinda
and Rosamund to-Ravenna to-have-come and thence with Albsuinda
Constantinopolim directus esse ibique in spectaculo
to-Constantinople directed to-have-been and-there at a-spectacle
populi coram imperatore leonem mirae magnitudinis
of-the-people before the-emperor a-lion of-wondrous size
occidisse. Cui, ut ferunt, ne quid aliquid malignum
to-have-killed to-whom as they-report lest anything any malignant
in regia urbe, quia vir fortis erat, moliretur, iussu
in the-royal city because a-man brave he-was he-should-contrive by-order
imperatoris oculi evulsi sunt. Qui sibi post aliquod
of-the-emperor the-eyes plucked-out were who for-himself after some
tempus duos cultellos aptavit; quibus in utrisque suis manicis
time two little-knives fitted which in both his sleeves

absconsis, palatium petiit atque se quaedam ad augusti
hidden the-palace he-sought and himself certain-things for of-the-augustus
utilitatem, si ad eum intromitteretur, locuturum promisit.
the-advantage if to him he-were-admitted about-to-speak promised
Ad quem augustus duos sibi familiares, qui eius verba
to whom augustus two to-himself intimates who his words
susciperent, patricios misit. Qui cum ad Peredeo venissent,
should-take-up patricians sent who when to Peredeo they-had-come
ille ad eos, quasi aliquid eis secretius dicturus, propius
he to them as-if something to-them more-secretly about-to-say nearer
accessit atque ambos utraque manu gladiis, quos absconsos
approached and both with-each hand with-the-blades which hidden
habebat, fortiter vulneravit, ita ut statim in terra corruerent
he-had forcefully wounded so that at-once on the-earth they-fell
et expirarent. Sic Samsonis illius fortissimi ex aliqua parte
and expired thus of-Samson that most-brave in some part
non absimilis, suas iniurias ultus est et pro amissione
not unlike his injuries avenged has and for the-loss
duorum luminum duos imperatori viros utillimos interemit.
of-two eyes two for-the-emperor men most-useful killed

De regno Cleph, qui secundus regnavit, et de morte eius

XXXI · KING CLEPH

By common counsel the Lombards make Cleph, one of their noblest, king at Pavia. He kills many powerful Romans and drives others from Italy, and after a year and a half on the throne with his wife Masane he is killed by a servant of his household.

Langobardi vero aput Italiam omnes communi consilio Cleph,
the-Lombards but in Italy all by-common counsel Cleph
nobilissimum de suis virum, in urbe Ticinensium sibi
the-most-noble of their-people man in the-city of-the-Ticinese for-themselves
regem statuerunt. Hic multos Romanorum viros potentes, alios
king established he many of-the-Romans men powerful some
gladiis extinxit, alios ab Italia exturbavit. Iste cum annum
with-swords killed others from Italy drove-out he when year
unum et sex menses cum Masane sua coniuge regnum
one and six months with Masane his wife the-kingdom
optenuisset, a puero de suo obsequio gladio iugulatus est.
had-held by a-boy from his following with-a-sword slaughtered was

Quomodo duces Langobardorum per decem annos sine rege fuerunt, per quos Italia subiugata est

XXXII · TEN YEARS UNDER THE DUKES

After Cleph's death the Lombards live ten years under dukes, each holding his city, five named and thirty others. Many Roman nobles are killed for their wealth and the rest made to pay a third of their crops. Under these dukes churches are despoiled, priests killed, and cities overthrown, and most of Italy is subjugated.

Post cuius mortem Langobardi per annos decem regem
after whose death the-Lombards for years ten a-king
non habentes, sub ducibus fuerunt. Unusquisque enim
not having under dukes were each for
ducum suam civitatem obtinebat: Zaban Ticinum, Wallari
of-the-dukes his city held Zaban Pavia Wallari
Bergamum, Alichis Brexiam, Eoin Trientum, Gisulfus
Bergamo Alichis Brescia Euin Trent Gisulf
Forumiuli. Sed et alii extra hos in suis urbibus triginta
Friuli but also others besides these in their cities thirty
duces fuerunt. His diebus multi nobilium Romanorum
dukes were in-these days many of-the-noble Romans
ob cupiditatem interfecti sunt. Reliqui vero per hospites
for greed killed were the-rest but among the-guests
divisi, ut terciam partem suarum frugum Langobardis
divided that the-third part of-their produce to-the-Lombards
persolverent, tributarii efficiuntur. Per hos Langobardorum
they-should-pay tributaries are-made through these of-the-Lombards
duces, septimo anno ab adventu Alboin et totius
dukes in-the-seventh year from the-coming of-Alboin and of-the-whole
gentis, spoliatis ecclesiis, sacerdotibus interfectis, civitatibus
people despoiled the-churches the-priests killed the-cities

subrutis populisque, qui more segetum excreverant,
overthrown and-the-peoples who in-the-manner of-crops had-grown-up
extinctis, exceptis his regionibus quas Alboin ceperat,
destroyed excepted those regions which Alboin had-taken
Italia ex maxima parte capta et a Langobardis subiugata
Italy for the-greatest part taken and by the-Lombards subjugated
est.
was

Quia duces Langobardorum Galliam ad praedandum sunt ingressi (;) quorum adventum beatus Hospitius longe praedixit

I · HOSPITIUS FORETELLS THE LOMBARDS' COMING

Some Lombard dukes enter Gaul with a strong army. Long before, the recluse Hospitius at Nice, who wears iron chains and lives on bread and dates, foretells that the Lombards will lay waste seven cities, because the people are given to perjury, theft, and murder and care nothing for the poor. He sends his monks away, saying the Lombards will harm him but not kill him.

Igitur aliquanti ex ducibus Langobardorum cum valido exercitu
therefore some of the-dukes of-the-Lombards with a-strong army
Gallias ingrediuntur. Horum adventum vir Dei Hospitius,
the-Gauls enter their coming the-man of-God Hospitius
qui aput Niceam erat inclausus, sancto sibi revelante Spiritu,
who at Nice was shut-in holy to-him revealing the-Spirit
longe ante praevidit eiusdemque urbis civibus, quae mala
long before foresaw and-of-the-same city to-the-citizens what evils
inminerent, praedixit. Erat enim vir iste magnae abstinentiae
were-impending foretold was for man this of-great abstinence
et probabilis vitae; qui constrictus ad carnem cathenis
and of-commendable life who bound to the-flesh with-chains
ferreis, induto desuper cilicio, solo pane in cibo cum paucis
of-iron put-on over-them a-hair-shirt only bread for food with a-few
dactulis utebatur. In diebus autem quadragesimae radicibus
dates used in the-days moreover of-Lent on-the-roots
herbarum Aegyptiarum, quibus heremitae utuntur, exibentibus
of-herbs Egyptian which hermits use supplying
sibi negotiatoribus, alebatur. Per hunc Dominus magnas
to-him merchants he-was-fed through him the-Lord great

virtutes operari dignatus est, quae scriptae habentur in
powers to-work deigned has which written are-held in
libris venerabilis viri Gregorii Turonensis episcopi. Igitur
the-books of-the-venerable man Gregory of-Tours the-bishop therefore
vir iste sanctus adventum Langobardorum in Gallias hoc
man this holy the-coming of-the-Lombards into the-Gauls in-this
modo praedixit: 'Venient', inquid, 'Langobardi in Gallias et
way foretold shall-come he-says the-Lombards into the-Gauls and
devastabunt civitates septem, eo quod increverit malitia
shall-lay-waste cities seven for-this that has-grown the-malice
eorum in conspectu Domini. Est enim omnis populus
their in the-sight of-the-Lord is for all the-people
periuriis deditus, furtis obnoxius, rapinis intentus, homicidiis
to-perjuries given to-thefts liable on-plunders intent for-murders
prumptus; in quibus non est iustitiae fructus: non decimae
ready in whom not is of-justice fruit not tithes
dantur, non pauper alitur, non tegitur nudus, non
are-given not the-poor-man is-fed not is-covered the-naked not
suscipitur hospitio peregrinus. Ideo haec plaga ventura
is-received in-hospitality the-stranger therefore this blow about-to-come
est super populum istum'. Monachis quoque suis praecipiens
is upon people this to-the-monks also his commanding
dixit: 'Abscedite et vos a loco isto, auferentes vobiscum
he-said go-away also you from place this carrying-off with-you
quae habetis. Ecce enim gens appropiat quam praedixi'.
what you-have behold for the-people approaches which I-have-foretold
Dicentibus autem illis: 'Non relinquimus te, sanctissime pater',
saying moreover they not we-leave you O-most-holy father
ait: 'Nolite timere pro me. Futurum est enim, ut inferant
says do-not fear for me about-to-be it-is for that they-bring-on
mihi iniurias, sed non nocebunt usque ad mortem'.
me injuries but not they-shall-harm all-the-way to death

De Langobardo qui beatum Hospitium extinguere voluit (;) quomodo eius dextera obriguit, et quomodo ab eodem beato viro sanitati restituta est, et quia ipse Langobardus monachus effectus est

II · THE LOMBARD WHO TRIED TO KILL HOSPITIUS

The Lombards find Hospitius in his tower and, seeing his chains, take him for a criminal, and he confesses himself guilty of every crime. As one raises his sword to behead him, his arm stiffens, and Hospitius heals it with the sign of the cross; the man becomes a monk there. Dukes who hear Hospitius reverently go home safe, and those who scorn him perish in Provence.

Discedentibus autem monachis, advenit exercitus
departing moreover the-monks came the-army
Langobardorum. Qui dum cuncta quae reppererat
of-the-Lombards which while all-things which it-had-found
vastaret, ad locum ubi vir sanctus inclausus erat pervenit.
it-laid-waste to the-place where the-man holy shut-in was came
At ille per fenestram turris se eis ostendit. Illi
but he through the-window of-the-tower himself to-them showed they
vero circumeuntes turrem, dum aditum quaererent, per
but going-around the-tower while an-entrance they-sought through
quem ad eum ingredi possent, et minime invenirent, duo
which to him to-enter they-could and by-no-means they-found two
ex eis ascendentes tectum, discoperierunt illud. Et videntes
of them climbing the-roof uncovered it and seeing
eum vinctum cathenis indutumque cilicio, dicunt: 'Hic
him bound with-chains and-clothed with-a-hair-shirt say this-man
malefactor est et homicidium fecit, ideo in his ligaminibus
a-malefactor is and murder has-done therefore in these bonds
vinctus tenetur'. Vocatumque interpretem, sciscitantur ab eo,
bound he-is-held and-called an-interpreter they-ask of him

quid mali fecerit, ut tali supplicio artaretur. At
what of-evil he-has-done that with-such punishment he-should-be-constrained but
ille fatetur, se homicidam esse omniumque criminum reum.
he confesses himself a-murderer to-be and-of-all crimes guilty
Tunc unus, extracto gladio, ut caput eius amputaret, mox
then one drawn the-sword that the-head his he-might-cut-off soon
eius dextera in ipso ictu suspensa diriguit, nec eam ad
his right-hand in the-very stroke suspended stiffened nor it to
se potuit revocare. Qui relictum gladium terrae deiecit.
himself could to-recall who the-left sword to-the-earth threw-down
Haec videntes socii eius, clamorem in caelo dederunt,
these-things seeing the-companions his a-shout to heaven gave
flagitantes a sancto, ut, quid eis agendum esset,
begging from the-saint that what for-them to-be-done should-be
clementer insinuaret. Ipse vero inposito salutis signo
mercifully he-should-make-known he but put-on of-salvation the-sign
arens brachium sanitatis restituit. Langobardus autem qui
the-withered arm to-health restored the-Lombard moreover who
sanatus fuerat ad fidem Christi conversus, statim clericus,
healed had-been to the-faith of-Christ converted at-once cleric
deinde monachus effectus est atque in eodem loco usque
then monk made was and in the-same place all-the-way
ad finem vitae suae in Dei servitio permansit. Beatus vero
to the-end of-life his in of-God the-service remained blessed but
Hospitius dum Langobardis Dei verbum loqueretur, duo
Hospitius while to-the-Lombards of-God the-word he-spoke two
duces, qui eum venerabiliter audierunt, incolomes patriae
dukes who him reverently heard safe to-the-fatherland
redditi sunt; quidam vero, qui eius verba despexerant, in
returned were certain but who his words had-despised in
ipsa Provincia miserabiliter perierunt.
the-very Provence wretchedly perished

Quomodo Langobardorum exercitui Amatus patricius bellum intulit, et quomodo ab eis devictus et occisus est (;) et quomodo Langobardi victores cum multa praeda ad Italiam sunt reversi

III · AMATUS DEFEATED AND KILLED

While the Lombards ravage Gaul, Amatus, patrician of Provence under King Guntram, leads an army against them, turns to flee, and is killed. The Lombards make an uncountable slaughter of the Burgundians and go back to Italy with booty beyond reckoning.

Igitur devastantibus Langobardis Gallias, Amatus patricius
therefore laying-waste the-Lombards the-Gauls Amatus the-patrician
Provinciae, qui Gunthramno regi Francorum parebat, contra
of-Provence who to-Guntram king of-the-Franks was-obedient against
eos exercitum duxit, commissoque bello, terga vertit ibique
them an-army led and-joined battle his-back turned and-there
extinctus est. Tantamque tunc stragem Langobardi de
killed was and-such then slaughter the-Lombards of
Burgundionibus fecerunt, ut non possit colligi numerus
the-Burgundians made that not could to-be-gathered the-number
occisorum. Ditatique inaestimabili praeda ad Italiam revertuntur.
of-the-slain and-enriched with-inestimable booty to Italy return

Quomodo iterum Langobardi Galliam ingressi, a Mummulo patricio sunt devicti

IV · MUMMOLUS DEFEATS THE LOMBARDS

Eunius, also called Mummolus, is made patrician. When the Lombards break into Gaul again as far as Mustiascalmes near Embrun, he surrounds them, blocks the forest tracks, kills many, and sends prisoners to Guntram, and the Lombards return to Italy.

Quibus discendentibus, Eunius, qui et Mummulus, accersitus a
whom departing Eunius who also Mummolus summoned by
rege, patriciatus honorem emeruit. Inruentibus autem iterum
the-king of-the-patriciate the-honor earned rushing moreover again
Langobardis in Gallias et usque Mustiascalmes accedentibus,
the-Lombards into the-Gauls and up-to Mustiae-Calmes approaching
qui locus Ebredunensi adiacet civitati, Mummulus exercitum
which place of-Embrun lies-near to-the-city Mummolus his-army
movit et cum Burgundionibus illuc proficiscitur. Circumdatisque
moved and with the-Burgundians thither sets-out and-surrounded
Langobardis cum exercitu, factis etiam concisis per devia
the-Lombards with the-army made even cut-down-trees through the-byways
silvarum, inruit super eos multosque ex eis interfecit;
of-the-woods he-rushed upon them and-many of them killed
nonnullos vero cepit et regi suo Gunthramno direxit.
some but took and to-king his Guntram directed
Langobardi quoque, his patratis, ad Italiam sunt regressi.
the-Lombards also these accomplished to Italy have returned

Quomodo Saxones, qui cum Langobardis in Italiam venerant (;) Galliam depraedantes a Mummulo sunt superati

V · MUMMOLUS DEFEATS THE SAXONS

The Saxons who came to Italy with the Lombards break into Gaul and camp at Estoublon near Riez, plundering the villages around. Mummolus falls on them and kills many until nightfall, and in the morning they make peace, give him gifts, leave their captives and booty, and return to Italy.

Post haec Saxones, qui cum Langobardis in Italiam venerant,
after these-things the-Saxons who with the-Lombards into Italy had-come
in Gallias prorumpunt et intra terretorium Regensem, id
into the-Gauls burst-forth and within the-territory of-Riez that
est aput Stablonem villam, castra constituunt, discurrentes
is at Estoublon the-estate camp establish running-about
per villas urbium vicinarum, diripientes praedas, captivos
through the-estates of-the-cities neighboring plundering booty captives
abducentes vel etiam cuncta vastantes. Quod cum Mummulus
leading-off or even all-things laying-waste which when Mummolus
conperisset, super eos cum exercitu inruit multosque ex eis
had-learned upon them with an-army he-rushed and-many of them
interfecit; donec nox finem faceret, caedere non cessavit. Ignaros
killed until night an-end made to-slaughter not he-ceased unaware
enim reppererat homines et nihil de his quae accesserant
for he-had-found the-men and nothing of these-things which had-happened
autumantes. Mane autem facto, statuunt Saxones exercitum,
supposing morning moreover made set the-Saxons the-army
praeparantes se fortiter ad bellum; sed intercurrentibus
preparing themselves bravely for war but going-between

nuntiis, pacem fecerunt, datisque muneribus Mummulo,
messengers peace they-made and-given gifts to-Mummolus
relictis captivis et universa praeda, ad Italiam revertuntur.
left the-captives and all the-booty to Italy return

Quomodo ipsi Saxones cum uxoribus et parvulis
suis iterum Galliam ingressi (;) dum praedas agerent,
coartati a Mummulo, auro se redimerunt et sic ad
Sigispertum regem venerunt et inde patriam revertuntur

VI · THE SAXONS LEAVE ITALY THROUGH GAUL

The Saxons, it seems, will not live under the Lombards, so with their wives and goods they go back through Gaul in two columns, by Nice and by Embrun, eating the harvest as they go. At the Rhône they buy their passage from Mummolus with gold. On the way to Sigibert they cheat many by selling colored bronze as gold, and Sigibert lets them return to their old land.

Igitur regressi Saxones in Italiam, adsumptis secum
therefore having-returned the-Saxons into Italy taken with-themselves
uxoribus atque parvulis suis vel omni supellectili, rursum ad
wives and children their and all goods again to
Gallias deliberant redire, scilicet ut a Sigisperto rege suscepti,
the-Gauls decide to-return namely that by Sigibert the-king received
eius possint adiutorio ad patriam remeare. Certum
his they-might-be-able by-help to the-fatherland to-return certain
est autem, hos Saxones ideo ad Italiam cum uxoribus et
it-is moreover these Saxons therefore to Italy with wives and
parvulis advenisse, ut in ea habitare deberent; sed quantum
children to-have-come that in it to-dwell they-should but as-far-as
datur intellegi, noluerunt Langobardorum imperiis
is-given to-be-understood they-were-unwilling of-the-Lombards to-the-commands

subiacere. Sed neque eis a Langobardis permissum est in
to-lie-under but neither to-them by the-Lombards permitted was in
proprio iure subsistere, ideoque aestimantur ad suam patriam
their-own right to-subsist and-therefore they-are-reckoned to their fatherland
repedasse. Hi Gallias ingressuri, duos ex se cuneos
to-have-returned these the-Gauls about-to-enter two of themselves wedges
faciunt; et unus quidem cuneus per Niceam urbem, alter
make and one indeed wedge through Nice the-city the-other
vero per Ebredunum ingressus est, illa revertens via, quam
but through Embrun entered has that returning road which
anno superiore tenuerat. Hi, quia tempus messium erat,
in-the-year former it-had-held these because the-time of-harvests it-was
colligentes ac triturantes frumenta, comedebant ac suis
gathering and threshing the-grain ate and to-their
animantibus ad esum praebebant. Depraedabantur pecora, sed
animals for food offered they-plundered the-flocks but
nec ab incendiis abstinebant. Qui cum ad Rodanum amnem
nor from burnings abstained who when to the-Rhone river
pervenissent, ut, transmeato eo, regno se Sigisperti
had-come that crossed it to-the-kingdom themselves of-Sigibert
conferrent, occurrit eis Mummulus cum valida multitudine.
they-might-bring met them Mummolus with a-strong multitude
Tunc illi valde viso eo timentes, datis pro redemptione sua
then they greatly seen him fearing given for redemption their
multis auri numismatibus, Rodanum transire permissi sunt.
many of-gold coins the-Rhone to-cross permitted were
Qui dum ad Sigispertum regem pergunt, multos in itinere
who while to Sigibert the-king they-proceed many on the-journey
negotiatione sua deceperunt, venundantes regulas aeris, quae
by-trading their deceived selling bars of-bronze which
ita, nescio quomodo, erant coloratae, ut auri probati atque
so I-know-not how were colored that of-gold proved and

examinati speciem simularent. Unde nonnulli hoc dolo
examined the-appearance they-simulated whence some by-this trick
seducti, dantes aurum et aes accipientes, pauperes sunt
seduced giving gold and bronze receiving poor were
effecti. Pervenientes tamen ad regem Sigispertum, ad locum
made arriving yet to the-king Sigibert to the-place
unde prius egressi fuerant redire permissi sunt.
whence before gone-out they-had to-return permitted they-were

Quomodo Saxones de patria sua Suavos et alias gentes quae ibi residebant expellere (;) cupientes, ab eis vehementer sunt caesi

VII · THE SAXONS BEATEN BY THE SUEVI

Coming home, the Saxons find their land held by the Suevi, who offer them a third of it, then half, then two parts, then their herds as well. The Saxons refuse and settle before the battle how they will divide the Suevian wives, but twenty thousand of them fall, and only four hundred and eighty Suevi. Six thousand survivors vow not to cut beard or hair until avenged, fight again, and are crushed.

Qui dum ad suam patriam venissent, invenerunt, eam
who when to their fatherland they-had-come found it
ad Suavis et aliis gentibus, sicut supra commemoravimus,
by the-Suevi and other peoples as above we-have-recalled
retineri. Contra quos insurgentes, conati sunt eos extrudere
to-be-held against whom rising-up tried they-have them to-thrust-out
ac delere. At illi optulerunt eis tertiam partem regionis,
and to-destroy but they offered them the-third part of-the-region
dicentes: 'Simul possumus vivere et sine conlisione
saying together we-can to-live and without collision
communiter habitare'. Cumque illi nullo modo adquiescerent,
in-common to-dwell and-when they in-no way acquiesced

dehinc optulerunt eis medietatem; post haec duas partes,
then they-offered them half after this two parts
sibi tantum tertiam reservantes. Nolentibus autem illis,
to-them only the-third reserving being-unwilling moreover they
optulerunt cum terra etiam omnia pecora, tantum ut
they-offered with the-land also all the-flocks provided that
a bello cessarent. Sed nec hoc Saxones adquiescentes,
from war they-should-cease but nor this the-Saxons acquiescing
certamen expetunt atque inter se ante certamen, qualiter
contest seek and among themselves before the-contest how
uxores Suavorum dividerent, statuunt. Sed non eis ut
the-wives of-the-Suevi they-should-divide settle but not to-them as
putabant evenit. Nam commisso proelio, viginti milia ex
they-thought it-turned-out for joined the-battle twenty thousand of
eis interempta sunt, Suavorum vero quadringenti octuaginta
them slain were of-the-Suevi but four-hundred eighty
ceciderunt, reliqui vero victoriam capiunt. Sex milia quoque
fell the-rest but victory take six thousand also
Saxonum, qui bello superfuerant, devoverunt, se neque
of-the-Saxons who the-war had-survived vowed themselves neither
barbam neque capillos incisuros, nisi se de Suavis
beard nor hair about-to-cut unless themselves on the-Suevi
hostibus ulciscerentur. Qui iterum pugnam adgredientes,
enemies they-avenged who again battle attacking
vehementer adtriti sunt, et sic a bello quieverunt.
violently worn-down were and thus from war rested

Quomodo tres duces Langobardorum, hoc est Amo, Zaban et Rodanus, Gallias inruperunt, et quomodo Zaban et Rodanus a Mummulo devicti sunt (;) et quomodo toti tres ad Italiam revertuntur

VIII · AMO, ZABAN, AND RODANUS RAID GAUL

Three Lombard dukes break into Gaul: Amo ravages Provence to the Stony Plain by Marseille, Zaban besieges Valence, and Rodanus attacks Grenoble. Mummolus wounds Rodanus and routs him, then beats him and Zaban together near Embrun, and they flee home by Susa. Amo, caught by snow, leaves most of his booty and barely crosses the Alps.

Post haec tres Langobardorum duces, id est Amo,
after these-things three of-the-Lombards dukes that is Amo
Zaban ac Rodanus, Gallias inruperunt. Et Amo quidem
Zaban and Rodanus the-Gauls burst-into and Amo indeed
Ebredunensem carpens viam, usque Machoavilla, quam
the-Embrun taking road up-to Machovilla which
Mummulus munere regis meruerat, accessit ibique tentoria
Mummolus by-the-gift of-the-king had-earned approached and-there tents
fixit; Zaban vero per Deinsem descendens urbem, usque
fixed Zaban but through Die descending the-city up-to
Valentiam venit; Rodanus autem Gratianopolin civitatem
Valence came Rodanus moreover Grenoble the-city
adgressus est. Et Amo quidem Arelatensem debellavit
attacked has and Amo indeed the-Arles subdued
provinciam cum urbibus qui circumsitae sunt; et usque ad
province with the-cities which situated-around are and all-the-way to
ipsum Lapideum campum, qui adiacet urbi Massiliensi,
the-very Stony plain which lies-near to-the-city of-Marseille
accedens, universa quae repperire poterat depopulatus est;
approaching all which to-find he-could plundered has

Aquinsibus autem obsidionem parans, viginti duabus libris
for-Aix moreover a-siege preparing twenty two pounds
argenti acceptis, ab eodem loco discessit. Rodanus quoque
of-silver received from the-same place departed Rodanus also
et Zaban pari modo incendiis et rapinis loca ad quae
and Zaban in-like manner with-burnings and plunders the-places to which
accesserant demoliti sunt. Quae cum Mummulo patricio
they-had-approached demolished have which when to-Mummolus the-patrician
perlata fuissent, cum valida manu veniens, primum cum
reported had-been with a-strong band coming first with
Rodano, qui Gratianopolin debellabat, conflixit et multos de
Rodanus who Grenoble was-subduing clashed and many of
eius exercitu peremit ipsumque Rodanum lancea vulneratum
his army slew and-himself Rodanus with-a-lance wounded
ad montium excelsa fugere conpulit. Qui exinde cum
to of-the-mountains the-heights to-flee compelled who thence with
quingentis viris, qui ei remanserant, per devia silvarum
five-hundred men who to-him had-remained through the-byways of-the-woods
prorumpens, ad Zaban, qui tunc urbem Valentiam obsidebat,
bursting-forth to Zaban who then the-city Valence was-besieging
pervenit, eique omnia quae acta fuerant nuntiavit. Qui
came and-to-him all-things which done had-been announced who
pariter dum ad Ebredunensem urbem omnia depraedantes
together while to the-Embrun city all-things plundering
venissent, ibi eis Mummulus cum innumero exercitu
they-had-come there them Mummolus with a-countless army
occurrit; commissoque proelio, eosdem vicit. Tunc Zaban
met and-joined battle the-same conquered then Zaban
et Rodanus Italiam repetentes, Secusium devenere; quam
and Rodanus Italy seeking-again to-Susa came which
urbem Sisinnius tunc magister militum a parte retinebat
city Sisinnius then the-master of-the-soldiers on the-part held

imperatoris. Ad quem puer Mummuli adveniens, litteras
of-the-emperor to whom a-servant of-Mummolus coming letters
ei directas a Mummulo porrexit eumque citius adventare
to-him directed by Mummolus held-out and-him quickly to-be-arriving
dixit. Quo conperto, Zaban et Rodanus exinde mox ad
said which learned Zaban and Rodanus thence soon to
propria discesserunt. His auditis, Amo, collecta omni
their-own departed these-things heard Amo collected all
praeda, Italia rediturus proficiscitur; sed resistentibus nivibus,
the-booty to-Italy about-to-return sets-out but resisting the-snows
praedam ex magna parte relinquens, vix cum suis Alpinum
the-booty in great part leaving scarcely with his-men the-Alpine
tramitem erumpere potuit et sic ad patriam pervenit.
path to-break-through could and thus to the-fatherland arrived

Quomodo Franci Anagnis castrum Langobardorum ceperunt, et quomodo Ragilo comis a Francorum duce Chramnichis occisus est (;) et quomodo ipse Chramnichis ab Euin Langobardorum duce de Tridento peremptus est

IX · ANAGNIS, RAGILO, CHRAMNICHIS, AND EUIN

The fort of Anagnis above Trent gives itself to the Franks, and the Lombard count Ragilo of Lagare plunders it, but the Frankish duke Chramnichis kills him in the field of Rotaliano. Chramnichis then ravages Trent, until Euin, duke of Trent, kills him at Salurn, takes back the booty, and recovers the territory.

His diebus advenientibus Francis, Anagnis castrum, quod
in-these days arriving the-Franks Anagnis the-fort which
super Tridentum in confinio Italiae positum est, se eisdem
above Trent on the-border of-Italy placed is itself to-the-same
tradidit. Quam ob causam comes Langobardorum de
surrendered on-account-of which cause the-count of-the-Lombards from

Lagare, Ragilo nomine, Anagnis veniens depraedatus est.
Lagare Ragilo by-name to-Anagnis coming plundered has
Qui dum cum praeda reverteretur, in campo Rotaliani ab
who while with the-booty he-was-returning in the-plain of-Rotaliano by
obvio sibi duce Francorum Chramnichis cum pluribus e
meeting him the-duke of-the-Franks Chramnichis with very-many of
suis peremptus est. Qui Chramnichis non multum post
his-men slain was who Chramnichis not much after
tempus Tridentum veniens devastavit. Quem subsequens Euin
time Trent coming laid-waste whom following Euin
Tridentinus dux, in loco qui Salurnis dicitur suis cum
of-Trent the-duke in the-place which Salurn is-called his with
sociis interfecit praedamque omnem quam ceperat excussit.
comrades killed and-the-booty all which he-had-taken shook-out
Expulsisque Francis, Tridentinum territorium recepit.
and-driven-out the-Franks the-Trent territory recovered

De morte Sigisperti Francorum regis, et de nuptiis Euin ducis

X · SIGIBERT KILLED, AND EUIN'S MARRIAGE

Sigibert, king of the Franks, is killed through the treachery of his brother Chilperic, and his young son Childebert takes up the kingdom with his mother Brunhild. Euin, duke of Trent, marries the daughter of Garibald, king of the Bavarians.

Hoc tempore Sigispertus rex Francorum occisus est fraude
at-this time Sigibert king of-the-Franks killed was by-the-fraud
Hilperici, germani sui, cum quo bellum inierat, regnumque
of-Chilperic brother his with whom war he-had-entered and-the-kingdom
eius Childepertus, eiusdem filius, adhuc puerulus, cum
his Childebert of-the-same the-son still a-little-boy with

Brunihilde matre regendum suscepit. Euin quoque dux
Brunhild his-mother to-be-ruled took-up Euin also the-duke
Tridentinorum, de quo praemisimus, accepit uxorem
of-the-Trentines of whom we-have-spoken-before received as-wife
filiam Garibaldi Baioariorum regis.
the-daughter of-Garibald of-the-Bavarians the-king

De morte Iustini minoris (;) et qualis in vita sua fuerit

XI · JUSTIN THE YOUNGER AND TIBERIUS CAESAR

Justin the Younger is greedy, scorns the poor, robs the senators, and is struck mad. He takes Tiberius as Caesar to govern, a just, wise, and truly Christian man, who answers Sophia's rebukes for his almsgiving that the treasury will not lack money while the poor receive alms. Justin dies after eleven years; Narses' wars were in his reign, and he relieved famished Rome with grain from Egypt.

Per haec tempora aput Constantinopolim, ut supra
through these times at Constantinople as above
praemissum est, Iustinus minor regnabat, vir in omni
said-before it-is Justin the-younger reigned a-man to all
avaritia deditus, contemptor pauperum, senatorum spoliator.
avarice given a-despiser of-the-poor of-senators a-despoiler
Cui tanta fuit cupiditatis rabies, ut arcas iuberet ferreas
to-whom such was of-greed the-madness that chests he-ordered of-iron
fieri, in quibus ea quae rapiebat auri talenta congereret.
to-be-made in which those which he-seized of-gold talents he-might-heap
Quem etiam ferunt in heresim Pelagianam dilapsum. Hic
whom also they-report into the-heresy Pelagian to-have-slipped he
cum a divinis mandatis aurem cordis averteret, iusto
when from the-divine commands the-ear of-his-heart turned-away by-the-just
Dei iudicio amisso rationis intellectu amens effectus
of-God judgment lost of-reason the-understanding mad made

est. Hic Tiberium caesarem adscivit, qui eius palatium vel
was he Tiberius as-caesar took-up who his palace or
singulas provincias gubernaret, hominem iustum, utilem,
the-individual provinces should-govern a-man just useful
strenuum, sapientem, elimosinarium, in iudiciis aequum,
vigorous wise almsgiving in judgments fair
in victoriis clarum et, quod his omnibus supereminet,
in victories renowned and what these all surpasses
verissimum christianum. Hic cum multa de thesauris
a-most-true Christian he when many-things from the-treasures
quos Iustinus adgregaverat pauperibus erogaret, Suffia augusta
which Justin had-heaped to-the-poor paid-out Sophia the-augusta
frequentius eum increpabat, quod rem publicam redigisset
more-frequently him rebuked that the-thing public he-had-reduced
in paupertatem, dicens: 'Quod ego multis annis congregavi,
to poverty saying what I in-many years have-gathered
tu infra paucum tempus prodige dispergis'. Agebat autem
you within little time prodigally scatter said moreover
ille: 'Confido in Domino, quia non deerit pecunia
he I-trust in the-Lord that not shall-be-lacking money
fisco nostro, tantum ut pauperes elimosinam accipiant aut
to-treasury our provided that the-poor alms receive or
captivi redimantur. Hoc est enim magnum thesaurum, dicente
captives be-ransomed this is for a-great treasure saying
Domino: "Thesaurizate vobis thesauros in caelo, ubi neque
the-Lord treasure-up for-yourselves treasures in heaven where neither
aerugo neque tinea corrumpit, et ubi fures non effodiunt nec
rust nor moth corrupts and where thieves not dig-through nor
furantur". Ergo de his quae Dominus tribuit congregemus
steal therefore from these which the-Lord has-granted let-us-gather
thesauros in caelo, et Dominus nobis augere dignabitur
treasures in heaven and the-Lord to-us to-increase shall-deign

in seculo'. Igitur Iustinus cum undecim annis regnasset,
in the-world therefore Justin when eleven years he-had-reigned
amentiam, quam incurrerat, tandem cum vita finivit. Bella
the-madness which he-had-incurred at-last with life ended the-wars
sane, quae per Narsetem patricium Gothis vel Francis
indeed which through Narses the-patrician on-the-Goths or Franks
inlata superius per anticipationem diximus, huius temporibus
brought above by anticipation we-have-told in-his times
gesta sunt. Denique et cum Roma temporibus Benedicti
waged were finally also when Rome in-the-times of-Benedict
papae, vastantibus omnia per circuitum Langobardis, famis
the-pope laying-waste all-things through the-circuit the-Lombards of-famine
penuria laboraret, multa milia frumenti navibus ab
with-the-want labored many thousands of-grain by-ships from
Aegypto dirigens, eam suae studio misericordiae relevavit.
Egypt directing it of-his by-the-zeal mercy he-relieved

De principatu Tiberii Constantini, et de bonis actibus eius (;) sive diviciis quae ei a Deo concessae sunt

XII · THE TREASURES OF TIBERIUS CONSTANTINE

Tiberius Constantine has a marble slab carved with the cross lifted from a floor so as not to tread on it, and under it and two more slabs finds a great treasure of gold, and an old man shows him the cistern where Narses hid his riches. He gives most of it to the poor. A plot to raise Justin's nephew Justinian fails when Tiberius is crowned, and he forgives Justinian. When Sophia plots to raise Justinian while Tiberius is at the vintage, he hurries back and strips her of her treasure, and his army defeats the Persians.

Mortuo igitur Iustino, Tiberius Constantinus, Romanorum
dead therefore Justin Tiberius Constantine of-the-Romans
regum quinquagesimus, sumpsit imperium. Hic cum, ut
of-the-kings fiftieth took the-empire he when as
superius diximus, sub Iustino adhuc caesar palatium regeret
above we-have-said under Justin still caesar the-palace ruled
et multas cottidie elimosinas faceret, magnam ei Dominus
and many daily alms made great to-him the-Lord
auri copiam subministravit. Nam deambulans per palatium
of-gold abundance supplied for walking through the-palace
vidit in pavimento domus tabulam marmoream, in qua erat
he-saw in the-pavement of-the-house a-slab marble on which was
crux dominica sculpta, et ait: 'Crucem Domini frontem
the-cross of-the-Lord carved and he-said the-cross of-the-Lord brow
nostram et pectora munire debemus, et ecce eam sub pedibus
our and breasts to-fortify we-ought and behold it under feet
conculcamus'. Et dicto citius iussit eandem tabulam
we-trample and than-the-saying quicker he-ordered the-same slab
auferri. Defossamque tabulam atque erectam, inveniunt
to-be-removed and-dug-up the-slab and raised they-find

subter et aliam hoc signum habentem. Qui et ipsam iussit
underneath also another this sign having who also it he-ordered
auferri. Qua amota, repperiunt et tertiam. Iussumque eius
to-be-removed which removed they-find also a-third and-by-the-order his
cum et haec fuisset ablata, inveniunt magnum thesaurum
when also this had-been taken-away they-find a-great treasure
habentem supra mille auri centenaria. Sublatumque aurum,
having above a-thousand of-gold hundredweights and-raised the-gold
pauperibus adhuc habundantius quam consueverat largitur.
to-the-poor still more-abundantly than he-had-been-accustomed he-bestows
Narsis quoque patricius Italiae cum in quadam civitate intra
Narses also the-patrician of-Italy since in a-certain city within
Italiam domum magnam haberet, cum multis thesauris ad
Italy a-house great he-had with many treasures to
supra memoratam urbem advenit; ibique in domo sua occulte
the-above mentioned city came and-there in house his secretly
cisternam magnam fodit, in qua multa milia centenariorum
a-cistern great dug in which many thousands of-hundredweights
auri argentique reposuit. Interfectisque omnibus consciis,
of-gold and-silver he-laid-up and-killed all the-accomplices
uni tantummodo seni haec per iuramentum ab eo
to-one only old-man these-things through an-oath from him
exigens commendavit. Defuncto vero Narsete, supradictus
demanding he-entrusted having-died but Narses the-aforesaid
senex ad caesarem Tiberium veniens, dixit: 'Si', inquid, 'mihi
old-man to caesar Tiberius coming said if he-says to-me
aliquid prodest, magnam rem tibi, caesarem, dicam'. Cui
anything it-profits a-great thing to-you O-caesar I-shall-tell to-whom
ille: 'Dic', ait, 'quod vis; proderit enim tibi, si quid
he tell says what you-wish it-shall-profit for to-you if anything
nobis profuturum esse narraveris'. 'Thesaurum', inquid,
to-us about-to-profit to-be you-shall-have-told a-treasure he-says

‘Narsis reconditum habeo, quod in extremo vitae positus
of-Narses hidden I-have which in the-end of-life placed
celare non possum’. Tunc caesar Tiberius gavisus mittit
to-conceal not I-can then caesar Tiberius having-rejoiced sends
usque ad locum pueros suos. Recedente vero sene, hi
all-the-way to the-place servants his withdrawing indeed the-old-man these
secuntur attoniti; pervenientesque ad cisternam, deopertamque
follow astonished and-arriving at the-cistern and-uncovered
ingrediuntur. In qua tantum auri vel argenti repertum
they-enter in which so-much of-gold and of-silver found
est, ut per multos dies vix a deportantibus potuisset
was that through many days scarcely by those-carrying-off it-could
evacuari. Quae ille pene omnia secundum suum morem
to-be-emptied which he almost all according-to his custom
erogatione largiflua dispensavit egenis. Hic cum augustalem
with-an-outlay bounteous dispensed to-the-needy he when the-augustal
coronam accepturus esset, eumque iuxta consuetudinem
crown about-to-receive he-was and-him according-to custom
ad spectaculum circi populus expectaret, insidias ei
at the-spectacle of-the-circus the-people awaited plots for-him
praeparans, ut Iustinianum, Iustini nepotem, ad dignitatem
preparing that Justinian of-Justin the-nephew to the-dignity
imperatoriam sublimaret: ille per loca sancta prius
imperial they-might-raise he through the-places holy first
procedens, dehinc vocatum ad se pontificem urbis, cum
proceeding thereafter called to himself the-pontiff of-the-city with
consulibus ac praefectis palatium ingressus, indutus purpura,
the-consuls and prefects the-palace having-entered clothed with-purple
diademate coronatus, throno imperiali inpositus, cum
with-the-diadem crowned on-the-throne imperial set with
inmensis laudibus in regni est gloria confirmatus. Quod
immense praises in of-the-kingdom was the-glory confirmed which

eius adversarii audientes nihilque ei, qui in Deo spem
his adversaries hearing and-nothing to-him who in God hope
suam posuerat, officere valentes, magno sunt confusionis
his had-placed to-harm being-able with-great were of-confusion
pudore cooperti. Transactis autem paucis diebus adveniens
shame covered passed moreover a-few days coming
Iustinianus, pedibus se proiecit imperatoris, ob meritum
Justinian at-the-feet himself threw of-the-emperor for the-merit
gratiae quindecim ei auri centenaria deferens. Quem ille
of-favor fifteen to-him of-gold hundredweights bringing whom he
secundum patientiae suae ritum colligens, sibi in palatio
according-to of-patience his the-rite gathering to-himself in the-palace
assistere iussit. Sophia vero augusta, inmemor promissionis
to-attend ordered Sophia but the-augusta unmindful of-the-promise
quam condam in Tiberium habuerat, insidias ei temptavit
which once toward Tiberius she-had plots on-him tried
ingerere. Procedente autem eo ad villam, ut iuxta ritum
to-bring proceeding moreover him to an-estate that according-to the-rite
imperiale triginta diebus ad vindemiam iocundaretur, vocato
imperial for-thirty days at the-vintage he-might-make-merry called
clam Iustiniano, voluit eum sublimare in regno. Quo
secretly Justinian she-wished him to-raise in the-kingdom which
comperto, Tiberius cursu veloci Constantinopolim regreditur
learned Tiberius with-course swift to-Constantinople returns
adprehensamque augustam omnibus thesauris spoliavit, solum
and-seized the-augusta of-all treasures despoiled only
ei victus cottidiani alimentum relinquens. Segregatisque
to-her of-food daily the-sustenance leaving and-separated
pueris eius ab ea, alios de fidelibus suis posuit, qui
the-servants hers from her others from faithful his he-placed who
ei parerent, mandans prorsus, ut nullus de anterioribus ad
her should-obey commanding utterly that no-one of the-former to

eam haberet accessum. Iustinianum vero verbis solummodo
her should-have access Justinian but with-words only
obiurgatum tanto in posterum amore dilexit, ut filio
rebuked with-such in the-future love he-loved that to-the-son
eius filiam suam promitteret rursumque filio suo filiam
his daughter his he-promised and-again for-the-son his daughter
eius expeteret. Sed haec res, quam ob causam nescio, ad
his he-sought but this thing what for cause I-know-not to
effectum minime pervenit. Huius exercitus ab eo directus
effect by-no-means came of-this-man the-army by him directed
Persas potentissime debellavit; victorque regrediens, tantam
the-Persians most-powerfully subdued and-victor returning such
molem praedae cum viginti pariter elefantis detulit, ut
a-mass of-booty with twenty together elephants brought that
humanae crederetur posse sufficere cupiditati.
human it-was-believed to-be-able to-suffice greed

De aureis quos Hilperico imperator direxit, et de beato Gregorio (;) et de vastatione Classis

XIII · THE GOLD SENT TO CHILPERIC, GREGORY, AND CLASSE

Chilperic, king of the Franks, receives from Tiberius pound-weight gold pieces stamped with the emperor's image and the words Glory of the Romans. Gregory, then a deacon and envoy at Constantinople, writes his Moralia and refutes the bishop Eutychius on the resurrection. Faroald, first duke of Spoleto, sacks the rich city of Classe and leaves it bare.

Ad hunc Hilpericus Francorum rex suos legatos dirigens, multa
to this-man Chilperic of-the-Franks king his envoys directing many
ab eo ornamenta, aureos etiam singularum librarum suscepit,
from him ornaments gold-coins also of-single pounds received

habentes ab una parte effigiem imperatoris et scriptum in
having on one side the-likeness of-the-emperor and written in
circulo: TIBERII. CONSTANTINI. PERPETUI. AUGUSTI,
a-circle OF-TIBERIUS CONSTANTINE PERPETUAL AUGUSTUS
ab alia vero parte habentes quadrigam et ascensorem
on the-other indeed side having a-four-horse-chariot and a-rider
continentesque scriptum: GLORIA. ROMANORUM. Huius
and-containing written GLORY OF-THE-ROMANS of-this-man
in diebus beatus Gregorius diaconus, qui post papa extitit,
in the-days blessed Gregory the-deacon who afterward pope became
cum esset apocrisarius, aput eandem regiam urbem Morales
when he-was apocrisiarius at the-same royal city the-Moral
libros conposuit Euthiciumque eiusdem urbis episcopum de
books composed and-Eutychius of-the-same city the-bishop about
resurrectione errantem in conspectu eiusdem augusti superavit.
the-resurrection erring in the-sight of-the-same augustus overcame
Hac etiam tempestate Faroald, primus Spolitanorum dux,
at-this also time Faroald first of-the-Spoletans duke
cum Langobardorum exercitu Classem invadens, opulentam
with of-the-Lombards the-army Classe invading the-opulent
urbem spoliatam cunctis divitiis nudam reliquid.
city despoiled of-all riches naked left

De morte Probini patriarchae (;) et de Helia eius successore

XIV · PATRIARCH PROBINUS DIES; ELIAS SUCCEEDS

At Aquileia the patriarch Probinus dies after ruling the church for one year, and the priest Elias is set over it.

Mortuo vero aput Aquileiam patriarcha Probino, qui ecclesiam
dead indeed at Aquileia the-patriarch Probinus who the-church
unum rexerat anno, eidem ecclesiae sacerdos Helias
one had-ruled year over-the-same church the-priest Elias
praeficitur.
is-set

De morte Tiberii Constantini augusti et imperio Mauricii

XV · TIBERIUS DIES; MAURICE EMPEROR

Feeling his death near after seven years, Tiberius chooses Maurice, a Cappadocian of vigor, gives him his daughter, and bids him rule with justice. He dies mourned by all, a man of the greatest goodness who loved all and was loved by all. Maurice is crowned and becomes the first emperor of Greek birth.

Tiberius igitur Constantinus postquam imperium septem
Tiberius therefore Constantine after the-empire seven
rexerat annis, sentiens sibi diem mortis imminere,
he-had-ruled years feeling for-himself the-day of-death to-impend
una cum consilio Sophiae augustae Mauricium, genere
together with the-counsel of-Sophia augusta Maurice by-race
Cappadocem, virum strenuum, ad imperium elegit, ornatamque
a-Cappadocian a-man vigorous for the-empire chose and-adorned
suam filiam regalibus ornamentis, ei eam tradidit, dicens:
his daughter with-royal ornaments to-him her handed-over saying

‘Sit tibi imperium meum cum hac puella concessum. Utere
let-be to-you empire my with this girl granted use
eo felix, memor semper, ut aequitate et iustitia delecteris’.
it happy mindful always that in-equity and justice you-delight
Haec postquam dixit, de hac luce ad aeternam patriam
these-things after he-said from this light to the-eternal fatherland
migravit, magnum luctum populis de sua morte relinquens.
he-passed great mourning to-the-peoples from his death leaving
Fuit enim summae bonitatis, in elimosinis promptus, in
he-was for of-the-highest goodness in alms ready in
iudiciis iustus, in iudicando cautissimus, nullum despiciens,
judgments just in judging most-cautious no-one despising
sed omnes in bona voluntate conplectens; omnes diligens,
but all in good will embracing all loving
ipse quoque est dilectus a cunctis. Quo defuncto, Mauricius
he also was loved by all who having-died Maurice
indutus purpura, redimitus diademate, ad circum processit,
clothed with-purple crowned with-the-diadem to the-circus proceeded
adclamatisque sibi laudibus, largita populo munera, primus
and-acclaimed to-him praises bestowed on-the-people gifts first
ex Grecorum genere in imperio confirmatus est.
from of-the-Greeks the-race in the-empire confirmed was

De regno Authari, et quanta securitas eius tempore fuit

XVI · KING AUTHARI, AND THE PEACE OF HIS REIGN

After ten years under the dukes, the Lombards make Cleph's son Authari king and call him Flavius, a title all later kings use. The dukes give half their wealth for the king's household, and the burdened Roman people are shared out among their Lombard guests. There is a wonder in the kingdom: no violence, no theft or robbery, and everyone goes where he pleases without fear.

At vero Langobardi cum per annos decem sub potestate
but indeed the-Lombards when for years ten under the-power
ducum fuissent, tandem communi consilio Authari, Clephonis
of-dukes they-had-been at-last by-common counsel Authari of-Cleph
filium supra memorati principis, regem sibi statuerunt.
the-son of-the-above mentioned prince king for-themselves established
Quem etiam ob dignitatem Flavium appellarunt. Quo
whom also for dignity Flavius they-called which
praenomine omnes qui postea fuerunt Langobardorum reges
forename all who afterward were of-the-Lombards kings
feliciter usi sunt. Huius in diebus ob restaurationem
happily used have of-this-man in the-days for the-restoration
regni duces qui tunc erant omnem substantiarum
of-the-kingdom the-dukes who then were all of-possessions
suarum medietatem regalibus usibus tribuunt, ut esse possit,
their the-half for-royal uses grant that to-be it-could
unde rex ipse sive qui ei adhaererent eiusque
whence the-king himself or those-who to-him clung and-to-his
obsequiis per diversa officia dediti alerentur. Populi tamen
services through various offices given might-be-fed the-peoples yet
adgravati per Langobardos hospites partiuntur. Erat sane
burdened among the-Lombard guests are-divided there-was indeed

hoc mirabile in regno Langobardorum: nulla erat
this wonderful in the-kingdom of-the-Lombards no there-was
violentia, nullae struebantur insidiae; nemo aliquem iniuste
violence no were-laid ambushes no-one anyone unjustly
angariabat, nemo spoliabat; non erant furta, non latrocinia;
pressed no-one despoiled not there-were thefts not robberies
unusquisque quo libebat securus sine timore pergebat.
each where he-pleased secure without fear went

Quomodo Childepertus Italiam introivit, sed facta pace discessit

XVII · CHILDEBERT INVADES AND MAKES PEACE

Maurice sends Childebert fifty thousand solidi to drive the Lombards out of Italy, and Childebert enters Italy with a vast army. The Lombards shut themselves in their cities and buy peace with gifts. When Maurice demands his money back, Childebert, trusting in his strength, will not even answer.

Hoc tempore Mauricius imperator Childeperto regi Francorum
at-this time Maurice the-emperor to-Childebert king of-the-Franks
quinquaginta milia solidos per legatos suos direxit, ut
fifty thousand solidi through envoys his directed that
cum exercitu super Langobardos inrueret eosque de Italia
with an-army upon the-Lombards he-should-rush and-them from Italy
exterminaret. Qui cum innumera Francorum multitudine in
should-exterminate who with a-countless of-Franks multitude into
Italiam subito introivit. Langobardi vero in civitatibus se
Italy suddenly entered the-Lombards but in the-cities themselves
communientes, intercurrentibus legatis oblatisque muneribus,
fortifying going-between envoys and-offered gifts
pacem cum Childeperto fecerunt. Qui cum ad Gallias
peace with Childebert made who when to the-Gauls

remeasset, cognito imperator Mauricius, quia cum Langobardis
he-had-returned learned the-emperor Maurice that with the-Lombards
foedus inierit, solidos, quos ei ob Langobardorum
a-treaty he-had-entered the-solidi which to-him for of-the-Lombards
detrimento dederat, repetere coepit. Sed ille suarum virium
the-harm he-had-given to-seek-back began but he of-his strength
potentia fretus, pro hac re nec responsum reddere voluit.
in-the-power trusting for this thing not-even an-answer to-give wished

De expugnatione Brexilli, et de fuga Doctrulfi ducis

XVIII · BRESCELLO TAKEN, AND DROCTULFT FLEES

Authari besieges Brescello on the Po, held for the emperor by Duke Droctulft, a Suevian raised among the Lombards who has turned against them to avenge his captivity. The Lombards defeat him, drive him to Ravenna, take Brescello, and raze its walls. Authari then makes peace with the patrician Smaragdus for three years.

His ita gestis, Authari rex Brexillum civitatem super
these-things thus done Authari the-king Brescello the-city on
Padi marginem positam expugnare adgressus est. In qua
of-the-Po the-bank placed to-storm undertaken has in which
Droctulft dux a Langobardis confugerat, seque partibus
Droctulft the-duke from the-Lombards had-fled and-himself to-the-party
imperatoris tradens, sociatus militibus, Langobardorum exercitui
of-the-emperor handing-over joined to-the-soldiers of-the-Lombards to-the-army
fortiter resistebat. Iste ex Suavorum, hoc est Alamannorum,
bravely resisted he from of-the-Suevi that is of-the-Alamanni
gente oriundus, inter Langobardos creverat, et quia erat
the-people sprung among the-Lombards had-grown-up and because he-was
forma idoneus, ducatus honorem meruerat; sed cum occasione
in-form suitable of-the-dukedom the-honor had-earned but when an-occasion

ulciscendae suae captivitatis repperit, contra Langobardorum
of-avenging his captivity he-found against of-the-Lombards
ilico arma surrexit. Adversus quem Langobardi gravia bella
at-once the-arms he-rose against whom the-Lombards heavy wars
gesserunt, tandemque eum cum militibus quos iuvabat
waged and-at-length him with the-soldiers whom he-was-helping
exuperantes, Ravennam cedere conpulerunt. Brexillus capta
overcoming to-Ravenna to-withdraw compelled Brescello taken
est, muri quoque eius solum ad usque destructi sunt. Post
was the-walls also its the-ground to up-to destroyed were after
haec Authari rex cum Smaracdo patricio, qui tunc
these-things Authari the-king with Smaragdus the-patrician who then
Ravennae praeerat, usque in annum tertium pacem fecit.
over-Ravenna presided all-the-way into the-year third peace made

De morte Doctrulfi, et quali epitaphio honoratus est

XIX · DROCTULFT'S DEATH AND EPITAPH

With Droctulft's help the soldiers of Ravenna often fight the Lombards and drive them out of Classe with a fleet. When he dies they bury him before the church of Saint Vitalis with an epitaph praising him: a Suevian, terrible to look at but kind of heart, who loved the Roman standards, took Brescello, won back Classe, and beat the Avars.

Huius sane Droctulft, de quo praemisimus, amminiculo
of-this indeed Droctulft of whom we-have-spoken-before by-the-help
saepe Ravennatium milites adversum Langobardos dimicarunt,
often of-the-Ravennese the-soldiers against the-Lombards fought
extructaque classe, Langobardos, qui Classe urbem tenebant,
and-built a-fleet the-Lombards who Classe the-city held
hoc adiuvante pepulerunt. Cui, cum vitae explesset
this-man helping drove-out to-whom when of-life he-had-fulfilled

terminum, honorabile sepulchrum ante limina beati Vitalis
the-term an-honorable tomb before the-thresholds of-blessed Vitalis
martyris tribuentes, tali eius laudes epitaphio extullerunt:
the-martyr granting with-such his praises an-epitaph they-raised

'Clauditur hoc tumulo, tantum sed corpore, Drocton;
is-enclosed in-this tomb only but in-body Drocton
nam meritis toto vivit in orbe suis.
for by-merits the-whole lives in world his
Cum Bardis fuit ipse quidem, nam gente Suavus;
with the-Bards was he indeed for by-race a-Suevian
omnibus et populis inde suavis erat.
to-all and peoples thence sweet he-was
Terribilis visu facies, sed mente benignus,
terrible in-look the-face but in-mind kindly
longaque robusto pectore barba fuit.
and-long on-his-sturdy breast the-beard was
Hic et amans semper Romana ac publica signa,
he also loving always Roman and public standards
vastator genti adfuit ipse suae.
a-ravager to-the-people was-present he his
Contempsit caros, dum nos amat ille, parentes,
he-despised dear while us loves he his-kin
hanc patriam reputans esse Ravenna suam.
this fatherland reckoning to-be Ravenna his
Huius prima fuit Brexilli gloria capti;
his the-first was of-Brescello the-glory taken
quo residens cunctis hostibus horror erat.
where residing to-all enemies a-horror he-was

Quo Romana potens valuit post signa iubare,
where Roman powerful he-availed afterward the-standards to-help
vexillum primum Christus habere dedit.
the-banner first Christ to-have gave
Inde etiam, retinet dum Classem fraude Faroaldus,
thence also holds while Classe by-fraud Faroald
vindicet ut Classem, classibus arma parat.
may-reclaim that Classe with-fleets arms he-prepares
Puppibus exiguis decertans amne Badrino,
with-ships small contending on-the-river Badrinus
Bardorum innumeras vicit et ipse manus.
of-the-Bards countless he-conquered also himself bands
Rursus et in terris Avarem superavit eois,
again also in the-lands the-Avar he-overcame eastern
conquirens dominis maxima palma suis.
winning for-lords the-greatest palm his
Martyris auxilio Vitalis fultus, ad istos
of-the-martyr by-the-help Vitalis supported to these
pervenit victor saepe triumphos ovans;
came the-victor often triumphs exulting
cuius et in templis petiit sua membra iacere,
whose also in temples he-asked his limbs to-lie
haec loca post mortem bustis habere iubat.
these places after death for-the-tomb to-have it-pleases
Ipse sacerdotem moriens petit ista Iohannem,
he-himself the-priest dying asks these-things John
his rediit terris cuius amore pio'.
to-these he-returned lands by-whose love pious

De sacerdotio Pelagii papae et errore Heliae patriarchae

XX · POPE PELAGIUS AND THE ERROR OF ELIAS

After Pope Benedict, Pelagius is ordained without the emperor's order, since the Lombards are besieging Rome. He sends a useful letter, written by Gregory while still a deacon, to Elias of Aquileia, who will not accept the Three Chapters of the synod of Chalcedon.

Denique post Benedictum papam Pelagius Romanae ecclesiae
finally after Benedict the-pope Pelagius of-the-Roman church
pontifex absque iussione principis ordinatus est, eo
pontiff without the-order of-the-prince ordained was for-this
quod Langobardi Romam per circuitum obsiderent, nec
that the-Lombards Rome through circuit were-besieging nor
posset quisquam a Roma progredi. Hic Pelagius Heliae
could anyone from Rome go-forth this Pelagius to-Elias
Aquileiensi episcopo, nolenti tria capitula Calchidonensis
of-Aquileia the-bishop being-unwilling the-three chapters of-the-Chalcedonian
synodi suspicere, epistulam satis utilem misit. Quam beatus
synod to-accept a-letter quite useful sent which blessed
Gregorius, cum esset adhuc diaconus, conscripsit.
Gregory when he-was still deacon wrote

De bello Childeperti contra Hispanos (;) et morte Ingundis

XXI · CHILDEBERT'S WAR WITH SPAIN, AND INGUND

Childebert makes war on the Spaniards and defeats them. His sister Ingund had married Hermenegild, son of the Arian king Leovigild, and Hermenegild turned catholic and was killed by his father on Easter Day. Fleeing Spain, Ingund is captured by soldiers on the frontier and dies in Sicily, and her son is sent to Maurice.

Interea Childepertus rex Francorum bellum adversum Hispanos
meanwhile Childebert king of-the-Franks war against the-Spaniards
gerens, eosdem acie superavit. Causa autem huius certaminis
waging them in-battle overcame the-cause moreover of-this contest
ista fuit. Childepertus rex Ingundem sororem suam
this was Childebert the-king Ingund sister his
Herminigildo, Levigildi Hispanorum regis filio, in coniugium
to-Hermenegild of-Leovigild of-the-Spaniards the-king the-son in marriage
tradiderat. Qui Herminigildus praedicatione Leandri episcopi
had-given who Hermenegild by-the-preaching of-Leander the-bishop
Hispalensis atque adhortatione suae coniugis ab Arriana heresi,
of-Seville and by-the-exhortation of-his wife from the-Arian heresy
qua pater suus languebat, ad catholicam fidem conversus
with-which father his was-sick to the-catholic faith converted
fuerat. Quem pater inpius in ipso sacrato paschali die
had-been whom the-father impious on the-very consecrated paschal day
securi percussum interemerat. Ingundis vero post mariti
with-an-axe struck had-slain Ingund but after of-the-husband
et martyris funus de Hispanis fugiens, dum Gallias repedare
and martyr the-death from the-Spaniards fleeing while to-the-Gauls to-return
vellet, in manus militum incidens, qui in limite adversum
she-wished into the-hands of-the-soldiers falling who on the-border against
Hispanos Gotthos residebant, cum parvo filio capta atque in
the-Spanish Goths were-stationed with her-little son captured and into

Siciliam ducta est ibique diem clausit extremum. Filius vero
Sicily led was and-there the-day closed last the-son but
eius imperatori Mauricio Constantinopolim est transmissus.
her to-the-emperor Maurice to-Constantinople was sent

De Francorum exercitu qui in Italiam venit (;) et sine effectu regressus est

XXII · A FRANKISH ARMY RETURNS WITHOUT GAIN

Maurice again persuades Childebert to send an army against the Lombards, and Childebert, thinking his sister alive at Constantinople, agrees in order to recover her. The Franks and Alamanni quarrel among themselves and go home without gaining anything.

Rursum Mauricius augustus legatos ad Childepertum mittens,
again Maurice augustus envoys to Childebert sending
eum, ut contra Langobardos in Italiam exercitum dirigeret,
him that against the-Lombards into Italy an-army he-should-direct
persuasit. Childepertus existimans suam adhuc germanam
persuaded Childebert thinking his still sister
aput Constantinopolim vivere, legatis Mauricii adquiescens,
at Constantinople to-live to-the-envoys of-Maurice acquiescing
ut suam possit sororem recipere, iterum adversum
that his he-might-be-able sister to-recover again against
Langobardos Francorum exercitum ad Italiam direxit. Contra
the-Lombards of-the-Franks an-army to Italy directed against
quos dum Langobardorum acies properarent, Franci et
whom while of-the-Lombards the-lines hastened the-Franks and
Alamanni dissensionem inter se habentes, sine ullius
Alamanni dissension among themselves having without of-any
lucri conquesitione ad patriam sunt reversi.
gain acquisition to the-fatherland have returned

De aquae diluvio et miraculo quod factum est in basilica sancti Zenonis

XXIII · THE FLOOD, AND THE WONDER AT SAINT ZENO'S

A flood in Venetia, Liguria, and other parts of Italy, the worst since Noah, sweeps away villages and drowns people and animals. The Adige rises to the upper windows of Saint Zeno's church at Verona, yet, as Gregory writes, the water does not come in. Part of Verona's walls falls, and two months later much of the city burns.

Eo tempore fuit aquae diluvium in finibus Veneciarum et
at-that time there-was of-water a-flood in the-bounds of-the-Venetias and
Liguriae seu ceteris regionibus Italiae, quale post Noe tempore
of-Liguria or other regions of-Italy such-as after of-Noah the-time
creditur non fuisse. Factae sunt lavinae possessionum seu
is-believed not to-have-been made were landslides of-possessions or
villarum hominumque pariter et animantium magnus interitus.
of-estates and-of-men equally and of-animals a-great destruction
Destructa sunt itinera, dissipatae viae, tantum tuncque Atesis
destroyed were the-paths scattered the-roads so-much and-then the-Adige
fluvius excrevit, ut circa basilicam beati Zenonis martyris,
river grew that around the-basilica of-blessed Zeno the-martyr
quae extra Veronensis urbis muros sita est, usque ad
which outside of-the-Veronese city the-walls situated is all-the-way to
superiores fenestras aqua pertingeret, licet, sicut et beatus
the-upper windows the-water reached although as also blessed
Gregorius post papa scripsit, in eadem basilicam aqua
Gregory afterward pope wrote into the-same basilica the-water
minime introierit. Urbis quoque eiusdem Veronensis muri
by-no-means entered of-the-city also of-the-same Verona the-walls
ex parte aliqua eadem sunt inundatione subruti. Facta est
in part some by-the-same were inundation undermined made was

autem haec inundatio sexto decimo Kalendas Novembris.
moreover this inundation on-the-sixth tenth before-the-Kalends of-November
Sed tantae coruscationes et tonitrua fuerunt, quantae fieri
but such lightnings and thunders were as-great-as to-happen
vix aestivo tempore solent. Post duos quoque menses eadem
scarcely in-summer time are-wont after two also months the-same
urbs Veronensium magna ex parte incendio concremata est.
city of-the-Veronese great from part by-fire burned-up was

De pontificatu beati Gregorii, et de clade quae tunc Romae facta est

XXIV · GREGORY MADE POPE, AND THE PLAGUE AT ROME

The Tiber rises over Rome's walls, and a dragon with many serpents passes down it to the sea. A plague of the groin follows and kills Pope Pelagius first. Gregory, then a deacon, is chosen pope and orders a sevenfold litany, the people in seven choirs, and within an hour eighty of them fall dead as they pray.

In hac diluvii effusione in tantum apud urbem Romam
in this of-the-flood outpouring in so-much at the-city Rome
fluvius Tiberis excrevit, ut aquae eius super muros urbis
the-river Tiber grew that the-waters its over the-walls of-the-city
influerent et maximas in ea regiones occuparent. Tunc
flowed and the-greatest in it regions occupied then
per alveum eiusdem fluminis cum multa serpentium
through the-bed of-the-same river with a-great of-serpents
multitudine draco etiam mirae magnitudinis per urbem
multitude a-dragon also of-wondrous size through the-city
transiens usque ad mare discendit. Subsecuta statim est
passing all-the-way to the-sea descended followed at-once has
hanc inundationem gravissima pestilentia, quam inguinariam
this inundation a-most-heavy pestilence which inguinal

appellant. Quae tanta strage populum devastavit, ut de
they-call which with-such slaughter the-people laid-waste that of
inaestimabili multitudine vix pauci remanerent. Primumque
the-inestimable multitude scarcely a-few remained and-first
Pelagium papam, virum venerabilem, perculit et sine mora
Pelagius the-pope a-man venerable it-struck and without delay
extinxit. Deinde pastore interempto, sese per populos
killed then the-shepherd slain itself among the-peoples
extendit. In hac tanta tribulatione beatissimus Gregorius, qui
it-extended in this so-great tribulation the-most-blessed Gregory who
tunc levita erat, a cunctis generaliter papa electus est. Qui
then a-levite was by all generally pope chosen was who
dum septiformem laetaniam fieri ordinasset, intra unius
when a-sevenfold litany to-be-made he-had-ordered within of-one
horae spatium, dum hi Deum deprecarentur, octuaginta ex
hour the-space while they God were-entreating eighty of
eis subito ad terra corruentes, spiritum exalarunt. Septiformis
them suddenly to the-earth falling the-spirit breathed-out the-sevenfold
autem laetania ideo dicta est, quia omnis urbis populus a
moreover litany therefore called is because all of-the-city the-people by
beato Gregorio in septem partibus deprecaturus Dominum est
blessed Gregory into seven parts about-to-entreat the-Lord was
divisus. In primo namque choro fuit omnis clerus, in secundo
divided in the-first for choir was all the-clergy in the-second
omnes abbates cum monachis suis, in tertio omnes abbatissae
all the-abbots with monks their in the-third all the-abbesses
cum congregationibus suis, in quarto omnes infantes, in quinto
with congregations their in the-fourth all the-children in the-fifth
omnes laici, in sexto universae viduae, in septimo omnes
all the-laymen in the-sixth all the-widows in the-seventh all
mulieres coniugatae. Ideo autem de beato Gregorio plura
the-women married therefore moreover about blessed Gregory more

dicere obmittimus, quia iam ante aliquod annos eius vitam
to-say we-omit because already before some years his life
Deo auxiliante texuimus. In qua quae dicenda fuerant
God helping we-have-woven in which what-things to-be-said were
iuxta tenuitatis nostrae vires universa discripsimus.
according-to of-slenderness our the-powers all we-have-described

Quomodo beatus Gregorius Anglos convertit

XXV · GREGORY CONVERTS THE ENGLISH

At this time Gregory sends Augustine, Mellitus, and John with many other God-fearing monks to Britain, and through their preaching converts the English to Christ.

Hoc tempore isdem beatus Gregorius Augustinum et
at-this time the-same blessed Gregory Augustine and
Mellitum et Iohannem cum aliis pluribus monachis
Mellitus and John with other very-many monks
timentibus Deum in Brittaniam misit eorumque praedicatione
fearing God into Britain sent and-by-their preaching
ad Christum Anglos convertit.
to Christ the-English converted

De morte Heliae patriarchae et sacerdotio Severi et eius errore

XXVI · PATRIARCH SEVERUS AND HIS ERROR

Severus succeeds Elias at Aquileia. The patrician Smaragdus drags him from the church at Grado and takes him to Ravenna with three Istrian bishops, where by threats he makes them communicate with John of Ravenna, who condemns the Three Chapters. Back at Grado, no one will receive them; Smaragdus, seized by a demon, is replaced, and a synod at Marano receives Severus on his recantation.

His diebus defuncto Helia Aquilegensi patriarcha, postquam
in-these days having-died Elias of-Aquileia the-patriarch after
quindecim annos sacerdotium gesserat, Severus huic succedens
fifteen years the-priesthood he-had-held Severus to-him succeeding
regendam suscepit ecclesiam. Quem Smaracdus patricius
to-be-ruled took-up the-church whom Smaragdus the-patrician
veniens de Ravenna in Gradus, per semet ipsum e basilica
coming from Ravenna into Grado by himself very from the-basilica
extrahens, Ravennam cum iniuria duxit cum aliis tribus
dragging to-Ravenna with injury led with other three
ex Histria episcopis, id est Iohanne Parentino et Severo
from Istria bishops that is John of-Parenzo and Severus
atque Vindemio, necnon etiam Antonio iam sene ecclesiae
and Vindemius and-also even Antony now old of-the-church
defensore. Quibus comminans exilia atque violentiam inferens,
the-defender to-whom threatening exiles and violence bringing-on
communicare conpulit Iohanni Ravennati episcopo, trium
to-communicate he-compelled with-John of-Ravenna the-bishop of-the-three
capitulorum damnatori, qui a tempore papae Vigilii vel Pelagii
chapters a-condemner who from the-time of-pope Vigilius or Pelagius
a Romanae ecclesiae desciverat societate. Exempto vero anno,
from of-the-Roman church had-withdrawn the-fellowship passed indeed a-year

e Ravenna ad Grados reversi sunt. Quibus nec plebs
from Ravenna to Grado returned they-have with-whom neither the-common-people
communicare voluit, nec ceteri episcopi eos receperunt.
to-communicate wished nor the-other bishops them received
Smaracdus patricius a daemonio non iniuste correptus,
Smaragdus the-patrician by a-demon not unjustly seized
successorem Romanum patricium accipiens, Constantinopolim
as-successor Romanus the-patrician receiving to-Constantinople
remeavit. Post haec facta est sinodus decem episcoporum in
returned after these-things held was a-synod of-ten bishops at
Mariano, ubi receperunt Severum patriarcham Aquilegensem
Marano where they-received Severus the-patriarch of-Aquileia
dantem libellum erroris sui, quia trium capitulorum
giving a-little-book of-error his because of-the-three chapters
damnatoribus communicarat Ravennae. Nomina vero
with-the-condemners he-had-communicated at-Ravenna the-names but
episcoporum qui se ab hoc scismate cohibuerunt haec
of-the-bishops who themselves from this schism kept-apart these
sunt: Petrus de Altino, Clarissimus, Ingenuinus de Sabione,
are Peter of Altino Clarissimus Ingenuinus of Säben
Agnellus Tridentinus, Iunior Veronensis, Horontius Vicentinus,
Agnellus of-Trent Junior of-Verona Horontius of-Vicenza
Rusticus de Tarvisio, Fonteius Feltrinus, Agnellus de Acilo,
Rusticus of Treviso Fonteius of-Feltre Agnellus of Asolo
Laurentius Bellunensis, Maxentius Iuliensis et Adrianus
Laurentius of-Belluno Maxentius of-Iulium and Adrianus
Polensis. Cum patriarcha autem communicaverunt isti episcopi:
of-Pola with the-patriarch moreover communicated these bishops
Severus, Parentinus Iohannes, Patricius, Vindemius et Iohannes.
Severus of-Parenzo John Patricius Vindemius and John

Quod rex Authari exercitum ad Histriam misit, et de Francione

XXVII · EUIN IN ISTRIA, AND FRANCIO AT COMACINA

Authari sends an army under Euin into Istria; after plunder and burning it makes a year's peace and brings the king much money. Other Lombards besiege Francio, Narses' master of soldiers, who has held the island of Comacina for twenty years. After six months he surrenders it and is let go to Ravenna, and many riches left there by the cities are found.

Hac tempestate rex Authari ad Histriam exercitum misit;
at-this time king Authari to Istria an-army sent
cui exercitui Euin dux Tridentinus praefuit. Qui post
to-which army Euin duke of-Trent commanded who after
praedas et incendia, facta pacem in annum unum, magnam
plunder and burnings made peace for year one great
pecuniam regi detulerunt. Alii quoque Langobardi in
money to-the-king brought others also Lombards on
insula Amacina Francionem magistrum militum, qui adhuc
the-island Comacina Francio master of-the-soldiers who still
de Narsetis parte fuerat et iam se per viginti annos
from of-Narses the-side had-been and now himself for twenty years
continuerat, obsidebant. Qui Francio post sex menses obsidionis
had-held-out were-besieging who Francio after six months of-siege
suae Langobardis eandem insulam tradidit, ipse vero, ut
his to-the-Lombards the-same island handed-over he indeed as
obtaverat, dimissus a rege, cum sua uxore et supellectili
he-had-wished dismissed by the-king with his wife and goods
Ravennam properavit. Inventae sunt in eadem insula diviciae
to-Ravenna hastened found were in the-same island riches
multae, quae ibi de singulis fuerant civitatibus commendatae.
many which there from individual had-been cities entrusted

Quomodo rex Authari sororem Childeperti in matrimonium petiit

XXVIII · AUTHARI SEEKS CHILDEBERT'S SISTER

Authari asks Childebert for his sister in marriage. Childebert takes his gifts and promises her, but then promises her to envoys of the Goths from Spain, since their nation has turned to the catholic faith.

At vero Flavius rex Authari legatos ad Childepertum
but indeed Flavius king Authari envoys to Childebert
misit, petens, eius germanam suo matrimonio sociari.
sent seeking his sister to-his marriage to-be-joined
Cumque Childepertus, acceptis muneribus a Langobardorum
and-when Childebert received gifts from of-the-Lombards
legatis, suam germanam eorum regi se daturum
the-envoys his sister of-them to-the-king himself to-be-about-to-give
promisisset, advenientibus tamen Gothorum de Hispania
had-promised arriving yet of-the-Goths from Spain
legatis, eandem suam germanam, eo quod gentem illam ad
envoys the-same his sister for-this that nation that to
fidem catholicam conversam fuisse cognoverat, repromisit.
the-faith catholic converted to-have-been he-had-learned promised-again

Quomodo Franci in Italiam introierunt et [a] Langobardis devicti sunt

XXIX · THE LOMBARDS DESTROY A FRANKISH ARMY

Childebert proposes war on the Lombards to Maurice and sends his own army into Italy. Authari and the Lombards fight boldly for their liberty and win, with a slaughter of the Franks unequaled anywhere. Paul wonders why Secundus, who wrote of the Lombards, passes over so great a victory.

Inter haec legationem ad imperatorem Mauricium direxit,
among these-things an-embassy to the-emperor Maurice he-directed
mandans ei, ut, quod prius non fecerat, nunc contra
bidding him that what before not he-had-done now against
Langobardorum gentem bellum susciperet atque cum eius
of-the-Lombards the-nation war he-should-take-up and with his
consilio eos ab Italia removeret. Qui nihil moratus, exercitum
counsel them from Italy should-remove who nothing having-delayed the-army
suum ad Langobardorum debellationem in Italiam direxit. Cui
his to of-the-Lombards the-subduing into Italy directed whom
Authari rex et Langobardorum acies non segniter obviam
Authari king and of-the-Lombards the-battle-line not sluggishly to-meet
pergunt proque libertatis statu fortiter confligunt. In ea pugna
go and-for of-liberty the-state bravely clash in that battle
Langobardi victoriam capiunt; Franci vehementer caesi, nonnulli
the-Lombards victory take the-Franks violently slain some
capti, plurimi etiam per fugam elapsi vix ad patriam
captured very-many also by flight having-slipped-away scarcely to the-fatherland
revertuntur. Tantaque ibi strages facta est de Francorum
return and-so-great there slaughter made was of of-the-Franks
exercitu, quanta usquam alibi non memoratur. Mirandum
the-army as-great anywhere elsewhere not is-recorded to-be-wondered-at

sane est, cur Secundus, qui aliqua de Langobardorum
truly it-is why Secundus who some-things about of-the-Lombards
gestis scripsit, hanc tantam eorum victoriam praeterierit,
deeds wrote this so-great of-them victory passed-over
cum haec quae praemisimus de Francorum interitum
when these-things which we-have-set-forth about of-the-Franks the-destruction
in eorum historia hisdem ipsis pene verbis exarata legantur.
in of-them history in-the-same very nearly words written are-read

Quomodo rex Authari in Baioariam, ut suam sponsam videret, perrexit (;) et quomodo eam accepit uxorem

XXX · AUTHARI WOOS THEUDELINDA

Authari, promised Theudelinda, goes disguised among his envoys to see her, drinks from her cup, and touches her hand, and her nurse guesses he is the king. Leaving, he drives his axe into a tree, saying such is Authari's blow. Fleeing the Franks, she comes to Italy and marries him near Verona; a soothsayer foretells to Agilulf of Turin that she will be his wife, and Authari's kinsman Ansul is killed at Verona.

Flavius vero rex Authari legatos post haec ad Baioariam
Flavius but king Authari envoys after these-things to Bavaria
misit, qui Garibaldi eorum regis filiam sibi in matrimonium
sent who of-Garibald of-them king daughter for-himself in marriage
peterent. Quos ille benigne suscipiens, Theudelindam suam
should-seek whom he kindly receiving Theudelinda his
filiam Authari se daturum promisit. Qui legati
daughter to-Authari himself to-be-about-to-give promised which envoys
revertentes cum haec Authari nuntiassent, ille per
returning when these-things to-Authari had-announced he by
semet ipsum suam sponsam videre cupiens, paucis secum
himself very his betrothed to-see desiring few with-himself

sed expeditis ex Langobardis adhibitis, unumque sibi
but ready from the-Lombards brought and-one to-himself
fidelissimum et quasi seniorem secum ducens, sine mora
most-faithful and as-if senior with-himself leading without delay
ad Baioariam perrexit. Qui cum in conspectum Garibaldi
to Bavaria went who when into the-sight of-Garibald
regis iuxta morem legatorum introducti essent, et his qui
king according-to the-custom of-envoys brought-in had-been and he who
cum Authari quasi senior venerat post salutationem verba,
with Authari as-if senior had-come after the-greeting words
ut moris est, intulisset: Authari, cum a nullo illius gentis
as of-custom is had-delivered Authari since by no-one of-that nation
cognosceretur, ad regem Garibaldum propinquius accedens ait:
he-was-recognized to the-king Garibald nearer approaching says
'Dominus meus Authari rex me proprie ob hoc direxit, ut
lord my Authari king me specially for this directed that
vestram filiam, ipsius sponsam, quae nostra domina futura
your daughter his-own betrothed who our lady to-be
est, debeam conspicere, ut, qualis eius forma sit, meo
is I-ought to-behold that of-what-sort her beauty may-be to-my
valeam domino certius nuntiare'. Cumque rex haec
I-may-be-able lord more-surely to-announce and-when the-king these-things
audiens filiam venire iussisset, eamque Authari, ut erat
hearing the-daughter to-come had-ordered and-her Authari as she-was
satis eleganti forma, tacito nutu contemplatus esset, eique
of-very elegant beauty with-silent nod contemplated had and-to-him
satis per omnia complacuisset, ait ad regem: 'Quia talem
very in all-things she-had-pleased says to the-king since such
filiae vestrae personam cernimus, ut eam merito nostram
of-daughter your the-person we-see that her deservedly our
reginam fieri optemus, si placet vestrae potestati, de
queen to-become we-wish if it-pleases your power from

eius manu, sicut nobis postea factura est, vini poculum
her hand as to-us afterward about-to-do she-is of-wine a-cup
sumere praeoptamus'. Cumque rex id, ut fieri deberet,
to-take we-prefer and-when the-king it that done it-should-be
annuisset, illa, accepto vini poculo, ei prius qui senior
had-nodded she received of-wine the-cup to-him first who senior
esse videbatur propinavit. Deinde cum Authari, quem suum
to-be seemed drank-a-health then when to-Authari whom her
esse sponsum nesciebat, porrexisset, ille, postquam bibit
to-be betrothed she-did-not-know had-held-out he after he-drank
ac poculum redderet, eius manu, nemine animadvertente,
and the-cup returned her hand with-no-one noticing
digito tetigit dexteramque suam sibi a fronte per
with-a-finger touched and-the-right-hand his to-himself from the-forehead down
nasum ac faciem produxit. Illa hoc suae nutrici rubore
the-nose and face drew she this to-her nurse with-blush
perfusa nuntiavit. Cui nutrix sua ait: 'Iste nisi ipse rex
suffused announced to-whom the-nurse her says this-man unless himself the-king
et sponsus tuus esset, te omnino tangere non auderet. Sed
and betrothed your were you at-all to-touch not would-dare but
interim sileamus, ne hoc patri tuo fiat cognitum. Re
meanwhile let-us-be-silent lest this to-father your become known in-thing
enim vera digna persona est, quae tenere debeat regnum et
for true worthy a-person he-is who to-hold ought the-kingdom and
tuo sociari coniugio'. Erat autem tunc Authari iuvenali
to-your to-be-joined marriage was moreover then Authari in-youthful
aetate floridus, statura decens, candido crine perfusus et
age flourishing in-stature comely with-fair hair suffused and
satis decorus aspectu. Qui mox, a rege comeatu accepto,
very handsome in-aspect who soon from the-king leave received
iter patriam reversuri arripiunt deque Noricorum
the-journey to-the-fatherland about-to-return seize and-from of-the-Norici

finibus festinanter abscedunt. Noricorum siquidem provincia,
the-borders hastily depart of-the-Norici for the-province
quam Baioariorum populus inhabitat, habet ab oriente
which of-the-Bavarians the-people inhabits has on the-east
Pannoniam, ab occidente Suaviam, a meridie Italiam, ab
Pannonia on the-west Swabia on the-south Italy on
aquilonis vero parte Danuvii fluenta. Igitur Authari cum
of-the-north indeed the-side of-the-Danube the-streams therefore Authari when
iam prope Italiae fines venisset secumque adhuc qui eum
now near of-Italy the-borders had-come and-with-himself still who him
deducebant Baioarios haberet, erexit se quantum super
were-escorting the-Bavarians he-had raised himself as-much-as over
equum cui praesidebat potuit et toto adnisu securiculam,
the-horse which he-sat-upon he-could and with-all effort a-little-axe
qua manu gestabat, in arborem quae proximior aderat fixit
which in-hand he-carried into a-tree which nearer stood fixed
eamque fixam reliquit, adiciens haec insuper verbis: 'Talem
and-it fixed left adding these-things moreover in-words such
Authari feritam facere solet'. Cumque haec dixisset,
Authari a-blow to-make is-accustomed and-when these-things he-had-said
tunc intellexerunt Baioarii qui cum eo comitabantur, eum
then understood the-Bavarians who with him were-accompanying him
ipsum regem Authari esse. Denique post aliquod tempus,
himself king Authari to-be finally after some time
cum propter Francorum adventum perturbatio Garibaldo
when on-account-of of-the-Franks the-coming disturbance to-Garibald
regi advenisset, Theudelinda, eius filia, cum suo germano
king had-come Theudelinda his daughter with her brother
nomine Gundoald ad Italiam confugiit seque adventare
by-name Gundoald to Italy fled and-herself to-be-arriving
Authari suo sponso nuntiavit. Cui statim ille obviam
to-Authari her betrothed announced to-whom at-once he to-meet

cum magno apparatu nuptias celebraturus in campum
with great preparation the-wedding about-to-celebrate into the-field
Sardis, qui super Veronam est, occurrens, eandem cunctis
of-Sardis which above Verona is running-to the-same with-all
laetantibus in coniugium Idus Maias accepit. Erat autem
rejoicing into marriage on-the-Ides of-May received there-was moreover
tunc ibi inter ceteros Langobardorum duces Agilulf dux
then there among the-other of-the-Lombards dukes Agilulf duke
Taurinensium civitatis. Quo in loco cum perturbato aere
of-Turin city which in place when troubled the-air
lignum quoddam, quod in regiis septis situm erat, cum
wood a-certain which in royal enclosures situated was with
magno tonitruorum fragore vi fulminis ictum fuisset,
great of-thunders crash by-the-force of-lightning struck had-been
habebat tunc Agilulf quendam de suis aruspicem puerum,
had then Agilulf a-certain of his-men a-soothsayer boy
qui per artem diabolicam, quid futurum portenderent ictus
who through art diabolical what to-come might-portend strokes
fulminum, intellegebat. Qui secrete, cum Agilulf ad requisita
of-lightnings understood who secretly when Agilulf for the-needs
naturae resideret, eidem dixit: 'Mulier ista, quae modo regi
of-nature sat-down to-him said woman that who just-now to-king
nostro nupsit, tua non post multum tempus coniux futura
our married your not after much time wife to-be
est'. Quod ille audiens, caput se eius amputaturum, si
is which he hearing the-head himself her to-be-about-to-cut-off if
hac de re amplius aliquid diceret, comminatus est.
this about thing more anything he-should-say threatened has
Cui ille: 'Ego quidem', inquid, 'occidi possum; nam
to-whom he I indeed he-says to-be-killed can for
certe ad hoc ista in hanc patriam femina venit, ut tuis
certainly for this that into this fatherland woman came that to-your

debeat nuptiis copulari'. Quod ita quoque post factum
she-ought to-the-nuptials to-be-coupled which so also afterward done
est. Hoc tempore, quam ob causam incertum est, Ansul,
was at-this time what for reason uncertain it-is Ansul
cognatus regis Authari, aput Veronam est interfectus.
kinsman of-king Authari at Verona was killed

Quomodo iterum Francorum exercitus in Italiam venit (;) et quia eos morbus desinteriae invasit, et de eorum in patriam reversione

XXXI · A SECOND FRANKISH INVASION AND DYSENTERY

Childebert sends an army under twenty dukes into Italy; Olo falls at Bellinzona, and Audovald waits at Milan in vain for the imperial army. The Franks take and raze many forts around Trent and lead their people captive. Dysentery strikes them, and after three months, unable to reach Authari in Pavia, they go home starving, selling their clothes and arms for food.

Hac etiam tempestate Grippo, legatus Childeperti regis
at-this also time Grippo envoy of-Childebert king
Francorum, cum Constantinopolim remeasset et eidem regi
of-the-Franks when from-Constantinople had-returned and to-the-same king
suo, quomodo honorifice ab imperatore Mauricio susceptus
his how honorably by the-emperor Maurice received
fuisset, nuntiasset, et quia iniurias, quas aput Cartaginem
he-had-been had-announced and that the-wrongs which at Carthage
perpessus fuerat, imperator ad voluntatem Childeperti regis
suffered he-had the-emperor at the-will of-Childebert king
ultum iri promisisset: Childepertus confestim iterato in
avenged to-be had-promised Childebert at-once again into
Italiam exercitum Francorum cum viginti ducibus ad
Italy an-army of-the-Franks with twenty dukes for

debellandam Langobardorum gentem direxit. E quibus ducibus
subduing of-the-Lombards the-nation directed of which dukes
Audualdus et Olo et Cedinus eminentiores fuerunt. Sed
Audovald and Olo and Cedinus more-eminent were but
Olo cum importune ad Bilitionis castrum accessisset, iaculo
Olo when untimely to of-Bellinzona the-fort had-approached by-a-javelin
sub mamilla sauciatus cecidit et mortuus est. Reliqui vero
under the-breast wounded fell and dead was the-rest but
Franci cum egressi fuissent ad praedandum, a Langobardis
Franks when gone-out they-had to plundering by the-Lombards
inruentibus passim per loca singula prosternebantur. At
rushing-in here-and-there through places individual were-laid-low but
vero Audualdus et sex duces Francorum ad Mediolanensium
indeed Audovald and six dukes of-the-Franks to of-the-Milanese
urbem advenientes, ibi eminus in campestribus castra
the-city arriving there far-off in the-plains a-camp
posuerunt. Quo loco ad eos imperatoris legati venerunt,
pitched in-which place to them of-the-emperor envoys came
nuntiantes, adesse exercitum in solatio eorum, dicentesque
announcing to-be-at-hand an-army in support of-them and-saying
quia: 'Post triduum cum eisdem veniemus. Et hoc vobis
that after three-days with the-same we-shall-come and this to-you
erit signum: cum videritis villae huius, quae in monte
shall-be the-sign when you-see of-estate this which on the-mountain
sita est, domus incendio concremari et fumum incendii ad
situated is the-houses by-fire to-be-burned and the-smoke of-the-fire to
caelos usque sustolli, noveritis, nos cum exercitu, quem
the-heavens up-to to-be-raised you-should-know us with the-army which
pollicemur, adventare'. Sed expectantes Francorum duces,
we-promise to-be-arriving but waiting of-the-Franks the-dukes
diebus sex iuxta placitum, nullum ex his, quibus legati
for-days six according-to the-agreement none of these whom the-envoys

imperatoris promiserant, venisse, contemplati sunt. Cedinus
of-the-emperor had-promised to-have-come observed have Cedinus
autem cum tredecim ducibus laevam Italiae ingressus, quinque
moreover with thirteen dukes the-left of-Italy having-entered five
castella cepit, a quibus etiam sacramenta exegit. Pervenit
forts took from whom also oaths he-exacted arrived
etiam exercitus Francorum usque Veronam, et deposuerunt
also the-army of-the-Franks up-to Verona and they-pulled-down
castra plurima per pacem post sacramenta data, quae se
forts very-many through peace after oaths given which themselves
eis crediderant nullum ab eis dolum existimantes. Nomina
to-them had-entrusted no from them deceit thinking the-names
autem castrorum quae diruerunt in territorio Tridentino
moreover of-the-forts which they-destroyed in the-territory of-Trent
ista sunt: Tesana, Maletum, Sermiana, Appianum, Fagitana,
these are Tesana Maletum Sermiana Appianum Fagitana
Cimbra, Vitianum, Bremtonicum, Volaenes, Ennemase, et duo
Cimbra Vitianum Bremtonicum Volaenes Ennemase and two
in Alsuca et unum in Verona. Haec omnia castra cum diruta
in Alsuca and one in Verona these all forts when destroyed
essent a Francis, cives universi ab eis ducti sunt captivi.
had-been by the-Franks the-citizens all by them led were captive
Pro Ferruge vero castro, intercedentibus episcopis Ingenuino de
for Ferruge but the-fort interceding the-bishops Ingenuinus of
Savione et Agnello de Tridento, data est redemptio, per capud
Säben and Agnellus of Trent given was a-ransom for head
uniuscuiusque viri solidus unus usque ad solidos sexcentos.
of-each man solidus one all-the-way to solidi six-hundred
Interea Francorum exercitum, cum esset tempus aestivum,
meanwhile of-the-Franks the-army since it-was the-season of-summer
propter inconsueti aeris incommoditatem desenteriae morbus
on-account-of of-unaccustomed air the-unwholesomeness of-dysentery the-disease

graviter exagitare coepit, quo morbo plures ex eis
severely to-harass began by-which disease many of them
interierunt. Quid plura? Cum per tres menses Francorum
perished what more when through three months of-the-Franks
exercitus Italiam pervagaret nihilque proficeret neque se de
the-army Italy roamed and-nothing gained nor itself on
inimicis ulcisci posset, eo quod se in locis firmissimis
enemies to-avenge could for-this that themselves in places most-strong
contulissent, neque regem attingere valeret, de quo ultio
they-had-betaken nor the-king to-reach was-able on whom vengeance
fieret, qui se intra Ticinensem munierat urbem, ut
might-be-done who himself within the-Ticinese had-fortified city as
diximus, infirmatus aeris intemperantia ac fame constrictus
we-have-said weakened of-the-air by-intemperance and by-hunger constrained
exercitus redire ad propria destinavit. Qui revertentes ad
the-army to-return to its-own determined who returning to
patriam, in tantum famis penuriam perpessi sunt, ut prius
the-fatherland to such of-hunger want suffered have that before
vestimenta propria, insuper etiam et arma ad coemendum
clothes their-own moreover even and arms for buying
victum praeberent, quam ad genitale solum pertingerent.
food they-gave than to their-native soil reached

Quomodo rex Authari Beneventum perrexit

XXXII · AUTHARI AT REGGIO

Authari is said to have come through Spoleto to Benevento and taken that region, then gone as far as Reggio, the last city of Italy, and ridden out to a column in the sea and touched it with his spear, saying the Lombards' borders would reach that far. The column is said to stand to this day and to be called Authari's column.

Circa haec tempora putatur esse factum, quod de Authari rege
around these times it-is-thought to-be done what about Authari king
refertur. Fama est enim, tunc eundem regem per Spoletium
is-reported the-report is for then the-same king through Spoleto
Beneventum pervenisse eandemque regionem cepisse et
to-Benevento to-have-come and-the-same region to-have-taken and
usque etiam Regiam, extremam Italiae civitatem vicinam
up-to even Reggio the-farthest of-Italy city neighboring
Siciliae, perambulasse; et quia ibidem intra maris undas
to-Sicily to-have-traveled-through and since there within of-the-sea the-waves
columna quaedam esse posita dicitur, usque ad eam equo
column a-certain to-be placed is-said all-the-way to it on-horse
sedens accessisse eamque de hastae suae cuspide tetigisse,
sitting to-have-approached and-it with of-spear his the-point to-have-touched
dicens: 'Usque hic erunt Langobardorum fines'. Quae columna
saying up-to here shall-be of-the-Lombards the-borders which column
usque hodie dicitur persistere et columna Authari appellari.
up-to today is-said to-persist and the-column of-Authari to-be-called

De Zottone primo Beneventanorum duce

XXXIII · ZOTTO, FIRST DUKE OF BENEVENTO

The first Lombard duke at Benevento is Zotto, who rules there for twenty years.

Fuit autem primus Langobardorum dux in Benevento nomine
was moreover the-first of-the-Lombards duke in Benevento by-name
Zotto, qui in ea principatus est per curricula viginti
Zotto who in it ruled has through the-courses of-twenty
annorum.
years

Quomodo Authari rex legatos ad Gunthramnum misit, et de eius mirabili visione

XXXIV · GUNTRAM'S VISION OF TREASURE

Authari sends envoys of peace to Guntram, who sends them on to Childebert. Paul tells a deed of the good king: as Guntram sleeps in the forest, a small creature comes from his mouth, crosses a stream on his companion's sword, goes into a hole in a hill, and comes back into his mouth. Guntram dreams he crosses an iron bridge into a mountain full of gold, the place is dug and treasure found, and from it he makes a golden ciborium for the Lord's tomb at Jerusalem, which he sets over Saint Marcellus at Chalon when it cannot be sent.

Interea Authari rex legationem verbis pacificis ad
meanwhile Authari king an-embassy with-words peaceful to
Gunthramnum regem Francorum, patruum scilicet Childeperti
Guntram king of-the-Franks the-uncle namely of-Childebert
regis, direxit. A quo legati idem iocunde suscepti, sed
king directed by whom the-envoys the-same pleasantly received but

ad Childepertum, qui ei nepus ex fratre erat, directi
to Childebert who to-him nephew from brother was directed
sunt, ut per eius notum pax cum gente Langobardorum
were that through his knowledge peace with the-nation of-the-Lombards
firmaretur. Erat autem Gunthramnus iste, de quo diximus,
might-be-confirmed was moreover Guntram this about whom we-spoke
rex pacificus et omni bonitate conspicuus. Cuius unum
a-king peaceful and in-all goodness conspicuous of-whom one
factum satis ammirabile libet nos huic nostrae historiae
deed very wonderful it-pleases us into-this our history
breviter inserere, praesertim cum hoc Francorum historia
briefly to-insert especially since this of-the-Franks the-history
noverimus minime contineri. Is cum venatum quodam
we-know by-no-means to-be-contained he when to-hunt a-certain
tempore in silvam isset, et, ut adsolet fieri, hac illacque
time into the-forest had-gone and as is-wont to-happen this-way and-that
discurrentibus sociis, ipse cum uno fidelissimo tantum
running-about the-companions he-himself with one most-faithful only
suo remansisset, gravissimo somno depressus, caput in
his had-remained by-very-heavy sleep pressed-down the-head on
genibus eiusdem fidelis sui reclinans, obdormivit. De cuius
the-knees of-the-same faithful-man his laying-back fell-asleep from whose
ore parvum animal in modum reptilis egressum, tenuem
mouth a-small animal in the-manner of-a-reptile having-come-out a-thin
rivulum, qui propter discurrebat, ut transire possit,
rivulet which nearby was-running so-that to-cross it-might-be-able
satagere coepit. Tunc isdem in cuius gremio quiescebat
to-strive began then the-same in whose lap he-was-resting
spatham suam vagina exemptam super eundem rivulum
sword his from-the-sheath taken over the-same rivulet
posuit; super quam illud reptile, de quo diximus, ad partem
placed over which that reptile about which we-spoke to the-side

aliam transmeavit. Quod cum non longe exinde in quoddam
other crossed which when not far thence into a-certain
foramen montis ingressum fuisset, et post aliquantum
opening of-the-mountain entered had and after some-little
spatii regressum super eandem spatham praefatum rivulum
of-space having-returned over the-same sword the-aforesaid rivulet
transmeasset, rursum in os Gunthramni, de quo
had-crossed again into the-mouth of-Guntram from which
exierat, introivit. Gunthramnus post haec de somno
it-had-gone-out went-in Guntram after these-things from sleep
expergefactus, mirificam se visionem vidisse narravit. Retulit
awakened a-wondrous himself vision to-have-seen related he-told
enim, paruisse sibi in somnis, quod fluvium quendam
for to-have-appeared to-himself in dreams that a-river certain
per pontem ferreum transisset et sub montem quoddam
by a-bridge iron he-had-crossed and under mountain a-certain
introisset, ubi multos auri pondus aspexisset. Is vero in cuius
had-gone-in where much of-gold weight he-had-beheld he but in whose
gremio caput tenuerat, cum dormisset, quid de eo viderat,
lap the-head he-had-held when he-slept what about him he-had-seen
ei per ordinem retulit. Quid plura? Effossus est locus
to-him in order told what more dug-up was place
ille, et inaestimabiles thesauri, qui ibidem antiquitus positi
that and inestimable treasures which there anciently placed
fuerant, sunt reperti. De quo auro ipse rex postmodum
had-been were found from which gold the-king himself afterward
cyborium solidum mirae magnitudinis et magni ponderis
a-ciborium solid of-wondrous size and of-great weight
fecit, multisque illud preciosissimis gemmis decoratum ad
made and-with-many it most-precious gems adorned to
sepulchrum Domini Hierosolimam transmittere voluit. Sed
the-tomb of-the-Lord to-Jerusalem to-send-over wished but

cum minime potuisset, eodem supra corpus beati Marcelli
when by-no-means he-had-been-able the-same over the-body of-blessed Marcellus
martyris, quod in civitate Cavallono sepultum est, ubi sedes
the-martyr which in the-city Chalon buried is where the-seat
regni illius erat, poni fecit; et est ibi usque in
of-kingdom that was to-be-placed he-caused and it-is there all-the-way into
praesentem diem. Nec est usquam ullum opus ex auro
the-present day nor is anywhere any work from gold
effectum, quod ei valeat conparari. Sed nos, his breviter
made which to-it may-be-able to-be-compared but we these-things briefly
quae relatu digna erant contactis, ad historiam revertamur.
which of-report worthy were touched to the-history let-us-return

De morte Authari regis, et de regno Agilulfi

XXXV · AUTHARI DIES; THEUDELINDA CHOOSES AGILULF

Authari dies at Pavia, poisoned, they say, after six years, and Childebert promises peace. Since Theudelinda pleases the Lombards, they let her choose a husband and king, and she chooses Agilulf, duke of Turin; when he kisses her hand, she tells him, blushing, to kiss her lips. They marry, he takes the royal dignity in November, and in May he is raised king at Milan.

Interim dum legati Authari regis in Francia morarentur, rex
meanwhile while the-envoys of-Authari king in Francia were-staying king
Authari aput Ticinum Nonas Septembris, veneno, ut tradunt,
Authari at Pavia on-the-Nones of-September poison as they-relate
accepto, moritur, postquam sex regnaverat annos. Statimque
received dies after six he-had-reigned years and-at-once
a Langobardis legatio ad Childepertum regem Francorum
by the-Lombards an-embassy to Childebert king of-the-Franks
missa est, quae Authari regis mortem eidem nuntiaret et
sent was which of-Authari king the-death to-the-same should-announce and

pacem ab eo expeteret. Quod ille audiens, legatos quidem
peace from him should-seek which he hearing the-envoys indeed
suscepit, pacem vero in posterum se daturum promisit.
received peace but in the-future himself to-be-about-to-give promised
Qui tamen praefatos legatos post aliquod dies, promissa
who yet the-aforesaid envoys after some days promised
pace, absolvit. Regina vero Theudelinda quia satis placebat
peace dismissed the-queen but Theudelinda because very she-pleased
Langobardis, permiserunt eam in regia consistere dignitatem,
the-Lombards they-permitted her in royal to-remain dignity
suadentes ei, ut sibi quem ipsa voluisset ex omnibus
urging her that for-herself whom she-herself should-have-wished from all
Langobardis virum eligeret, talem scilicet qui regnum
the-Lombards a-husband she-should-choose such namely who the-kingdom
regere utiliter possit. Illa vero consilium cum prudentibus
to-rule usefully might-be-able she but counsel with the-prudent
habens, Agilulfum ducem Taurinatium et sibi virum
having Agilulf duke of-Turin both for-herself a-husband
et Langobardorum genti regem elegit. Erat enim isdem
and of-the-Lombards for-the-nation a-king chose was for the-same
vir strenuus et bellicosus et tam forma quam animo ad
a-man vigorous and warlike and as-much in-beauty as in-mind to
regni gubernacula coaptatus. Cui statim regina ad se
of-the-kingdom the-helm fitted to-whom at-once the-queen to herself
venire mandavit, ipsaque ei obviam ad Laumellum oppidum
to-come bade and-she-herself him to-meet to Lomello the-town
properavit. Qui cum ad eam venisset, ipsa sibi post aliquod
hastened who when to her had-come she for-herself after some
verba vinum propinari fecit. Quae cum prior bibisset,
words wine to-be-pledged caused who when first she-had-drunk
residuum Agilulfo ad bibendum tribuit. Is cum reginae,
the-rest to-Agilulf for drinking gave he when of-the-queen

accepto poculo, manum honorabiliter osculatus esset, regina
received the-cup the-hand honorably kissed had the-queen
cum rubore subridens, non deberi sibi manum osculari, ait,
with blush smiling not to-be-owed to-herself the-hand to-kiss says
quem osculum ad os iungere oporteret. Moxque eum ad
whom a-kiss to the-mouth to-join it-behooved and-soon him to
suum basium erigens, ei de suis nuptiis deque regni
her kiss raising to-him about her nuptials and-about of-the-kingdom
dignitate aperuit. Quid plura? Celebrantur cum magna laeticia
the-dignity disclosed what more are-celebrated with great joy
nuptiae; suscepit Agilulf, qui fuerat cognatus regis Authari,
the-nuptials received Agilulf who had-been kinsman of-king Authari
incoante iam mense Novembrio regiam dignitatem. Sed
beginning already the-month of-November the-royal dignity but
tamen, congregatis in unum Langobardis, postea mense
yet gathered into one the-Lombards afterward in-the-month
Maio ab omnibus in regnum aput Mediolanum levatus est.
of-May by all into the-kingdom at Milan raised was

Quod Agilulf rex pro captivis legatos in Francia misit

I · AGILULF RANSOMS THE CAPTIVES

Once Agilulf, also called Ago, is confirmed as king, he sends Agnellus, bishop of Trent, into Francia for the captives taken from the forts of Trent, and Agnellus brings back some whom Queen Brunhild has ransomed. Euin, duke of Trent, goes to Gaul to obtain peace and returns with it.

Confirmata igitur Agilulf, qui et Ago dictus est, regia
confirmed therefore to-Agilulf who also Ago called is royal
dignitate, causa eorum qui ex castellis Tridentinis captivi
dignity for-the-sake of-those who from the-forts of-Trent captive
a Francis ducti fuerant, Agnellum episcopum Tridentinum in
by the-Franks led had-been Agnellus bishop of-Trent into
Francia misit. Qui exinde rediens, secum aliquantos captivos,
Francia sent who thence returning with-himself some captives
quos Brunihilde regina Francorum ex proprio pretio redimerat,
whom Brunhild queen of-the-Franks from her-own price had-redeemed
revocavit. Euin quoque dux Tridentorum ad optinendam
brought-back Euin also duke of-the-Tridentines for obtaining
pacem ad Gallias perrexit; qua impetrata, regressus est.
peace to the-Gauls went which obtained returned has

De siccitate quae eodem anno fuit, et de locustis

II · DROUGHT AND LOCUSTS

A severe drought lasts from January to September and brings a great famine. A swarm of unusually large locusts comes into the territory of Trent and, strange to tell, eats the grass and marsh plants but barely touches the crops, and the next year they come again.

Hoc anno fuit siccitas nimium gravis a mense Ianuario
in-this year there-was a-drought exceedingly heavy from the-month of-January
usque ad mensem Septembrium; et facta est magna penuria
all-the-way to the-month of-September and made was great a-want
famis. Venit quoque et magna locustarum magnitudo in
of-hunger came also and a-great of-locusts multitude into
territorium Tridentinum, quae maiores erant quam ceterae
the-territory of-Trent which larger were than the-other
locustae; et mirum dictum, herbas paludesque depastae
locusts and wondrous to-tell the-grasses and-the-marshes grazed-off
sunt, segetes vero agrorum exigue contigerunt. Sequenti
they-have the-crops but of-the-fields slightly they-touched the-following
quoque anno pari nihilominus modo adventarunt.
also year in-equal nonetheless manner they-came

Quod rex Agilulf Mimulphum occidit, et de rebellatione Gaidilulfi et Ulphari

III · MIMULF KILLED, AND THE REVOLTS OF GAIDULF AND ULFARI

Agilulf kills Mimulf, duke of the island of San Giuliano, for going over to the Frankish dukes. Gaidulf of Bergamo rebels, makes peace with hostages, shuts himself up on Comacina, and is received back into favor, while the king takes the Romans' treasure from the island to Pavia. Duke Ulfari rebels at Treviso and is besieged and captured.

His diebus Agilulf rex occidit Mimulfum ducem de insula
in-these days Agilulf king killed Mimulf duke of the-island
Sancti Iuliani, eo quod se superiori tempore Francorum
of-Saint Julian for-this that himself in-earlier time of-the-Franks
ducibus tradidisset. Gaidulfus vero Pergamensis dux in
to-the-dukes he-had-handed-over Gaidulf but of-Bergamo duke in
civitate sua Pergamo rebellans, contra regem se communivit;
city his Bergamo rebelling against the-king himself fortified
sed datis obsidibus pacem cum rege fecit. Rursum se
but given hostages peace with the-king made again himself
Gaidulfus in insula Comacina seclausit. Agilulf vero rex
Gaidulf on the-island Comacina shut-up Agilulf but king
in eandem Comacinam insulam ingressus, homines Gaidulfi
into the-same Comacina island having-entered the-men of-Gaidulf
exinde expulit et thesaurum, quem ibidem a Romanis positum
thence drove-out and the-treasure which there by the-Romans placed
invenerat, Ticinum transtulit. Gaidulfus vero iterato Pergamum
he-had-found to-Pavia transferred Gaidulf but again to-Bergamo
confugiens, ibique ab Agilulfo rege obtemptus, rursus in
fleeing and-there by Agilulf king held again into

gratia receptus est. Rebellavit quoque dux Ulfari contra regem
favor received was rebelled also duke Ulfari against king
Agonem aput Tarvisium et obsessus captusque est ab eo.
Ago at Treviso and besieged and-captured was by him

De peste aput Ravennam, et de bello Childeperti cum filio Hilperici, et de portentis

IV · PLAGUE, CHILDEBERT'S WAR, AND PORTENTS

The plague of the groin strikes Ravenna, Grado, and Istria again, and Agilulf makes peace with the Avars. Childebert fights his cousin, Chilperic's son, and up to thirty thousand men are killed. The winter is colder than anyone remembers, blood rains among the Breones, and a stream of gore flows in the Rhine.

Hoc anno fuit pestis inguinaria iterum aput Ravennam,
in-this year there-was a-plague of-the-groin again at Ravenna
Gradus et Histria nimium gravis, sicut et prius ante triginta
Grado and Istria exceedingly heavy as also before ago thirty
annos extiterat. Hoc etiam tempore Agilulfus rex cum
years it-had-arisen at-this also time Agilulf king with
Avaris pacem fecit. Childepertus quoque bellum gessit cum
the-Avars peace made Childebert also war waged with
consobrino suo, Hilperici filio; in quo proelio usque ad
cousin his of-Chilperic the-son in which battle all-the-way to
triginta milia hominum caesa sunt. Fuit autem tunc hiems
thirty thousand of-men slain were there-was moreover then a-winter
frigida nimis, qualem vix aliquis prius recolebat fuisse.
cold too-much such-as scarcely anyone before recalled to-have-been
In regione quoque Brionum sanguis de nubibus fluxit; et
in the-region also of-the-Breones blood from the-clouds flowed and
inter Reni fluvii aquas rivulus cruoris emanavit.
among of-the-Rhine river the-waters a-rivulet of-gore flowed-out

Quod codicem dialocum beatus Gregorius Theudelindae reginae direxit

V · GREGORY SENDS THE DIALOGUES TO THEUDELINDA

Pope Gregory, after many other writings, composes four books on the lives of the saints, called the Dialogue because he writes it as a conversation with his deacon Peter. He sends them to Queen Theudelinda, whom he knows devoted to Christ and outstanding in good works.

His diebus sapientissimus ac beatissimus Gregorius papa
in-these days the-most-wise and most-blessed Gregory pope
Romanae urbis, postquam alia multa ad utilitatem
of-Roman the-city after other many-things for the-benefit
sanctae ecclesiae scripserat, etiam libros quattuor de vita
of-holy the-church he-had-written also books four on the-life
sanctorum conposuit; quem codicem dialogum, id est
of-the-saints composed which book Dialogue that is
duorum locutionem, quia eum conloquens cum suo diacono
of-two a-speaking because it conversing with his deacon
Petro ediderat, appellavit. Hos igitur libros praefatus papa
Peter he-had-produced he-called these therefore books the-aforesaid pope
Theudelindae reginae direxit, quam sciebat utique et Christi
to-Theudelinda queen directed whom he-knew certainly both of-Christ
fidei deditam et in bonis actibus esse praecipuam.
to-the-faith devoted and in good deeds to-be outstanding

De bonis actibus eiusdem Theudelindae reginae

VI · THEUDELINDA'S GOOD WORKS

Through Theudelinda the church gains much. The Lombards, still heathen, have seized nearly all the churches' wealth, but moved by her the king holds the catholic faith, gives the church many possessions, and restores the downtrodden bishops to their honor.

Per hanc quoque reginam multum utilitatis Dei ecclesia
through this also queen much of-benefit of-God the-church
consecuta est. Nam pene omnes ecclesiarum substantias
attained has for nearly all of-the-churches the-substance
Langobardi, cum adhuc gentilitatis errore tenerentur,
the-Lombards when still of-heathenism by-the-error they-were-held
invaserunt. Sed huius salubri supplicatione rex permotus,
seized but of-her by-wholesome entreaty the-king moved
et catholicam fidem tenuit, et multas possessiones ecclesiae
both the-catholic faith held and many possessions to-the-church
Christi largitus est atque episcopos, qui in depressione et
of-Christ bestowed has and the-bishops who in depression and
abiectione erant, ad dignitatis solitae honorem reduxit.
abasement were to of-dignity accustomed the-honor brought-back

Quod Tassilo ab Hildeperto Francorum rege rex ordinatus est

VII · TASSILO MADE KING OF THE BAVARIANS

Childebert, king of the Franks, makes Tassilo king in Bavaria. Tassilo soon invades the land of the Slavs, wins a victory, and comes home with great booty.

His diebus Tassilo a Childeperto rege Francorum aput
in-these days Tassilo by Childebert king of-the-Franks in
Baioariam rex ordinatus est. Qui mox cum exercitu in
Bavaria king ordained was who soon with an-army into
Sclaborum provinciam introiens, patrata victoria, ad solum
of-the-Slavs the-province entering accomplished victory to soil
proprium cum maxima praeda remeavit.
his-own with very-great booty returned

Quod Romanus patricius civitates quas Langobardi tenebant invasit; et quia rex Agilulf Maurissionem ducem occidit, et quia cum beato Gregorio et Romanis pacem fecit

VIII · ROMANUS RETAKES CITIES, AND AGILULF'S PEACE

Romanus, exarch of Ravenna, retakes Sutri, Perugia, and other cities, and Agilulf retakes Perugia and puts to death Duke Maurisio, who had gone over to the Romans. Gregory is so frightened by the king's coming that he breaks off his exposition of Ezekiel's temple. Later, urged by Theudelinda, Agilulf makes a firm peace with Gregory and the Romans, and Gregory writes her a letter of thanks.

Hac etiam tempestate Romanus patricius et exharchus
at-this also time Romanus patrician and exarch
Ravennae Romam properavit. Qui dum Ravennam revertitur,
of-Ravenna to-Rome hastened who while to-Ravenna he-returns

retenuit civitates quae a Langobardis tenebantur, quarum ista
retook the-cities which by the-Lombards were-held of-which these
sunt nomina: Sutrium, Polimartium, Hortas, Tuder, Ameria,
are the-names Sutri Bomarzo Orte Todi Amelia
Perusia, Luceolis, et alias quasdam civitates. Quod factum cum
Perugia Luceoli and other certain cities which deed when
regi Agilulfo nuntiatum esset, statim Ticino egressus,
to-the-king Agilulf announced had-been at-once from-Pavia having-gone-out
cum valido exercitu civitatem Perusium petiit; ibique per
with a-strong army the-city Perugia sought and-there for
dies aliquod Maurisionem ducem Langobardorum, qui se
days some Maurisio duke of-the-Lombards who himself
Romanorum partibus tradiderat, obsedit, et sine mora captum
of-the-Romans to-the-side had-handed-over besieged and without delay captured
vita privavit. Huius regis adventum in tantum beatus Gregorius
of-life deprived of-this king the-coming to such-a-degree blessed Gregory
papa exterritus est, ut ab expositione templi, de quo in
pope terrified was that from the-exposition of-the-temple about which in
Ezechiele legitur, desisteret, sicut ipse quoque in suis homeliis
Ezekiel is-read he-desisted as he-himself also in his homilies
refert. Rex igitur Agilulf, rebus conpositis, Ticinum repedavit.
relates king therefore Agilulf matters settled to-Pavia went-back
Nec multum post, suggerente maxime Theudelinda regina sua
nor much after suggesting chiefly Theudelinda queen his
coniuge, sicut eam beatus papa Gregorius suis epistulis saepius
wife as her blessed pope Gregory in-his letters quite-often
ammonuit, cum eodem viro sanctissimo papa Gregorio atque
admonished with the-same man most-holy pope Gregory and
Romanis pacem firmissimam pepigit. Eidemque reginae idem
the-Romans peace most-firm pledged and-to-the-same queen the-same
venerabilis sacerdos pro gratiarum actione hanc epistulam direxit:
venerable priest for of-thanks the-giving this letter directed

Epistola beati Gregorii ad Theudelindam reginam. Item alia eiusdem ad Agilulfum regem

IX · GREGORY'S LETTERS TO THEUDELINDA AND AGILULF

Gregory thanks Theudelinda for her work for peace and asks her to urge her husband to keep the alliance with the Christian commonwealth. To Agilulf he gives thanks for the peace, which shows he loves God, since otherwise the blood of poor peasants would have been shed, and asks him to order his dukes to keep it faithfully.

'Gregorius Theudelindae reginae Langobardorum. Quia
Gregory to-Theudelinda queen of-the-Lombards since
excellentia vestra ad faciendum pacem studiosius et benigne
excellence your for making peace zealously and kindly
se, sicut solet, inpenderit, renuntiante filio nostro Probo
itself as it-is-wont has-applied reporting son our Probus
abbate cognovimus. Nec enim aliter de christianitate vestra
abbot we-have-learned nor for otherwise about Christianity your
confidendum fuit, nisi quia in causa pacis laborem et
to-be-trusted it-was unless that in the-cause of-peace labor and
bonitatem vestram omnibus monstraretis. Unde omnipotenti
goodness your to-all you-would-show whence to-almighty
Deo gratias agimus, qui ita cor vestrum sua pietate regit,
God thanks we-give who so heart your by-his mercy rules
ut, sicut fidem rectam tribuit, ita quoque placita sibi
that as the-faith right he-has-granted so also things-pleasing to-himself
vos semper operari concedat. Non enim, excellentissima
you always to-work he-may-allow not for O-most-excellent
filia, de sanguine, qui ab utraque parte fundendus fuerat,
daughter from the-blood which from each side to-be-shed had-been
parvam te credas adquisisse mercedem. Ex qua re
small you should-believe to-have-gained the-reward for which thing

voluntati vestrae gratias referentes, Dei nostri misericordiam
to-the-will your thanks returning of-God our the-mercy
deprecamur, ut bonorum vobis vicem in corpore et anima
we-pray that of-good-deeds to-you the-return in body and soul
hic et in futuro conpenset. Salutantes vos praeterea paterna
here and in the-future he-may-repay greeting you moreover with-fatherly
dilectione hortamur, ut aput excellentissimum coniugem
love we-exhort that with most-excellent husband
vestrum illa agatis, quatenus christianae rei publicae
your those-things you-may-do so-that of-the-Christian thing public
societatem non rennuat. Nam sicut et vos scire credimus,
the-alliance not he-may-refuse for as also you to-know we-believe
multis modis est utile, si se ad eius amicitiam conferre
in-many ways it-is useful if himself to its friendship to-bring
voluerit. Vos ergo more vestro quae ad gratiam
he-shall-have-wished you therefore in-manner your the-things-which to the-favor
partium pertinent semper studete atque, ubi causa mercedis
of-the-parties belong always be-zealous and where a-cause of-reward
se dederit, elaborate, ut bona vestra amplius ante
itself shall-have-offered labor that good-deeds your more before
omnipotentis Dei oculos commendetis'. Item epistola eiusdem
of-almighty God the-eyes you-may-commend likewise a-letter of-the-same
ad Agilulfum regem: 'Gregorius Agilulfo regi Langobardorum.
to Agilulf king Gregory to-Agilulf king of-the-Lombards
Gratias excellentiae vestrae referimus, quia peticionem nostram
thanks to-excellence your we-return because petition our
audientes, pacem, quae utrisque esset partibus profutura,
hearing peace which to-both would-be to-the-parties profitable
sicut de vobis confidentiam habuimus, ordinastis. Ex
as about you confidence we-had you-have-ordained for
qua re excellentiae vestrae prudentiam et bonitatem valde
which thing of-excellence your the-prudence and goodness greatly

laudamus, quia pacem diligendo, Deum vos, qui auctor
we-praise because peace by-loving God you who author
ipsius est, amare, monstratis. Nam si, quod absit, facta non
of-it is to-love show for if which be-it-far made not
fuisset, quid agi habuit, nisi ut cum peccato et periculo
it-had-been what to-be-done it-had unless that with the-sin and danger
partium miserorum rusticorum sanguis, quorum labor utrisque
of-the-parties of-wretched peasants the-blood whose labor to-both
proficit, funderetur? Sed ut prodesset nobis eandem pacem,
profits should-be-shed but that to-profit us the-same peace
quemadmodum a vobis facta est, sentiamus, paterna caritate
as by you made it-was we-may-feel with-fatherly love
salutantes petimus, ut, quotiens occasio se dederit,
greeting we-ask that as-often-as occasion itself shall-have-offered
ducibus vestris per diversa loca et maxime in his partibus
to-dukes your through different places and chiefly in these parts
constitutis vestris praecipiatis epistolis, ut hanc pacem, sicut
stationed by-your you-should-command letters that this peace as
promissum est, pure custodiant, et occasiones sibi aliquas
promised it-was purely they-should-keep and occasions for-themselves any
non quaerant, unde aut contentio quaedam aut ingratitudo
not should-seek whence either contention some or ingratitude
nascatur, quatenus voluntati vestrae agere gratias valeamus.
might-arise so-that to-the-will your to-give thanks we-may-be-able
Latores vero praesentium litterarum, sicut revera homines
the-bearers indeed of-the-present letter as truly men
vestros, in eo quod debuit affectu suscepimus, quia iustum
your with that which was-due affection we-have-received because just
fuit, ut viros sapientes et qui pacem factam Deo propitio
it-was that men wise and who peace made God being-propitious
nuntiarunt cum caritate et suscipere et dimittere deberemus'.
announced with love both to-receive and to-dismiss we-ought

De stilla comete et morte Iohannis episcopi et Euin ducis, et de Baioariis

X · A COMET, DEATHS, AND THE BAVARIANS

A comet appears morning and evening for all of January. John of Ravenna dies and the Roman Marianus succeeds him, and Gaidoald, a good catholic, becomes duke of Trent after Euin. Some two thousand Bavarians attacking the Slavs are killed by the khagan, and wild horses and buffaloes are brought into Italy for the first time.

Inter haec sequenti mense Ianuario paruit stella cometis
among these-things in-the-following month of-January appeared a-star comet
mane et vespere per totum mensem. Eo quoque mense
morning and evening through the-whole month in-that also month
defunctus est Iohannes archiepiscopus Ravennae. Cuius in
died has John archbishop of-Ravenna of-whom into
locum Marianus civis Romanus substitutus est. Euin quoque
the-place Marianus citizen Roman substituted was Euin also
duce in Tridentu mortuo, datus est eidem loco dux
duke in Trent dead given was to-the-same place duke
Gaidoaldus, vir bonus ac fide catholicus. Isdem ipsis
Gaidoald a-man good and in-faith catholic in-the-same very
diebus Baioarii usque ad duo milia virorum dum super
days the-Bavarians all-the-way to two thousand of-men while upon
Sclavos inruunt, superveniente cacano omnes interficiuntur.
the-Slavs they-rush coming-upon the-khagan all are-killed
Tunc primum cavalli silvatici et bubali in Italiam delati,
then first horses wild and buffaloes into Italy brought
Italiae populis miracula fuerunt.
of-Italy to-the-peoples wonders were

De morte Childeperti Francorum regis, et de bello Avarorum cum Francis, et de transitu Gunthramni regis

XI · CHILDEBERT DIES, AND THE AVARS IN THURINGIA

Childebert, king of the Franks, is poisoned with his wife, it is said, in his twenty-fifth year. The Avars enter Thuringia and fight the Franks, and Queen Brunhild, ruling with her young grandsons, pays them to go home. Guntram dies too, and Brunhild takes up his kingdom.

Hac etiam tempestate Childepertus rex Francorum aetatis
at-this also time Childebert king of-the-Franks of-age
anno vigesimo quinto cum uxore propria, sicut fertur, in
in-the-year twentieth fifth with wife his-own as it-is-reported by
veneno extinguitur. Hunni quoque, qui et Abares dicuntur, a
poison is-extinguished the-Huns also who also Avars are-called from
Pannonia in Turingam ingressi, bella gravissima cum Francis
Pannonia into Thuringia having-entered wars very-heavy with the-Franks
gesserunt. Brunichildis tunc regina cum nepotibus adhuc
waged Brunhild then queen with grandsons still
puerulis Theudeperto et Theuderico regebat Gallias, a quibus
little-boys Theudebert and Theuderic was-ruling the-Gauls from whom
accepta Hunni pecunia revertuntur ad propria. Mortuus quoque
received the-Huns money return to their-own dead also
est Gunthramnus rex Francorum, regnumque illius Brunichildis
was Guntram king of-the-Franks and-kingdom his Brunhild
regina suscepit cum nepotibus adhuc parvulis, filiis Childeperti.
queen took-up with grandsons still little sons of-Childebert

Quia cacanus legatos ad Agilulfum misit, et de pace cum Gallinico patricio

XII · PEACE WITH THE KHAGAN AND WITH GALLICINUS

The khagan of the Huns sends envoys to Agilulf at Milan and makes peace with him. The patrician Romanus dies, and his successor Gallicinus also makes peace with Agilulf.

Per idem tempus cacanus rex Hunnorum legatos ad
through the-same time the-khagan king of-the-Huns envoys to
Agilulfum Mediolanum mittens, pacem cum eo fecit.
Agilulf to-Milan sending peace with him made
Romanus quoque patricius moritur; cui Gallicinus successit
Romanus also patrician dies whom Gallicinus succeeded
et cum Agilulfo rege pacis concordiam iniit.
and with Agilulf king of-peace the-concord entered-into

De pace Agilulfi cum Francis, et de morte Zangrulfi et Warnecautii

XIII · PEACE WITH THE FRANKS, AND REBELS KILLED

Agilulf makes perpetual peace with Theuderic, king of the Franks. Then he kills Zangrulf, duke of Verona, who has rebelled, puts to death Gaidulf of Bergamo, whom he has spared twice, and kills Warnecautius at Pavia.

Hoc etiam tempore Agilulf cum Theuderico Francorum rege
at-this also time Agilulf with Theuderic of-the-Franks king
pacem perpetuam fecit. Post haec Ago rex rebellantem
peace perpetual made after these-things Ago king rebelling
sibi Zangrulfum Veronensium ducem extincxit. Gaidulfum
against-him Zangrulf of-the-Veronese duke killed Gaidulf

quoque Pergamensem ducem, cui iam bis pepercerat, peremit.
also of-Bergamo duke whom already twice he-had-spared killed
Pari etiam modo et Warnecautium aput Ticinum occidit.
in-equal also manner also Warnecautius at Pavia he-killed

De peste aput Ravennam et mortalitate aput Veronam

XIV · PLAGUE AT RAVENNA, MORTALITY AT VERONA

Later a very heavy plague lays waste Ravenna and the people along the coast, and the next year a severe mortality wears down the people of Verona.

Subsequenti tempore rursum Ravennam et eos qui circa
in-the-subsequent time again Ravenna and those who around
ora maris erant pestis gravissima vastavit. Sequenti
the-shores of-the-sea were a-plague very-heavy laid-waste in-the-following
quoque anno mortalitas valida populos Veronensium attrivit.
also year a-mortality strong the-peoples of-the-Veronese wore-down

De signo sanguineo in caelo et bello inter se Francorum

XV · A BLOODY SIGN, AND WAR AMONG THE FRANKS

A bloody sign is seen in the sky, with bloody spears and a bright light all night. Theudebert, king of the Franks, makes war on his cousin Chlothar and badly defeats his army.

Tunc etiam signum sanguineum in caelum apparuisse visum
then also a-sign bloody in the-sky to-have-appeared seen
est et quasi hastae sanguineae et lux clarissima per
was and as-it-were spears bloody and a-light very-bright through

totam noctem. Theudepertus rex Francorum eo tempore
the-whole night Theudebert king of-the-Franks at-that time
cum Clothario patruele suo bellum gerens, eius exercitum
with Chlothar cousin his war waging his army
vehementer adflixit.
violently struck-down

De morte Ariulfi ducis Spolitani, et de ducato Theudelapii

XVI · ARIULF AND THE MARTYR SAVINUS

Ariulf, duke of Spoleto, after a battle at Camerino, asks who the man was who shielded him whenever anyone tried to strike him. Still a heathen, he doubts that a dead man can help the living, but in the church of the martyr Savinus near Spoleto he recognizes that man in the painting of the saint. When he dies, Faroald's two sons fight for the duchy, and Teudelapius wins it.

Sequenti anno Ariulfus dux, qui Farualdo aput Spoletium
in-the-following year Ariulf duke who Faroald at Spoleto
successerat, moritur. Hic Ariulfus cum bello contra Romanos
had-succeeded dies this Ariulf when war against the-Romans
in Camerino gessisset victoriamque patrasset, requirere a
at Camerino had-waged and-victory had-accomplished to-ask from
suis hominibus coepit, quis vir ille fuerit, quem ipse in
his men began who man that had-been whom he-himself in
illo bello quod gesserat tam strenue pugnantem vidisset.
that battle which he-had-waged so vigorously fighting had-seen
Cui cum sui viri responderent, se ibi nullum aliquem
to-whom when his men answered themselves there none any-one
fortius facientem quam ipsum ducem vidisse, ille ait: 'Certe
more-bravely doing than himself the-duke to-have-seen he says certainly
multum et per omnia me meliorem ibi alium vidi, qui,
much and in all-things than-me better there another I-saw who

quotiens me adversae partis aliquis percutere voluit, ille vir
as-often-as me of-the-adverse side anyone to-strike wished that man
strenuus me semper suo clyppeo protexit'. Cumque dux
vigorous me always with-his shield protected and-when the-duke
ipse prope Spoletium, ubi basilica beati martyris Savini
himself near Spoleto where the-basilica of-the-blessed martyr Savinus
episcopi sita est, in qua eiusdem venerabile corpus quiescit,
bishop situated is in which of-the-same the-venerable body rests
advenisset, interrogavit, cuius haec tam ampla domus esset.
had-come he-asked whose this so ample house might-be
Responsum est ei a viris fidelibus, Savinum ibi martyrem
answered it-was to-him by men faithful Savinus there the-martyr
requiescere, quem christiani, quotiens in bellum contra hostes
to-rest whom the-Christians as-often-as into war against enemies
irent, solitum haberent in suum auxilium invocare. Ariulfus
they-went accustomed they-had into their help to-invoke Ariulf
vero, cum adhuc esset gentilis, ita respondit: 'Et potest fieri,
but since still he-was a-heathen thus answered and can it-happen
ut homo mortuus aliquot viventi auxilium praestet?' Qui cum
that a-man dead to-anyone living help should-furnish who when
hoc dixisset, equo dissiliens eandem basilicam conspecturus
this he-had-said from-horse leaping-down the-same basilica about-to-look-at
intravit. Tunc aliis orantibus, ipse picturas eiusdem basilicae
entered then others praying he-himself the-pictures of-the-same basilica
mirari coepit. Qui cum figuram beati martyris Savini
to-wonder-at began who when the-figure of-the-blessed martyr Savinus
depictam conspexisset, mox cum iuramento affirmavit dicens,
painted he-had-beheld soon with an-oath affirmed saying
talem omnino eum virum qui se in bello protexerat
such altogether that man who himself in battle had-protected
formam habitumque habuisse. Tunc intellectum est, beatum
a-form and-dress to-have-had then understood it-was the-blessed

martyrem Savinum eidem in proelio adiutorium contulisse.
martyr Savinus to-the-same in battle help to-have-brought
Igitur mortuo Ariulfo, duo filii Faroald superiori ducis inter
therefore dead Ariulf two sons of-Faroald former duke among
se propter ducatum decertantes, unus ex ipsis, qui cum
themselves on-account-of the-duchy contending one of them who with
victoriam coronatus est, nomine Teudelapius, ducatum suscepit.
victory crowned was by-name Teudelapius the-duchy took-up

De depraedatione facta a Langobardis in coenobio sancti Benedicti

XVII · THE LOMBARDS SACK MONTE CASSINO

The Lombards fall by night on Saint Benedict's monastery at Cassino and plunder everything but cannot take a single monk, fulfilling Benedict's prophecy that he had barely won from God the lives of those in the place. The monks flee to Rome with the book of the Rule and what they can carry.

Circa haec tempora coenobium beati Benedicti patris, quod in
around these times the-monastery of-blessed Benedict father which in
castro Casino situm est, a Langobardis noctu invaditur. Qui
the-fort Cassino situated is by the-Lombards by-night is-invaded who
universa diripientes, nec unum ex monachis tenere potuerunt,
all-things plundering not one of the-monks to-hold could
ut prophetia venerabilis Benedicti patris, quam longe ante
so-that the-prophecy of-venerable Benedict father which long before
praeviderat, impleretur, qua dixit: 'Vix apud Deum optinere
he-had-foreseen might-be-fulfilled in-which he-said scarcely with God to-obtain
potui, ut ex hoc loco mihi animae cederentur'. Fugientes
I-was-able that from this place to-me the-souls might-be-yielded fleeing
quoque ex eodem loco monachi Romam petierunt, secum
also from the-same place the-monks Rome sought with-themselves

codicem sanctae regulae, quam praefatus pater conposuerat,
the-book of-the-holy rule which the-aforesaid father had-composed
et quaedam alia scripta necnon pondus panis et mensuram
and certain other writings and-also a-weight of-bread and a-measure
vini et quidquid ex supellectili subripere poterant
of-wine and whatever of the-household-goods to-snatch-away they-could
deferentes. Siquidem post beatum Benedictum Constantinus,
carrying for after blessed Benedict Constantine
post hunc Simplicius, post quem Vitalis, ad extremum Bonitus
after him Simplicius after whom Vitalis at the-last Bonitus
congregationem ipsam rexit; sub quo haec distructio facta est.
congregation that-very ruled under whom this destruction made was

De morte Zottonis et ducatu Arichis

XVIII · ARICHIS SUCCEEDS ZOTTO AT BENEVENTO

When Zotto of Benevento dies, Agilulf sends Arichis to succeed him. Arichis was born in Friuli, was tutor to the sons of Duke Gisulf, and is Gisulf's kinsman, and a letter of Pope Gregory to him survives.

Mortuo igitur Zottone Beneventanorum duce, Arigis in loco
dead therefore Zotto of-the-Beneventans duke Arichis in the-place
ipsius a rege Agilulfo missus successit; qui ortus in Foroiulii
of-him by the-king Agilulf sent succeeded who born in Friuli
fuerat et Gisulfi Foroiulani ducis filios educarat eidemque
had-been and of-Gisulf of-Friuli duke the-sons had-brought-up and-to-the-same
Gisulfo consanguineus erat. Ad hunc Arigis extat epistula
Gisulf kinsman was to this Arichis there-stands a-letter
beati papae Gregorii in hunc modum directa:
of-blessed pope Gregory in this manner directed

Epistula beati Gregorii papae ad eundem Arichis

XIX · GREGORY'S LETTER TO ARICHIS

Gregory writes to Arichis that the churches of Peter and Paul need beams, and that he has sent the subdeacon Savinus to cut some in the land of the Bruttii and drag them to the sea. He asks Arichis to have his agents lend men and oxen, and promises a fitting gift in return.

'Gregorius Arogi duci. Quia sic de gloria vestra sicut re
Gregory to-Arichis duke because so about glory your as in-thing
vera de filio nostro confidimus, petere a vobis aliqua
true about son our we-trust to-ask from you some-things
fiducialiter provocamur, arbitrantes, quod minime nos patiamini
confidently we-are-provoked judging that by-no-means us you-will-suffer
contristari, maxime in tali re, unde vestra anima multum
to-be-saddened chiefly in such a-thing whence your soul much
poterit adiuvari. Indicamus autem, propter ecclesias beatorum
shall-be-able to-be-helped we-indicate moreover on-account-of the-churches of-the-blessed
Petri ac Pauli aliquantas nobis trabes necessarias esse, et ideo
Peter and Paul some to-us beams necessary to-be and therefore
Savino subdiacono nostro iniunximus, de partibus Brittiorum
to-Savinus subdeacon our we-have-enjoined from the-parts of-the-Bruttii
aliquantas incidere, et ut usque ad mare in locum aptum
some to-cut and that all-the-way to the-sea into a-place suitable
trahere debeat. Et quia in hac re solaciis indiget, salutantes
to-drag he-ought and because in this thing of-help he-has-need greeting
gloriam vestram paterna caritate petimus, ut actionariis vestris
glory your with-fatherly love we-ask that to-agents your
qui in illo loco sunt deputetis, ut homines qui sub eis
who in that place are you-should-assign that the-men who under them
sunt cum bubus suis in eius transmittere solatium debeant,
are with oxen their into his to-send help ought

quatenus vobis concurrentibus melius quod ei iniunximus
so-that you joining better what to-him we-have-enjoined
possit perficere. Nos enim promittimus, quia, dum
he-may-be-able to-accomplish we for promise that when
res perfecta fuerit, dignum vobis exenium, quod non
the-thing completed shall-have-been a-worthy to-you gift which not
sit iniuriosum, transmittemus. Nam scimus nos considerare
may-be insulting we-shall-send for we-know we to-consider
et filiis nostris, qui bonam nobis voluntatem exhibent,
and to-sons our who good to-us will show
respondere. Unde iterum petimus, gloriose fili, ut ita facere
to-respond whence again we-ask O-glorious son that so to-do
debeatis, ut et nos vobis possimus esse pro praestito beneficio
you-ought that both we to-you may-be-able to-be for the-furnished benefit
debitores, et vos mercedem pro sanctorum ecclesiis habeatis'.
debtors and you a-reward for of-the-saints the-churches may-have

De captivitate filiae regis Agilulfi, et quia rex Agilulf cacano artifices direxit

XX · AGILULF'S DAUGHTER TAKEN; SHIPWRIGHTS FOR THE KHAGAN

Agilulf's daughter is captured at Parma with her husband Godescalc by the army of the patrician Gallicinus and taken to Ravenna. Agilulf sends the khagan shipwrights, with whose ships the khagan storms an island in Thrace.

His diebus capta est filia regis Agilulfi cum viro
in-these days captured was the-daughter of-king Agilulf with husband
suo Gudescalco nomine de civitate Parmensi ab exercitu
her Godescalc by-name from the-city of-Parma by the-army
Gallicini patricii, et ad urbem Ravennatium sunt deducti.
of-Gallicinus patrician and to the-city of-the-Ravennates they-were led-away

Hoc quoque tempore misit Agilulf rex cacano regi
at-this also time sent Agilulf king to-the-khagan king
Avarorum artifices ad faciendas naves, cum quibus isdem
of-the-Avars craftsmen for making ships with which the-same
cacanus insulam quandam in Thracia expugnavit.
khagan island a-certain in Thrace stormed

De basilica beati Iohannis in Modicia, quam Theudelinda regina aedificavit

XXI · THEUDELINDA'S BASILICA AT MONZA

Theudelinda dedicates the church of John the Baptist she has built at Monza, twelve miles from Milan, and adorns and endows it richly. Theoderic had built a palace there because the place is temperate and healthy in summer.

Per idem quoque tempus Theudelinda regina basilicam beati
through the-same also time Theudelinda queen the-basilica of-blessed
Iohannis baptistae, quam in Modicia construxerat, qui locus
John the-Baptist which in Monza she-had-built which place
supra Mediolanum duodecim milibus abest, dedicavit multisque
above Milan by-twelve miles is-distant dedicated and-with-many
ornamentis auri argentique decoravit praediisque sufficienter
ornaments of-gold and-silver adorned and-with-estates sufficiently
ditavit. Quo in loco etiam Theudericus quondam Gothorum
enriched which in place also Theoderic once of-the-Goths
rex palatium construxit, pro eo quod aestivo tempore locus
king a-palace built for this that in-summer time the-place
ipse, utpote vicinus Alpibus, temperatus ac salubris existit.
itself inasmuch-as near to-the-Alps temperate and healthful is

De palatio, quod construxit

XXII · THE PALACE AT MONZA AND LOMBARD DRESS

Theudelinda builds a palace at Monza and has the Lombards' deeds painted in it. The paintings show how they shaved the neck and let the hair fall to the mouth on either side of a parting, wore loose linen clothes with broad colored borders, as the Anglo-Saxons do, and shoes open nearly to the big toe. Later they took to leggings and breeches from the Romans.

Ibi etiam praefata regina sibi palatium condidit, in
there also the-aforesaid queen for-herself a-palace founded in
quo aliquit et de Langobardorum gestis depingi fecit.
which something also about of-the-Lombards the-deeds to-be-painted she-caused
In qua pictura manifeste ostenditur, quomodo Langobardi
in which painting clearly is-shown how the-Lombards
eo tempore comam capitis tondebant, vel qualis illis
at-that time the-hair of-the-head used-to-cut or of-what-sort to-them
vestitus qualisve habitus erat. Siquidem cervicem usque
clothing or-of-what-sort dress was for the-neck all-the-way
ad occipitium radentes nudabant, capillos a facie
to the-back-of-the-head shaving they-bared the-hair from the-face
usque ad os dimissos habentes, quos in utramque
all-the-way to the-mouth let-down having which on each
partem in frontis discrimine dividebant. Vestimenta vero
side at of-the-forehead the-parting they-divided the-garments but
eis erant laxa et maxime linea, qualia Anglisaxones habere
to-them were loose and chiefly linen such-as the-Anglo-Saxons to-have
solent, hornata institis latioribus vario colore contextis.
are-wont adorned with-borders broader with-varied color woven
Calcei vero eis erant usque ad summum pollicem pene
the-shoes but to-them were all-the-way to the-top big-toe nearly

aperti et alternatim laqueis corrigiarum retenti. Postea vero
open and alternately by-laces of-thongs held-back afterward indeed
coeperunt osis uti, super quas equitantes tubrugos birreos
they-began leggings to-use over which riding breeches woolen
mittebant. Sed hoc de Romanorum consuetudine traxerant.
they-put-on but this from of-the-Romans the-custom they-had-drawn

De subversione Patavinae urbis

XXIII · PADUA DESTROYED

Padua has held out against the Lombards until now, but at last it is set on fire and razed by Agilulf's order, though its soldiers are allowed to return to Ravenna.

Usque ad haec tempora Patavium civitas, fortissime
all-the-way to these times Padua the-city most-bravely
militibus repugnantibus, Langobardis rebellavit. Sed
with-the-soldiers resisting against-the-Lombards rebelled but
tandem, iniecto igni, tota flammis vorantibus concremata est,
at-last thrown-in fire whole with-flames devouring burned-up was
et iussu regis Agilulfi ad solum usque destructa est. Milites
and by-order of-king Agilulf to the-ground up-to destroyed was the-soldiers
tamen qui in ea fuerunt Ravennam remeare permissi sunt.
yet who in it were to-Ravenna to-return permitted were

De pace facta cum Avaribus, et quod Langobardi Histriam sunt ingressi

XXIV · PEACE WITH THE AVARS, AND ISTRIA LAID WASTE

Agilulf's envoys return from the khagan with a perpetual peace, and the khagan's envoy tells the Frankish kings to keep peace with the Lombards. Meanwhile the Lombards, with the Avars and Slavs, lay Istria waste with fire and plunder.

Hac tempestate legati Agilulfi regressi a cacano, pacem
at-this time the-envoys of-Agilulf having-returned from the-khagan peace
perpetuam factam cum Avaribus nuntiarunt. Legatus quoque
perpetual made with the-Avars announced the-envoy also
cacani cum eis adveniens, ad Gallias perrexit, denuntians
of-the-khagan with them arriving to the-Gauls went giving-notice
Francorum regibus, ut, sicut cum Avaribus, ita pacem
of-the-Franks to-the-kings that as with the-Avars so peace
habeant cum Langobardis. Inter haec Langobardi cum
they-should-have with the-Lombards among these-things the-Lombards with
Avaribus et Sclavis Histrorum fines ingressi, universa
the-Avars and the-Slavs of-the-Istrians the-borders having-entered all-things
ignibus et rapinis vastavere.
with-fires and plunderings laid-waste

De nativitate Adaloaldi, filii Agilulfi, et de invasione Montis Silicis

XXV · ADALOALD BORN; MONSELICE TAKEN

A son, Adaloald, is born to Agilulf and Theudelinda in the palace at Monza. The Lombards take the fort of Monselice, and Smaragdus, patrician before, returns to Ravenna in place of Gallicinus.

Agilulfo quoque regi tunc nascitur filius de Theudelinda regina
to-Agilulf also king then is-born a-son from Theudelinda queen
in Modiciae palatio, qui Adaloald est appellatus. Sequenti
in of-Monza the-palace who Adaloald was called in-the-following
tempore Langobardi castrum Montis Silicis invaserunt. Per
time the-Lombards the-fort of-Mount Silex invaded through
idem tempus, repulso apud Ravennam Gallicino, rediit
the-same time driven-back at Ravenna Gallicinus returned
Smaracdus, qui prius fuerat Ravennae patricius.
Smaragdus who before had-been of-Ravenna patrician

De morte Mauricii imperatoris

XXVI · THE DEATH OF MAURICE

After reigning twenty-one years, the emperor Maurice is killed with his sons by Phocas, groom of the patrician Priscus. Maurice served the state well and defeated the Avars.

Igitur Mauritius augustus, postquam uno et viginti annis
therefore Maurice augustus after one and twenty years
rexit imperium, cum filiis Theudosio et Tiberio et
he-ruled the-empire with the-sons Theodosius and Tiberius and

Constantino a Focate, qui fuit strator Prisci patricii,
Constantine by Phocas who was groom of-Priscus patrician
occiditur. Fuit autem utilis rei publicae; nam saepe
is-killed he-was moreover useful to-the-thing public for often
contra hostes dimicans victoriam obtenuit. Hunni quoque,
against enemies fighting victory he-obtained the-Huns also
qui et Avares appellantur, eius virtute devicti sunt.
who also Avars are-called by-his power conquered were

De Gaidoaldo et Gisulfo ducibus, et de baptismo Adaloaldi

XXVII · GAIDOALD AND GISULF RECONCILED; ADALOALD BAPTIZED

Gaidoald of Trent and Gisulf of Friuli, earlier at odds with Agilulf, are received back in peace. The boy Adaloald is baptized at Monza and lifted from the font by Secundus of Trent, and Easter falls that year on the seventh of April.

Hoc anno Gaidoaldus dux de Tridento et Gisulfus de Foroiuli,
in-this year Gaidoald duke of Trent and Gisulf of Friuli
cum antea a regis Agilulfi societate discordarent, ab eo in
since before from of-king Agilulf the-alliance had-been-at-variance by him into
pace recepti sunt. Tunc etiam baptizatus est praenominatus
peace received were then also baptized was the-aforenamed
puer Adaloald, filius Agilulfi regis, in Sancto Iohanne in
boy Adaloald son of-Agilulf king in Saint John in
Modicia, et susceptus de fonte est a Secundo servo Christi
Monza and received from the-font was by Secundus servant of-Christ
de Tridento, cuius saepe fecimus mentionem. Fuit autem
of Trent of-whom often we-have-made mention was moreover
festi pascalis dies eo tempore septimo Idus Aprilis.
of-the-feast of-Easter the-day at-that time on-the-seventh Ides of-April

De captu Cremonae et Mantuae, et de morte filiae regis, et de bello Francorum

XXVIII · CREMONA AND MANTUA TAKEN, AND A PEACE

At odds with the Romans over his captive daughter, Agilulf takes and razes Cremona with the khagan's Slavs, then storms Mantua and lets its soldiers go to Ravenna. Smaragdus returns the daughter with her family and a peace is made, but she soon dies in childbirth at Parma. Theudebert and Theuderic fight their uncle Chlothar, and many thousands fall.

Erat autem his diebus adhuc discordia Langobardis cum
there-was moreover in-these days still discord to-the-Lombards with
Romanis propter captivitatem filiae regis. Qua de
the-Romans on-account-of the-captivity of-the-daughter of-the-king which for
causa rex Agilulf egressus Mediolanio mense Iulio, obsedit
reason king Agilulf having-gone-out from-Milan in-the-month of-July besieged
civitatem Cremonensem cum Sclavis, quos ei cacanus rex
the-city of-Cremona with the-Slavs whom to-him the-khagan king
Avarorum in solacium miserat, et cepit eam duodecimo
of-the-Avars in support had-sent and took it on-the-twelfth
Kalendas Septembris et ad solum usque destruxit. Pari etiam
Kalends of-September and to the-ground up-to destroyed in-equal also
modo expugnavit etiam Mantuam, et interruptis muris eius
manner stormed also Mantua and broken-through walls its
cum arietibus, dans veniam militibus qui in ea erant revertendi
with rams giving leave to-the-soldiers who in it were of-returning
Ravennam, ingressusque est in ea die Iduum Septembrium.
to-Ravenna and-entered has into it on-the-day of-the-Ides of-September
Tunc etiam partibus Langobardorum se tradidit castrum
then also to-the-side of-the-Lombards itself handed-over the-fort
quod Vulturina vocatur; milites vero Brexillum oppidum igni
which Vulturina is-called the-soldiers but Brescello the-town with-fire

cremantes, fugierunt. His ita patratis, reddita est filia
burning fled these-things thus accomplished returned was the-daughter
regis a Smaracdo patricio cum viro ac filiis ac rebus
of-the-king by Smaragdus patrician with husband and children and goods
cunctis; factaque est pax mense nono usque Kalendas Aprilis
all and-made was peace in-the-month ninth up-to the-Kalends of-April
indictionis octavae. Filia vero regis mox a Ravenna
of-the-indiction eighth the-daughter but of-the-king soon from Ravenna
Parmam rediit; ob difficultatem partus periclitata, statim
to-Parma returned for the-difficulty of-childbirth endangered at-once
defuncta est. Hoc anno Teudepertus et Theudericus reges
died has in-this year Theudebert and Theuderic kings
Francorum adversus Clotharium patruum suum dimicarunt.
of-the-Franks against Chlothar uncle their fought
In quo certamine ex utraque parte multa milia ceciderunt.
in which contest from each side many thousand fell

De transitu beati Gregorii papae et eius sanctitate

XXIX · GREGORY'S DEATH AND HIS HUMILITY

Gregory dies, and a hard winter and blight follow, as if the world hungers for its teacher. Paul quotes the letter Gregory wrote when he was accused of killing Bishop Malchus: had he been willing to take part in deaths, the Lombards would have no king, dukes, or counts, and Malchus died suddenly the night he dined with the notary Boniface. So humble was the pontiff that he called himself a servant.

Tunc etiam beatus papa Gregorius migravit ad Christum, cum
then also blessed pope Gregory departed to Christ when
iam Focas per indictionem octavam anno regnaret secundo.
now Phocas through the-indiction eighth in-the-year was-reigning second
Cuius in locum ad apostolicatus officium Savinianus est
of-whom into the-place to of-the-apostolate the-office Sabinian was

ordinatus. Fuit autem tunc hiems frigida nimis, et mortuae
ordained there-was moreover then a-winter cold too-much and dead
sunt vites pene in omnibus locis. Messes quoque partim
were the-vines nearly in all places the-harvests also partly
vastatae sunt a muribus, partim percussae uredine evanuerunt.
laid-waste were by mice partly struck by-blight vanished
Debuit etenim tunc mundus fame sitimque pati, quando
it-was-fitting for then the-world hunger and-thirst to-suffer when
recedente tanto doctore animas hominum spiritalis alimoniae
departing so-great a-teacher the-souls of-men of-spiritual nourishment
penuria sitisque ariditas invasit. Libet sane me pauca de
want and-of-thirst dryness invaded it-pleases truly me a-few-things from
eiusdem beati Gregorii papae quadam epistola huic opusculo
of-the-same blessed Gregory pope a-certain letter into-this little-work
inserere, ut possit liquidius agnosci, quam humilis iste
to-insert that it-may-be-able more-clearly to-be-recognized how humble this
vir fuerit quantaeque innocentiae et sanctitatis. Hic denique
man was and-of-how-great innocence and holiness he finally
cum accusatus aput Mauritium augustum et eius filio fuisset,
when accused before Maurice augustus and his son he-had-been
quod Malcum quendam episcopum in custodia pro solidis
that Malchus a-certain bishop in custody for solidi
occidisset, scribens pro hac re epistulam Saviniano suo
he-had-killed writing about this matter a-letter to-Sabinian his
apochrisario, qui erat aput Constantinopolim, inter cetera
apocrisiary who was at Constantinople among other-things
sic ait: ‘Unum est quod breviter suggeras serenissimis
thus says one-thing is which briefly you-should-suggest to-most-serene
dominis nostris, quia, si ego servus eorum in morte vel
lords our that if I servant their in the-death even
Langobardorum me miscere voluissem, hodie Langobardorum
of-the-Lombards myself to-mix had-wished today of-the-Lombards

gens nec regem nec duces nec comites haberet atque
the-nation neither king nor dukes nor counts would-have and
in summa confusione divisa esset. Sed quia Deum timeo,
in utmost confusion divided would-be but because God I-fear
in morte cuiuslibet hominis me miscere formido. Malcus
in the-death of-any man myself to-mix I-dread Malchus
autem isdem episopus neque in custodia fuit neque in aliqua
moreover the-same bishop neither in custody was nor in any
afflictione; sed die qua causam dixit et addictus est,
affliction but on-the-day on-which the-case he-pleaded and sentenced was
nesciente me, a Bonifacio notario in domum eius ductus
not-knowing me by Boniface notary into the-house his led
est ibique prandidit et honoratus est ab eo et nocte subito
was and-there dined and honored was by him and at-night suddenly
mortuus est'. Ecce quantae humilitatis vir iste fuit, qui, cum
dead was behold of-how-great humility man this was who when
esset summus pontifex, se servum nominavit! Ecce quantae
he-was the-highest pontiff himself a-servant named behold of-how-great
innocentiae, qui nec in morte Langobardorum, qui utique et
innocence who not-even in the-death of-the-Lombards who certainly both
increduli erant et omnia devastabant, se noluerit ammisceri!
unbelieving were and all-things were-devastating himself would-not to-be-mixed

De regno Adaloaldi, et de pace facta cum Francis

XXX · ADALOALD RAISED KING; PEACE WITH THE FRANKS

Adaloald is raised king over the Lombards in the circus at Milan before his father and the envoys of Theudebert, king of the Franks. He is betrothed to Theudebert's daughter, and perpetual peace is confirmed with the Franks.

Igitur sequenti aestate mense Iulio levatus est Adaloaldus
therefore in-the-following summer in-the-month of-July raised was Adaloald
rex super Langobardos aput Mediolanum in circo, in praesentia
king over the-Lombards at Milan in the-circus in the-presence
patris sui Agilulfi regis, adstantibus legatis Teudeperti regis
of-father his Agilulf king standing-by the-envoys of-Theudebert king
Francorum, et disponsata est eidem regio puero filia
of-the-Franks and betrothed was to-the-same royal boy the-daughter
regis Teudeperti, et firmata est pax perpetua cum Francis.
of-king Theudebert and confirmed was peace perpetual with the-Franks

Bellum Francorum cum Saxonibus

XXXI · WAR WITH THE SAXONS, AND LIGHTNING AT PAVIA

The Franks fight the Saxons with great slaughter on both sides. At Pavia, in the church of Saint Peter, Peter the cantor is struck by lightning.

Eodem tempore Franci cum Saxonibus pugnantes, magna
at-the-same time the-Franks with the-Saxons fighting great
strages ab utrisque partibus facta est. Apud Ticinum quoque
slaughter from both sides made was at Pavia also
in basilica beati Petri apostoli Petrus cantor fulmine ictus est.
in the-basilica of-blessed Peter apostle Peter the-cantor by-lightning struck was

De pace facta cum Smaracdo patricio, et de captis Tusciae civitatibus

XXXII · PEACE WITH SMARAGDUS, AND CITIES OF TUSCANY TAKEN

Agilulf makes a year's peace with Smaragdus for twelve thousand solidi, and the Lombards take Bagnoregio and Orvieto in Tuscany. A comet appears in April and May, and Agilulf makes peace with the Romans for three years.

Sequenti denique mense Novembrio rex Agilulf pacem
in-the-following finally month of-November king Agilulf peace
fecit cum Smaracdo patricio in annum unum, accipiens
made with Smaragdus patrician for year one receiving
a Romanis duodecim milia solidorum. Civitates quoque
from the-Romans twelve thousand of-solidi the-cities also
Tusciae, hoc est Balneus Regis et Urbs Vetus, a
of-Tuscany that is Bath of-the-King and City Old by
Langobardis invasae sunt. Tunc etiam mense Aprili et
the-Lombards invaded were then also in-the-month of-April and
Maio apparuit in caelo stella quam cometem dicunt. Dehinc
May appeared in the-sky a-star which comet they-call thereafter
Agilulf rex iterum fecit pacem cum Romanis tribus annis.
Agilulf king again made peace with the-Romans for-three years

De morte Severi patriarchae et sacerdotio Iohannis et Candidiani

XXXIII · TWO PATRIARCHS

When Severus dies, the abbot John is ordained patriarch in old Aquileia with the king's consent, and Candidianus at Grado for the Romans. After Candidianus, Epiphanius is ordained at Grado, and from then on there are two patriarchs.

His diebus defuncto Severo patriarcha, ordinatur in loco
in-these days having-died Severus patriarch is-ordained in the-place
eius Iohannes abbas patriarcha in Aquileia vetere, cum
his John abbot patriarch in Aquileia the-old with
consensu regis et Gisulfi ducis. In Gradus quoque
the-consent of-the-king and of-Gisulf duke in Grado also
ordinatus est Romanis Candidianus antistis. Rursum mense
ordained was for-the-Romans Candidianus prelate again in-the-month
Novembrio et Decembrio stella cometis apparuit. Candidiano
of-November and December a-star comet appeared Candidianus
quoque defuncto, aput Grados ordinatur patriarcha Epiphanius,
also having-died at Grado is-ordained patriarch Epiphanius
qui fuerat primicerius notariorum, ab episcopis qui erant sub
who had-been chief of-the-notaries by the-bishops who were under
Romanis. Et ex illo tempore coeperunt duo esse patriarchae.
the-Romans and from that time began two to-be patriarchs

De invasione Neapolitanae civitatis, et de morte Eleutherii falsi imperatoris

XXXIV · JOHN OF CONZA AND ELEUTHERIUS

John of Conza seizes Naples, but the patrician Eleutherius drives him out and kills him. Then Eleutherius, a eunuch, claims the empire, and on his way to Rome he is killed by soldiers at Luceoli and his head is sent to Constantinople.

Hac aetate Iohannes Consinus invasit Neapolim. Quem de
in-this age John of-Conza invaded Naples whom from
eadem civitate non multos post dies Eleutherius patricius expulit
the-same city not many after days Eleutherius patrician drove-out
eumque interfecit. Post haec isdem Eleutherius patricius
and-him killed after these-things the-same Eleutherius patrician
eunuchus imperii iura suscepit. Qui dum a Ravenna
eunuch of-the-empire the-rights took-up who while from Ravenna
Romam pergeret, in castro Luceolis a militibus interfectus
to-Rome was-going in the-fort Luceoli by the-soldiers killed
est, caputque eius Constantinopolim imperatori delatum est.
was and-the-head his to-Constantinople to-the-emperor brought was

De pace facta cum imperatore

XXXV · PEACE WITH THE EMPEROR

Agilulf sends his notary Stablicianus to the emperor Phocas. He returns with imperial envoys, a year's peace is made, and the envoys give Agilulf imperial gifts.

Hac etiam tempestate misit rex Agilulf Stablicianum
at-this also time sent king Agilulf Stablicianus
notarium suum Constantinopolim ad Focatem imperatorem.
notary his to-Constantinople to Phocas emperor
Qui rediens cum legatis imperatoris, facta pace annuali,
who returning with the-envoys of-the-emperor made peace for-a-year
Agilulfo regi idem legati imperialia munera optulere.
to-Agilulf king the-same envoys imperial gifts offered

De Focate augusto et eius nece et imperio Eraclii

XXXVI · PHOCAS, THE PANTHEON, AND HERACLIUS

Phocas reigns eight years after killing Maurice. At Pope Boniface's request he decrees that the Roman see is head of all churches, and at another Boniface's request makes the Pantheon a church of Mary and all the martyrs. In his time the Greens and Blues fight a civil war and the Persians take Jerusalem and the Lord's cross, until Heraclian of Africa kills him and Heraclius takes the empire.

Focas igitur, ut praemissum est, extincto Mauricio eiusque
Phocas therefore as set-forth it-is killed Maurice and-his
filiis, Romanorum regnum invadens, per octo annorum
sons of-the-Romans the-kingdom invading through eight of-years
curricula principatus est. Hic rogante papa Bonifacio statuit,
the-courses ruled has he asking pope Boniface decreed
sedem Romanae et apostolicae ecclesiae caput esse omnium
the-see of-the-Roman and apostolic church the-head to-be of-all

ecclesiarum, quia ecclesia Constantinopolitana prima se
churches because the-church of-Constantinople first itself
omnium ecclesiarum scribebat. Idem alio papa Bonifacio
of-all churches was-writing the-same another pope Boniface
petente iussit, in veteri fano quod pantheum vocabatur,
seeking ordered in the-old shrine which Pantheon was-called
ablatis idolatriae sordibus, ecclesiam beatae semper virginis
removed of-idolatry the-filth a-church of-blessed ever virgin
Mariae et omnium martyrum fieri, ut, ubi quondam
Mary and of-all martyrs to-be-made that where once
omnium non deorum, sed demoniorum cultus agebatur, ibi
of-all not of-gods but of-demons the-worship was-carried-on there
deinceps omnium fieret memoria sanctorum. Huius tempore
thereafter of-all might-be the-memory of-the-saints in-his time
Prasini et Veneti per orientem et Aegyptum civile bellum
the-Greens and the-Blues through the-east and Egypt civil war
faciunt ac sese mutua caede prosternunt. Persae
make and themselves with-mutual slaughter lay-low the-Persians
quoque adversus rem publicam gravissima bella gerentes,
also against the-thing public very-heavy wars waging
multas Romanorum provincias et ipsam Hierusolimam
many of-the-Romans provinces and itself Jerusalem
auferunt. Et destruentes ecclesias, sancta quoque profanantes,
take-away and destroying churches holy-things also profaning
inter ornamenta locorum sanctorum vel communium etiam
among the-ornaments of-places holy or common even
vexillum dominicae crucis abducunt. Contra hunc Focatem
the-banner of-the-Lord's cross lead-away against this Phocas
Eraclianus, qui Africam regebat, rebellavit, atque cum exercitu
Heraclian who Africa was-ruling rebelled and with an-army

veniens, eum regno vitaque privavit remque publicam
coming him of-kingdom and-of-life deprived and-the-thing public
Romanam Eraclius, eiusdem filius, regendam suscepit.
Roman Heraclius of-the-same the-son to-be-ruled took-up

De morte Gisulfi ducis et depraedatione Foroiulanae urbis et ceteris malis quae Langobardi ab Hunnis sunt perpessi

XXXVII · ROMILDA BETRAYS FRIULI, AND PAUL'S ANCESTORS

The khagan invades Venetia and kills Duke Gisulf, and Gisulf's widow Romilda, desiring him, opens Friuli to him; he keeps her one night and then has her impaled, while her daughters keep their chastity with rotting chicken flesh. The boy Grimoald, captured fleeing, strikes his captor dead and escapes. Paul's great-grandfather Lopichis flees the Avars, led by a wolf and a dream, and rebuilds his father's house.

Circa haec tempora rex Avarum, quem sua lingua cacanum
around these times the-king of-the-Avars whom in-their tongue khagan
appellant, cum innumerabili multitudine veniens, Venetiarum
they-call with innumerable multitude coming of-the-Venetias
fines ingressus est. Huic Gisulfus Foroiulanus dux cum
the-borders entered has to-him Gisulf of-Friuli duke with
Langobardis, quos habere poterat, audacter occurrit; sed
the-Lombards whom to-have he-could boldly ran-to-meet but
quamvis forti animositate contra inmensam multitudinem
although with-strong spirit against the-immense multitude
bellum cum paucis gereret, undique tamen circumseptus, cum
war with few he-waged on-all-sides yet surrounded with
omnibus pene suis extinctus est. Uxor vero eiusdem Gisulfi
all nearly his-men killed he-was the-wife but of-the-same Gisulf
nomine Romilda cum Langobardis qui evaserant sive eorum
by-name Romilda with the-Lombards who had-escaped or of-them

uxoribus et filiis qui in bello perierant, intra murorum
the-wives and children who in war had-perished within of-the-walls
Foroiulani castri muniit septa. Huic erant filii Taso et
of-the-Friulian fort fortified enclosures to-him were sons Taso and
Cacco iam aduliscentes, Raduald vero et Grimuald adhuc
Cacco already youths Radoald but and Grimoald still
in puerili aetate constituti. Habebat vero et filias quattuor,
in boyish age placed he-had indeed also daughters four
quarum una Appa, alia Gaila vocabatur, duarum vero nomina
of-whom one Appa another Gaila was-called of-two but the-names
non retinemus. Communierant se quoque Langobardi
not we-retain had-fortified themselves also the-Lombards
et in reliquis castris quae his vicina erant, hoc est
and in the-remaining forts which to-these neighboring were that is
in Cormones, Nemas, Osopo, Artenia, Reunia, Glemona, vel
in Cormons Nimis Osoppo Artegna Ragogna Gemona or
etiam in Ibligine, cuius positio omnino inexpugnabilis existit.
also in Invillino whose position altogether impregnable is
Pari etiam modo et in reliquis castellis, ne Hunnis,
in-equal also manner and in the-remaining fortresses lest to-the-Huns
hoc est Avaribus, praeda fierent, se communivere.
that is to-the-Avars booty they-should-become themselves fortified
Avares vero per omnes Foroiulanorum fines discurrentes,
the-Avars but through all of-the-Friulians the-borders running-about
omnia incendiis et rapinis vastantes, Foroiulanum oppidum
all-things with-burnings and plunderings laying-waste the-Friulian town
obsidione claudunt et totis viribus expugnare moliuntur.
by-siege shut-in and with-all strength to-storm strive
Horum rex, id est cacanus, dum circa muros armatus
of-these the-king that is the-khagan while around the-walls armed
cum magno equitatu perambularet, ut, qua ex parte urbem
with great cavalry he-was-riding-about that which from side the-city

facilius expugnare posset, inquireret, hunc Romilda de
more-easily to-storm he-might-be-able he-might-inquire him Romilda from
muris prospiciens, cum eum cerneret iuvenili aetate florentem,
the-walls looking-out when him she-saw in-youthful age flourishing
meretrix nefaria concupivit, eique mox per nuntium
the-harlot wicked desired and-to-him soon through a-messenger
mandavit, ut, si eam in matrimonium sumeret, ipsa eidem
sent-word that if her into marriage he-would-take she to-the-same
civitatem cum omnibus qui aderant traderet. Quod rex
the-city with all who were-present would-hand-over which the-king
barbarus audiens, eidem malignitatis dolo quod mandaverat
barbarian hearing to-the-same of-malice by-deceit what she-had-sent-word
se facturum promisit eamque se in matrimonium
himself to-be-about-to-do promised and-her himself in marriage
accipere spopondit. Illa vero nihil morata, portas Foroiulensis
to-receive pledged she but nothing having-delayed the-gates of-the-Friulian
castri aperuit et ad suam cunctorumque qui aderant
fort opened and to her and-of-all who were-present
perniciem hostem introduxit. Ingressi vero Avares cum rege
destruction the-enemy brought-in having-entered but the-Avars with king
suo Forumiulii, universa quae invenire poterant rapinis
their Friuli all-things which to-find they-could with-plunderings
diripiunt; ipsamque urbem flammis concremantes, universos
plunder and-itself the-city with-flames burning-up all
quos reppererant captivos adducunt, fallaciter tamen eis
whom they-had-found captive lead-off deceitfully yet to-them
promittentes, quod eos, unde digressi fuerant, Pannoniae
promising that them whence departed they-had of-Pannonia
in finibus conlocarent. Qui cum patriam revertentes ad
in the-borders they-would-settle who when the-fatherland returning to
campum quem Sacrum nominant pervenissent, omnes qui iam
the-plain which Sacred they-name had-come all who already

in maiori aetate constituti erant Langobardos gladio
in more-advanced age placed were the-Lombards with-the-sword
perimere statuunt, mulieres vero et parvulos captivitatis sorte
to-kill decide the-women but and little-ones of-captivity by-lot
dividunt. Taso vero et Cacco seu Raduald, filii Gisulfi et
divide Taso but and Cacco or Radoald sons of-Gisulf and
Romildae, cum hanc Avarorum malitiam cognovissent, statim
of-Romilda when this of-the-Avars malice had-learned at-once
ascensis equis fugam arripiunt. E quibus unus Grimoaldum
mounted horses flight seize of which one Grimoald
puerulum fratrem suum, dum existimaret utpote parvulum
little-boy brother his since he-thought inasmuch-as little
super equum currentem se tenere non posse, melius
upon a-horse running himself to-hold not to-be-able better
ducens eundem gladio perimere quam captivitatis iugum
reckoning the-same with-the-sword to-kill than of-captivity the-yoke
sustinere, eum occidere voluit. Cum igitur ut eum percuteret
to-bear him to-kill wished when therefore that him he-might-strike
lanceam elevasset, puer lacrimans exclamavit, dicens: 'Noli me
the-lance he-had-raised the-boy weeping cried-out saying do-not me
pungere, quia possum me super equum tenere'. Qui iniecta
pierce because I-can myself upon a-horse to-hold who thrown
manu eum per brachium adprehendens super nudum equi
hand him by the-arm seizing upon the-bare of-the-horse
dorsum posuit eundemque ut si posset se continere
back put and-the-same that if he-could himself to-hold-on
hortatus est. Puer vero frenum equi manu arripiens,
exhorted has the-boy but the-bridle of-the-horse with-hand seizing
fugientes germanos et ipse secutus est. Quo conperto, Avares
fleeing brothers also himself followed has which learned the-Avars
mox ascensis equis eos persecuti sunt; sed reliquis veloci fuga
soon mounted horses them pursued have but the-rest in-swift flight

evadentibus, Grimoald puerulus ab uno eorum, qui velocius
escaping Grimoald the-little-boy by one of-them who more-swiftly
cucurrerat, capitur. Nec tamen eum suus conprehensor
had-run is-caught nor yet him his captor
gladio ferire propter parvitatem aetatis dignatus est,
with-the-sword to-strike on-account-of the-smallness of-age deigned has
sed sibi eundem potius serviturum reservavit. Cumque
but for-himself the-same rather about-to-serve reserved and-when
eum ad castra revertens adprehenso eiusdem equi freno
him to the-camp returning seized of-the-same horse the-bridle
reduceret deque tam nobili praeda exultaret — erat enim
he-was-leading-back and-over so noble a-prize was-exulting was for
ipse puerulus eleganti forma, micantibus oculis, lacteo
he-himself little-boy of-elegant beauty with-sparkling eyes with-milk-white
crine perfusus—; qui cum se captivum trahi doleret,
hair suffused who when himself captive to-be-dragged grieved

ingentes animos angusto in pectore versans,
huge spirits narrow in breast turning

ensem, qualem in illa aetate habere poterat, vagina exemit
a-sword such-as at that age to-have he-could from-the-sheath drew
seque trahentem Avarem, quantulo adnisu valuit, capitis
and-himself dragging the-Avar with-what-little effort he-was-able of-the-head
in vertice percussit. Moxque ad cerebrum ictus perveniens,
on the-crown struck and-soon to the-brain the-blow reaching
hostis ab equo deiectus est. Puer vero Grimuald verso
the-enemy from the-horse thrown-down was the-boy but Grimoald turned
equo fugam laetabundus arripiens, tandem fratribus iunctus
the-horse flight rejoicing seizing at-last to-the-brothers joined
est eisque liberatione sua, nuntiato insuper hostis
was and-to-them by-deliverance his announced moreover of-the-enemy

interitu, inaestimabile gaudium fecit. Avares vero omnes
the-destruction inestimable joy made the-Avars but all
Langobardos qui iam in virili aetate erant gladio
the-Lombards who already in manly age were with-the-sword
perimunt, mulieres vero et parvulos captivitatis iugo
kill the-women but and little-ones of-captivity to-the-yoke
addicunt. Romildam vero, quae totius malitiae caput extitit,
assign Romilda but who of-the-whole malice the-head stood
rex Avarum propter iusiurandum, sicut ei spoponderat,
the-king of-the-Avars on-account-of the-oath as to-her be-had-pledged
nocte una quasi in matrimonio habuit, novissime vero
for-night one as-if in marriage had at-the-last but
duodecim Avaribus tradidit, qui eam per totam noctem
to-twelve Avars handed-over who her through the-whole night
vicibus sibi succedentes libidine vexarent. Postmodum
by-turns themselves succeeding with-lust should-torment afterward
quoque palum in medio campum configi praecipiens,
also a-stake in the-middle of-the-plain to-be-fixed ordering
eandem in eius acumine inseri mandavit, haec insuper
the-same on its point to-be-impaled commanded these-things moreover
exprobrando inquiens: 'Talem te dignum est maritum habere'.
in-reproach saying such you worthy it-is a-husband to-have
Igitur dira proditrix patriae tali exitio periit, quae
therefore the-dread betrayer of-the-fatherland by-such an-end perished who
amplius suae libidini quam civium et consanguineorum
more for-her lust than of-the-citizens and of-the-kinsfolk
saluti prospexit. Filiae vero eius non matris libidinem
for-the-safety provided the-daughters but her not of-the-mother the-lust
secutae, sed castitatis amore studentes ne a barbaris
having-followed but of-chastity by-love striving lest by the-barbarians
contaminarentur, crudorum pullorum carnes sibi inter
they-should-be-defiled of-raw chickens the-flesh for-themselves between

mammas sub fascia posuerunt, quae ex calore putrefactae
the-breasts under the-band put which from the-heat putrefied
odorem foetidum exalabant. Cumque eas vellent Avares
an-odor fetid breathed-out and-when them wished the-Avars
contingere, non sustinentes foetorem, putabant eas naturaliter
to-touch not enduring the-stench they-thought them naturally
ita foetere, procul ab eis cum execratione recedentes atque
so to-stink far from them with cursing withdrawing and
dicentes, omnes Langobardas foetidas esse. Hac igitur arte
saying all Lombard-women fetid to-be by-this therefore art
Avarorum libidinem puellae nobiles evadentes, et ipsae
of-the-Avars the-lust the-girls noble escaping both they-themselves
castae servatae sunt et utile servandae castitatis, si quid
chaste kept were and a-useful of-keeping chastity if anything
tale feminis contigerit, mandaverunt exemplum. Quae postea
such to-women should-happen handed-down example who afterward
per diversas regiones venundatae, iuxta nobilitatem suam
through various regions sold according-to nobility their
dignis sunt nuptiis potitae. Nam una earum Alamannorum
worthy have nuptials obtained for one of-them of-the-Alamanni
regi, alia vero dicitur Baioariorum principi nupsisse.
to-the-king another but is-said of-the-Bavarians to-the-prince to-have-married
Exigit vero nunc locus, postposita generali historia, pauca
demands indeed now the-place set-aside the-general history a-few-things
etiam privatim de mea, qui haec scribo, genealogia
also privately about my who these-things write genealogy
retexere, et quia res ita postolat paulo superius
to-unweave and since the-matter so demands a-little higher
narrationis ordinem replicare. Eo denique tempore quo
of-the-narration the-order to-unfold at-that finally time in-which
Langobardorum gens de Pannoniis ad Italiam venit
of-the-Lombards the-nation from the-Pannonias to Italy came

Leupchis meus abavus ex eodem Langobardorum
Leupchis my great-great-grandfather from the-same of-the-Lombards
genere cum eis pariter adventavit. Qui postquam aliquod
race with them together arrived who after some
annos in Italia vixit, diem claudens extremum, quinque ex
years in Italy he-lived the-day closing last five from
se genitos filios adhuc parvulos reliquit; quos tempestas
himself begotten sons still little left whom storm
ista captivitatis, de qua nunc diximus, conprehendens, omnes
that of-captivity of which now we-have-said seizing all
ex castro Foroiulensi in Avarorum patriam exsoles deduxit.
from the-fort of-Friuli into of-the-Avars the-fatherland exiles led-off
Qui cum per multos annos in eadem regione captivitatis
who when through many years in the-same region of-captivity
miseriam sustinuissent et iam ad virilem pervenissent aetatem,
the-misery had-endured and now to manly had-come age
ceteris quattuor, quorum nomina non retinemus, in captivitatis
the-other four whose names not we-retain in of-captivity
angustia persistentibus, quintus eorum germanus nomine
the-straits persisting the-fifth of-them brother by-name
Lopichis, qui noster postea proavus extitit, inspirante
Lopichis who our afterward great-grandfather became inspiring
sibi, ut credimus, misericordiae auctore, captivitatis iugum
him as we-believe of-mercy the-author of-captivity the-yoke
abicere statuit et ad Italiam, quo gentem Langobardorum
to-throw-off determined and to Italy where the-nation of-the-Lombards
residere meminerat, tendere atque ad libertatis iura studuit
to-reside he-remembered to-make-for and to of-liberty the-rights strove
reppedare. Qui cum adgressus fugam adripuisset, faretram
to-return who when having-set-out flight had-seized a-quiver
tantum et arcum et aliquantulum cibi propter viaticum
only and a-bow and a-little of-food for journey-provision

gerens, nesciretque omnino quo pergeret, ei lupus adveniens
carrying and-knew-not at-all where he-should-go to-him a-wolf arriving
comes itineris et ductor effectus est. Qui cum ante eum
companion of-the-journey and guide made was which when before him
pergeret et frequenter post se respiceret et cum stante
went and often behind itself looked-back and with-him standing
subsisteret atque cum pergente praeiret, intellexit, sibi
stood-still and with-him going went-ahead he-understood to-himself
eum divinitus datum esse, ut ei iter, quod nesciebat,
it by-divine-will given to-be that to-him the-way which he-did-not-know
ostenderet. Cum per aliquod dies per montium
it-might-show when through some days through of-the-mountains
solitudines hoc modo pergerent, panis eidem viatori, quem
the-solitudes in-this manner they-went the-bread to-the-same traveler which
exiguum habuerat, omnino defecit. Qui cum ieiunans iter
scanty he-had-had altogether failed who when fasting the-journey
carperet et iam fame tabefactus defecisset, tetendit
he-was-taking and now with-hunger wasted had-failed stretched
arcum suum et eundem lupum, ut eum in cibum sumere
bow his and the-same wolf that it for food to-take
possit, sagitta interficere voluit. Sed lupus idem ictum
he-might-be-able with-an-arrow to-kill wished but wolf the-same the-blow
ferientis praecavens, sic ab eius visione elapsus est. Ipse
of-the-striker guarding-against thus from his sight slipped-away has he-himself
autem, recedente eodem lupo, nesciens quo pergeret, insuper
moreover withdrawing the-same wolf not-knowing where he-should-go moreover
famis penuria nimium debilis effectus, cum iam de vita
of-hunger by-want too-much weak made when now of life
desperaret, sese in terram proiciens, obdormivit; viditque
he-despaired himself onto the-ground throwing fell-asleep and-saw
quendam virum in somnis talia sibi verba dicentem: ‘Surge!
a-certain man in dreams such to-himself words saying rise-up

Quid dormis? Arripe viam in hanc partem contra quam
why do-you-sleep seize the-way in this direction against which
pedes tenes; illac etenim est Italia, ad quam tendis'. Qui
the-feet you-hold there for is Italy to which you-make-for who
statim surgens, in illam partem quam in somnis audierat
at-once rising into that direction which in dreams he-had-heard
pergere coepit; nec mora, ad habitaculum hominum pervenit.
to-go began nor delay to a-dwelling of-men he-came
Erat enim Sclavorum habitatio in illis locis. Quem cum una
was for of-the-Slavs a-habitation in those places whom when one
mulier iam vetula vidisset, statim intellexit, eum fugitivum
woman already little-old had-seen at-once she-understood him a-fugitive
esse et famis penuria laborare. Ducta autem misericordia
to-be and of-hunger by-want to-labor led moreover by-mercy
super eum, abscondit eum in domo sua et secreto paulatim
over him hid him in house her and secretly little-by-little
ei victum ministravit, ne, si ei usque ad saturitatem
to-him food supplied lest if to-him all-the-way to fullness
alimoniam praeberet, eius vitam funditus extingueret.
nourishment she-should-furnish his life utterly she-should-extinguish
Denique sic conpetenter ei pastum praebuit, quousque
finally so suitably to-him food she-furnished until
ipse recuperatus vires accipere potuisset. Cumque eum iam
he-himself recovered strength to-receive had-been-able and-when him now
validum ad iter faciendum vidisset, datis ei cibariis, ad
strong for journey to-be-made she-had-seen given to-him provisions to
quam partem tendere deberet, admonuit. Qui post aliquod
which direction to-make-for he-ought she-advised who after some
dies Italiam ingressus, ad domum in qua ortus fuerat
days Italy having-entered to the-house in which born he-had-been
pervenit; quae ita deserta erat, ut non solum tectum non
came which so deserted was that not only a-roof not

haberet, sed etiam rubis et sentibus plena esset. Quibus
it-had but even with-brambles and thorns full it-was which
ille succisis intra eosdem parietes vastam hornum repperiens,
he cut-down within the-same walls a-vast ash finding
in ea sua faretra suspendit. Qui postea consanguineorum et
on it his quiver hung who afterward of-kinsfolk and
amicorum suorum muneribus dotatus, et domum reaedificavit
of-friends his with-gifts endowed both the-house rebuilt
et uxorem duxit; sed nihil de rebus quas genitor suus
and a-wife married but nothing of the-things which father his
habuerat, exclusus iam ab his qui eas invaserant longa
had-had shut-out now by those who them had-invaded by-long
et diuturna possessione, conquirere potuit. Iste, ut iam
and lasting possession to-recover was-able he as already
superius praemisi, extitit meus proavus. Hic etenim genuit
above I-set-forth was my great-grandfather he for begot
avum meum Arichis, Arichis vero patrem meum Warnefrit,
grandfather my Arichis Arichis but father my Warnefrit
Warnefrit autem ex Theudelinda coniuge genuit me Paulum
Warnefrit moreover from Theudelinda wife begot me Paul
meumque germanum Arichis, qui nostrum avum cognomine
and-my brother Arichis who our grandfather by-surname
retulit. Haec paucis de propriae genealogiae serie
brought-back these-things in-few from of-my-own genealogy the-series
delibatis, nunc generalis historiae revertamur ad tramitem.
touched-on now of-the-general history let-us-return to the-path

De ducato et de morte Tasonis et Cacconis

XXXVIII · TASO AND CACCO KILLED BY TREACHERY

Gisulf's sons Taso and Cacco rule Friuli and take tribute from the Slavs of Zellia. The patrician Gregory lures them to Oderzo, promising to cut Taso's beard and adopt him, shuts the gates, and sets soldiers on them, and they die fighting after a great slaughter. Gregory has Taso's head brought and cuts off its beard as he swore.

Mortuo, ut diximus, Gisulfo duce Foroiulensi, Taso et Cacco,
dead as we-have-said Gisulf duke of-Friuli Taso and Cacco
filii eius, eundem ducatum regendum susceperunt. Hi suo
sons his the-same duchy to-be-ruled took-up these in-their
tempore Sclavorum regionem quae Zellia appellatur usque
time of-the-Slavs the-region which Zellia is-called all-the-way
ad locum qui Medaria dicitur possiderunt. Unde usque ad
to the-place which Medaria is-called possessed whence all-the-way to
tempora Ratchis ducis idem Sclavi pensionem Foroiulanis
the-times of-Ratchis duke the-same Slavs tribute to-the-Friulian
ducibus persolverunt. Hos duos fratres Gregorius patricius
dukes paid these two brothers Gregory patrician
Romanorum in civitate Opitergio dolosa fraude peremit. Nam
of-the-Romans in the-city Oderzo by-deceitful fraud killed for
promittens Tasoni, ut ei barbam, sicut moris est, incideret
promising to-Taso that for-him the-beard as of-custom is he-would-cut
eumque sibi filium faceret, ipse Taso cum Caccone
and-him to-himself a-son would-make he-himself Taso with Cacco
germano suo et electis iuvenibus ad eundem Gregorium
brother his and chosen young-men to the-same Gregory
nihil mali metuens advenit. Qui mox cum Opitergium cum
nothing of-evil fearing came who soon when Oderzo with
suis esset ingressus, statim isdem patricius civitatis portas
his-men he-had entered at-once the-same patrician of-the-city the-gates

claudi praecepit et armatos milites super Tasonem eiusque
to-be-shut ordered and armed soldiers upon Taso and-his
socios misit. Quod Taso cum suis conperiens, audacter
companions sent which Taso with his-men learning boldly
se ad proelium praeparavit; ultimumque sibi data pace
himself for battle prepared and-last to-each-other given peace
valedicentes, per singulas civitatis plateas hac illacque
saying-farewell through the-individual of-the-city streets this-way and-that
dispersi, quoscumque obvios habere poterant trucidantes,
scattered whomever in-the-way to-have they-could slaughtering
cum magnam stragem de Romanis fecissent, ad extremum
when great slaughter of the-Romans they-had-made at the-last
etiam ipsi perempti sunt. Gregorius vero patricius propter
also themselves killed were Gregory but patrician on-account-of
iusiurandum quod dederat caput Tasonis sibi deferri
the-oath which he-had-given the-head of-Taso to-himself to-be-brought
iubens, eius barbam, sicut promiserat, periurus abscidit.
ordering his beard as he-had-promised perjured cut-off

De Grasulfo duce Foroiulano, et de advento Rodoaldi et Grimoaldi in Beneventum

XXXIX · GRASULF, AND RADOALD AND GRIMOALD AT BENEVENTO

Gisulf's brother Grasulf becomes duke of Friuli, and Radoald and Grimoald, scorning to live under him, row to Benevento, where Arichis receives them as sons. Garibald of the Bavarians is defeated by the Slavs, but the Bavarians recover and drive them out.

His ita peremptis, dux Foroiulanis Grasulfus, Gisulfi
these thus killed duke for-the-Friulians Grasulf of-Gisulf
germanus, constituitur. Radoald vero et Grimoald despectui
the-brother is-appointed Radoald but and Grimoald in-contempt
ducentes sub patrui sui Grasulfi potestate degere, cum
holding under of-uncle their Grasulf the-power to-live since
essent iam prope iuvenilem aetatem, ascensa navicula
they-were now near youthful age mounted a-little-boat
remigantes, ad Beneventi fines perveniunt; et exinde ad
rowing to of-Benevento the-borders come and thence to
Arichis Beneventanorum ducem, suum quondam paedagogum,
Arichis of-the-Beneventans duke their once tutor
properantes, ab eo gratissime suscepti et filiorum loco
hastening by him most-gladly received and of-sons in-the-place
sunt habiti. His temporibus mortuo Tassilone duce
were held in-these times dead Tassilo duke
Baiuariorum, filius eius Garibaldus in Agunto a Sclavis
of-the-Bavarians son his Garibald at Aguntum by the-Slavs
devictus est, et Baioariorum termini depraedantur. Resumptis
conquered was and of-the-Bavarians the-bounds are-plundered resumed

tamen Baioarii viribus et praedas ab hostibus excutiunt
yet the-Bavarians strength both the-booty from the-enemies shake-off
et hostes de suis finibus pepulerunt.
and the-enemies from their borders drove

De facta pace cum imperatore et Francis et populatione Histriae et morte Gundoaldi

XL · PEACE, ISTRIA PLUNDERED, AND DEATHS

Agilulf renews his peace with the emperor and the Franks, and the Slavs plunder Istria. Secundus, who wrote a short history of the Lombards, dies at Trent. Theudebert, king of the Franks, is killed, and Gundoald, Theudelinda's brother, duke at Asti, dies by an arrow from no one knows whom.

Rex vero Agilulf pacem cum imperatore in annum unum
king but Agilulf peace with the-emperor for year one
itemque in alterum faciens, cum Francis quoque iterato pacis
and-likewise for another making with the-Franks also again of-peace
concordiam renovavit. Hoc nihilominus anno Sclavi Histriam,
the-concord renewed in-this nonetheless year the-Slavs Istria
interfectis militibus, lacrimabiliter depraedati sunt. Sequenti
killed the-soldiers lamentably plundered have in-the-following
quoque mense Martio defunctus est aput Tridentum Secundus
also month of-March died has at Trent Secundus
servus Christi, de quo saepe iam diximus, qui usque ad
servant of-Christ about whom often already we-have-said who all-the-way to
sua tempora succinctam de Langobardorum gestis conposuit
his times a-succinct of of-the-Lombards the-deeds composed
historiolam. Eo tempore rex Agilulf cum imperatore
little-history at-that time king Agilulf with the-emperor
iterato pacem conposuit. Occisus quoque est his diebus
again peace settled killed also was in-these days

Theudepertus rex Francorum, et facta est pugna gravissima
Theudebert king of-the-Franks and made was a-battle very-heavy
inter eos. Gundualdetiam, germanus Theudelindae reginae,
among them Gundoald also brother of-Theudelinda queen
qui erat dux in civitate Astensi, nemine scientem auctorem
who was duke in the-city of-Asti no-one knowing the-author
mortis ipsius, hoc ipso in tempore sagitta ictus interiit.
of-the-death of-him this very in time by-an-arrow struck perished

De morte Agilulfi et regno Adaloaldi et eius expulsione et regno Arioaldi

XLI · AGILULF DIES; ADALOALD, ARIOALD, AND COLUMBANUS

Agilulf dies after twenty-five years, leaving his young son Adaloald with Theudelinda, and under them the churches are restored. After ten years Adaloald goes mad and is deposed, and Arioald becomes king, of whom nothing is known. The Irish Columbanus comes from Luxeuil to Italy and builds the monastery of Bobbio, which princes and Lombards endow.

Igitur Agilulf rex, qui et Ago est appellatus, postquam
therefore Agilulf king who also Ago was called after
viginti et quinque annos regnaverat, diem clausit extremum,
twenty and five years he-had-reigned the-day closed last
relicto in regno filio suo Adaloald admodum puerum
left in the-kingdom son his Adaloald very a-boy
cum Teudelinda matre. Sub his ecclesiae restauratae sunt
with Theudelinda mother under these the-churches restored were
et multae dationes per loca venerabilia largitae. Sed dum
and many grants through places venerable bestowed but when
Adaloald eversa mente insaniret, postquam cum matre decem
Adaloald overturned in-mind was-raving after with mother ten

regnaverat annis, de regno eiectus est, et a Langobardis
he-had-reigned years from the-kingdom thrown-out was and by the-Lombards
in eius loco Arioald substitutus est. De cuius regis gestis ad
in his place Arioald substituted was of which king the-deeds to
nostram notitiam aliquid minime pervenit. Circa haec tempora
our knowledge anything by-no-means has-come around these times
beatus Columbanus ex Scottorum genere oriundus, postquam
blessed Columbanus from of-the-Irish race sprung after
in Gallia in loco qui Luxovium dicitur monasterium
in Gaul in the-place which Luxeuil is-called a-monastery
construxerat, in Italiam veniens, a Langobardorum rege
he-had-built into Italy coming by of-the-Lombards the-king
gratanter exceptus est, coenobiumque quod Bobium appellatur
gladly received was and-the-monastery which Bobbio is-called
in Alpibus Cottiis aedificavit, quod quadraginta milibus ab
in the-Alps Cottian built which by-forty miles from
urbe dividitur Ticinensi. Quo in loco et multae possessiones
the-city is-separated of-Pavia which in place also many possessions
a singulis principibus sive Langobardis largitae sunt, et
by individual princes or Lombards bestowed were and
magna ibi facta est congregatio monachorum.
great there made was a-congregation of-monks

De morte Arioaldi et regno Rothari, et quia dux Arichis filium suum Aionem ad regem direxit

XLII · ROTHARI, HIS EDICT, AND AIO'S MADNESS

After Arioald, Rothari becomes king, strong and just but an Arian, and in his time most cities have two bishops. He puts the Lombards' remembered laws in writing as the Edict. Arichis of Benevento sends his son Aio to the king, and at Ravenna the Romans give Aio a potion that leaves him never fully sane.

Igitur Arioald postquam super Langobardos duodecim annis
therefore Arioald after over the-Lombards twelve years
regnum tenuit, ab hac luce subtractus est; Langobardorum
the-kingdom held from this light withdrawn was of-the-Lombards
regnum Rothari genere Arodus suscepit. Fuit autem viribus
the-kingdom Rothari by-race Harod took-up he-was moreover in-strength
fortis et iustitiae tramitem sequens, sed tamen fidei
strong and of-justice the-path following but yet of-faith
christianae non rectam lineam tenens, Arrianae hereseos
Christian not the-right line holding of-the-Arian of-heresy
perfidia maculatus est. Siquidem Arriani minorem Patri
by-the-perfidy stained was for the-Arians less than-the-Father
Filium, Spiritum quoque sanctum minorem Patri et
the-Son the-Spirit also holy less than-the-Father and
Filio ad suam perniciem dicunt; nos autem catholici Patrem
the-Son to their destruction say we moreover catholics the-Father
et Filium et Spiritum sanctum in tribus personis unum et
and the-Son and the-Spirit holy in three persons one and
verum Deum aequali potentia eademque gloria confitemur.
true God with-equal power and-the-same glory confess
Huius temporibus pene per omnes civitates regni eius
in-his times nearly through all the-cities of-kingdom his

duo episcopi erant, unus catholicus et alter Arrianus.
two bishops there-were one catholic and the-other Arian
In civitate quoque Ticinensi usque nunc ostenditur, ubi
in the-city also of-Pavia up-to now is-shown where
Arrianus episcopus aput basilica sancti Eusebii residens
the-Arian bishop at the-basilica of-holy Eusebius residing
baptisterium habuit, cum tamen ecclesiae catholicae alius
a-baptistery had while yet in-the-church catholic another
episcopus resideret. Qui tamen Arrianus episcopus, qui in
bishop resided who yet Arian bishop who in
eadem civitate fuit, Anastasius nomine, ad fidem catholicam
the-same city was Anastasius by-name to the-faith catholic
conversus, Christi postea ecclesiam rexit. Hic Rothari rex
converted of-Christ afterward the-church ruled this Rothari king
Langobardorum leges, quas sola memoria et usu retinebant,
of-the-Lombards the-laws which by-sole memory and use they-retained
scriptorum serie conposuit codicemque ipsum edictum
of-writings in-a-series composed and-the-book itself edict
appellari praecepit. Erat autem iam ex quo Langobardi in
to-be-called ordered it-was moreover now from when the-Lombards into
Italiam venerant annus septuagesimus septimus, sicut idem rex
Italy had-come the-year seventieth seventh as the-same king
in sui edicti testatus est prologo. Ad hunc regem Arichis dux
in of-his edict testified has the-prologue to this king Arichis duke
Beneventi filium suum Aionem direxit. Qui cum Ravennam
of-Benevento son his Aio directed who when to-Ravenna
venisset, Ticinum pergens, ibi ei Romanorum malitia
he-had-come to-Pavia going there to-him of-the-Romans by-the-malice
talis potio data est, quae eum mente excedere faceret;
such a-potion given was which him from-mind to-go-out made
atque ex eo tempore numquam pleni sanique sensus fuit.
and from that time never of-full and-sound sense was

De morte Arichis Beneventani ducis, et de ducatu Aionis

XLIII · THE DEATH OF ARICHIS

Old and near death, Arichis knows his son Aio is not of sound mind, so he commends Radoald and Grimoald to the Lombards as his own sons, saying they can rule better than Aio.

Igitur cum dux Arichis, huius de quo diximus pater,
therefore when duke Arichis of-this-one about whom we-have-said the-father
iam maturus annis ad diem ultimum propinquasset, sciens
now ripe in-years to day last had-drawn-near knowing
filium suum Aionem non recti esse sensus, Radoaldum et
son his Aio not of-right to-be sense Radoald and
Grimoaldum, iam florem iuventutis habentes, quasi proprios
Grimoald already the-flower of-youth having as-if his-own
filios Langobardis qui aderant commendavit eisque dixit,
sons to-the-Lombards who were-present commended and-to-them said
quod melius eos regere isti quam Aio suus filius possit.
that better them to-rule these than Aio his son could

De morte Aionis et ducatu Radoaldi

XLIV · AIO KILLED; RADOALD AVENGES HIM

Arichis dies after fifty years and Aio becomes duke. When the Slavs land near Siponto and dig hidden pits around their camp, Aio attacks them while the brothers are away, his horse falls into a pit, and he is killed. Radoald comes, speaks to the Slavs in their own tongue, falls on them, avenges Aio, and drives them away.

Defuncto ergo Arechis, qui ducatum quinquaginta tenuerat
having-died therefore Arichis who the-duchy fifty had-held
annis, Aio, eius filius, Samnitum ductor effectus est; cui
years Aio his son of-the-Samnites leader made was to-whom
tamen Radoald et Grimoald sicut seniori fratri et domino
yet Radoald and Grimoald as to-an-elder brother and lord
per omnia paruerunt. Qui Aio cum iam annum et mensibus
in all-things obeyed who Aio when already a-year and months
quinque Beneventanorum ducatum regeret, venientes Sclavi
five of-the-Beneventans the-duchy was-ruling coming the-Slavs
cum multitudine navium, non longe a civitate Seponto
with a-multitude of-ships not far from the-city Siponto
castra posuerunt. Qui occultas foveas circa sua castra facientes,
a-camp pitched who hidden pits around their camp making
cum Aio super eos, absentibus Raduald et Grimoald, venisset
when Aio upon them being-absent Radoald and Grimoald had-come
eosque debellare vellet, equus eius in unam de eisdem foveis
and-them to-subdue wished horse his into one of the-same pits
cecidit, atque inruentibus super eum Sclavis, simul cum
fell and rushing-in upon him the-Slavs together with
aliquantis aliis extinctus est. Quod cum Raduald nuntiatum
some others killed he-was which when to-Radoald announced
fuisset, cito veniens, eisdem Sclavis propria illorum lingua
had-been quickly coming to-the-same Slavs in-own of-them tongue

locutus est. Cumque eos propter hoc segniores ad bellum
spoken has and-when them on-account-of this more-sluggish for war
reddidisset, mox super eos inruens magnaque eos strage
he-had-rendered soon upon them rushing and-with-great them slaughter
prosternens, et Aionis mortem ultus est et de illis finibus
laying-low both of-Aio the-death avenged has and from those borders
eos qui remanserant hostes fugam petere coegit.
those who had-remained enemies flight to-seek compelled

De civitatibus quas Rothari cepit

XLV · ROTHARI'S CONQUESTS

Rothari takes all the Roman cities on the coast from Luni to the Frankish border and destroys Oderzo. He fights the Romans of Ravenna at the Scultenna, where eight thousand of them fall. A great earthquake and flood strike Rome, and then a plague of scabs, so that no one can recognize his own dead.

Igitur Rothari rex Romanorum civitates ab urbe Tusciae
therefore Rothari king of-the-Romans the-cities from the-city of-Tuscany
Lunensi universas quae in litore maris sitae sunt usque
Luni all which on the-shore of-the-sea situated are all-the-way
ad Francorum fines cepit. Opitergium quoque, civitatem
to of-the-Franks the-borders took Oderzo also the-city
inter Tarvisium et Foroiuli positam, pari modo expugnavit
between Treviso and Friuli placed in-equal manner stormed
et diruit. Cum Ravennantibus Romanis bellum gessit
and pulled-down with the-Ravennate Romans war he-waged
ad fluvium Aemeliae quod Scultenna dicitur. In quo bello
at the-river of-Emilia which Scultenna is-called in which war
a parte Romanorum, reliquis terga dantibus, octo milia
on the-side of-the-Romans the-rest backs giving eight thousand

ceciderunt. Eo tempore magnus Romae terrae motus factus
fell at-that time a-great at-Rome of-earth movement made
est, magnaque tunc fuit inundatio aquarum. Post haec
was and-great then was a-flooding of-waters after these-things
fuit clades scabearum, ita ut nullus potuisset mortuum
there-was a-disaster of-scabs so that no-one could dead
suum agnoscere propter nimium inflationis tumorem.
his to-recognize on-account-of the-excessive of-the-inflation swelling

De morte Radoaldi ducis, et quia ei in ducato Grimoald, eius germanus, successit

XLVI · GRIMOALD DUKE OF BENEVENTO

When Radoald dies, his brother Grimoald becomes duke of Benevento and rules twenty-five years. By a captive but noble girl named Ita he has a son, Romuald, and two daughters. When the Greeks come to plunder Saint Michael's shrine on Monte Gargano, Grimoald falls on them and slaughters them.

Aput Beneventum vero mortuo Raduald duce, qui ducatum
at Benevento but dead Radoald duke who the-duchy
quinque rexerat annis, Grimuald, eius germanus, dux effectus
five had-ruled years Grimoald his brother duke made
est gubernavitque ducatum Samnitium annis quinque et
was and-governed the-duchy of-the-Samnites years five and
viginti. Hic de captiva puella, sed tamen nobili, cuius nomen
twenty he from a-captive girl but yet noble whose name
Ita fuit, Romualdum filium et duas filias genuit. Qui dum
Ita was Romuald a-son and two daughters begot who while
esset vir bellicosissimus et ubique insignis, venientibus
he-was a-man most-warlike and everywhere distinguished coming
eo tempore Grecis, ut oraculum sancti archangeli in
at-that time the-Greeks that the-oratory of-the-holy archangel on

monte Gargano situm depraedarent, Grimuald super eos
mount Gargano situated they-might-plunder Grimoald upon them
cum exercitu veniens, ultima eos caede prostravit.
with an-army coming with-utmost them slaughter laid-low

De morte Rothari regis et regno Radoaldi

XLVII · ROTHARI DIES; RODOALD AND GUNDIPERGA

Rothari dies, leaving the kingdom to his son Rodoald. A thief who robs Rothari's tomb is told in a vision by John the Baptist that he will never enter his church, and is struck back at its door ever after, as a witness tells Paul. Rodoald's queen Gundiperga builds Saint John's at Pavia and, accused of adultery, is cleared when her servant Carellus defeats her accuser in single combat.

At vero rex Rothari postquam annos sedecim et menses
but indeed king Rothari after years sixteen and months
quattuor regnum tenuerat, vita decedens, Langobardorum
four the-kingdom he-had-held from-life departing of-the-Lombards
regnum Rodoald suo filio reliquit. Hic cum iuxta basilicam
the-kingdom to-Rodoald his son left he when beside the-basilica
beati Iohannis baptistae fuisset humatus, post aliquantum
of-blessed John the-Baptist had-been buried after some
tempus quidam, iniqua cupiditate succensus, eius sepulchrum
time a-certain-man by-wicked greed kindled his tomb
noctu aperuit et quicquid in ornamentis eius corporis
by-night opened and whatever in the-ornaments of-his body
repperit abstulit. Cui beatus Iohannes per visionem
he-found took-away to-whom blessed John through a-vision
apparens, eum vehementer exterruit eique dixit: 'Cur
appearing him violently terrified and-to-him said why
ausus es corpus istius hominis contingere? Fuerit
dared have-you the-body of-this man to-touch he-may-have-been

licet non recte credens, tamen mihi se commendavit.
granted not rightly believing yet to-me himself he-commended
Quia igitur hoc facere praesumpsisti, numquam in meam
because therefore this to-do you-have-presumed never into my
basilicam deinceps ingressum habebis'. Quod ita quoque
basilica thereafter entry shall-you-have which so also
factum est. Quotiescumque enim voluisset beati Iohannis
done was as-often-as for he-wished of-blessed John
oraculum ingredi, statim velut a validissimo pugili guttur
the-oratory to-enter at-once as-if by a-most-powerful boxer throat
eius feriretur, sic subito retro ruebat inpulsus. Veritatem
his were-struck so suddenly backward he-would-fall driven the-truth
in Christo loquor; hoc mihi ipse retulit qui hoc ipsum suis
in Christ I-speak this to-me himself related who this very with-his
oculis factum vidit. Rodoald igitur post funus patris
eyes done saw Rodoald therefore after the-funeral of-the-father
Langobardorum regnum suscipiens, Gundipergam Agilulfi et
of-the-Lombards the-kingdom taking-up Gunditperga of-Agilulf and
Theudelindae sibi filiam in matrimonium sociavit. Haec
of-Theudelinda to-himself the-daughter in marriage joined this
Gundiperga regina ad instar suae genetricis, sicut illa in
Gundiperga queen after the-likeness of-her mother as she in
Modicia, sic et ista intra Ticinensem civitatem basilicam in
Monza so also this-one within the-Ticinese city a-basilica in
honorem beati Iohannis baptistae construxit, quam mire ex
honor of-blessed John the-Baptist built which wondrously with
auro et argento peplisque decoravit rebusque singulis opime
gold and silver and-hangings she-adorned and-with-goods individual richly
ditavit; in qua et eius corpus tumulatum quiescit. Haec dum
enriched in which also her body entombed rests she when
de crimine adulterii aput virum accusata fuisset, proprius
of the-charge of-adultery before the-husband accused had-been own

eius servus Carellus nomine a rege expetiit, ut cum eo
her servant Carellus by-name from the-king sought that with him
qui reginae crimen ingesserat pro castitate suae dominae
who on-the-queen the-charge had-heaped for the-chastity of-his mistress
monomachia dimicaret. Qui dum cum criminatore illo singulare
in-single-combat he-might-fight who when with accuser that a-single
certamen inisset, eum cuncto populo adstante superavit.
contest had-entered him all the-people standing-by overcame
Regina vero post hoc factum ad dignitatem pristinam rediit.
the-queen but after this deed to dignity former returned

De morte Radoaldi regis et regno Ariperti

XLVIII · RODOALD KILLED; ARIPERT KING

Rodoald, it is said, violates a Lombard's wife and is killed by him after five years. Aripert, son of Theudelinda's brother Gundoald, succeeds him and founds at Pavia an oratory of the Lord Savior outside the western gate.

Rodoald quoque, ut fertur, dum uxorem cuiusdam
Rodoald also as it-is-reported when the-wife of-a-certain
Langobardi stuprasset, ab eodem interfectus est, postquam
Lombard had-violated by the-same killed was after
septem diebus et quinque regnaverat annis. Huic successit
seven days and five he-had-reigned years to-him succeeded
in regni regimine Aripert, filius Gundoaldi, qui fuerat
in of-the-kingdom the-rule Aripert son of-Gundoald who had-been
germanus Theudelindae reginae. Hic condidit aput Ticinum
brother of-Theudelinda queen he founded at Pavia
oraculum domini Salvatoris, quod extra portam occidentalem,
an-oratory of-the-Lord Savior which outside the-gate western

quae dicitur Marenca, situm est; quod et ornamentis variis
which is-called Marenca situated is which both with-ornaments various
decoravit et substantiis sufficienter ditavit.
he-adorned and with-substance sufficiently enriched

De morte Eraclii augusti et Constantini, qui ei successit, et regno alterius Constantini

XLIX · THE SUCCESSORS OF HERACLIUS

When Heraclius dies, his son Heraclonas rules two years with his mother Martina. Then another son, Constantine, reigns six months, and after him his son Constantine reigns twenty-eight years.

His diebus defuncto Eraclio augusto aput Constantinopolim,
in-these days having-died Heraclius augustus at Constantinople
Heraclones, eius filius, cum matre Martina regni
Heraclonas his son with mother Martina of-the-kingdom
iura suscepit rexitque imperium duobus annis. Quo vita
the-rights took-up and-ruled the-empire for-two years who from-life
decedente, successit in loco eius Constantinus, germanus
departing succeeded in place his Constantine brother
eiusdem, alius filius Heraclii, imperavitque mensibus sex. Hoc
of-the-same another son of-Heraclius and-ruled for-months six this
etiam mortuo, Constantinus, eiusdem filius, ad regni
also dead Constantine of-the-same the-son to of-the-kingdom
dignitatem ascendit tenuitque regnum annis octo et viginti.
the-dignity ascended and-held the-kingdom years eight and twenty

De Cesara regina Persarum

L · CESARA, QUEEN OF THE PERSIANS

Cesara, wife of the Persian king, comes to Constantinople in plain dress for love of the Christian faith and is baptized. She tells her husband's envoys she will not be his wife unless he believes in Christ, and he comes peacefully with sixty thousand men, is baptized with them, and goes home with her. Ago succeeds Grasulf at Friuli and Atto Teudelapius at Spoleto.

Circa haec tempora regis Persarum coniux nomine Cesara
around these times of-the-king of-the-Persians the-wife by-name Cesara
de Perside exiens, cum paucis suis fidelibus privato habitu
from Persia going-out with few her faithful in-private dress
propter christianae fidei amorem Constantinopolim venit.
on-account-of of-the-Christian faith love to-Constantinople came
Quae ab imperatore honorifice suscepta, post aliquod dies, ut
who by the-emperor honorably received after some days as
desiderabat, baptismum consecuta et ab augusta de sacro
she-desired baptism obtained and by the-augusta from the-sacred
fonte levata est. Quod vir eius Persarum rex audiens, legatos
font raised was which husband her of-the-Persians king hearing envoys
Constantinopolim ad augustum direxit, quatenus eidem suam
to-Constantinople to the-augustus directed so-that to-him his
uxorem redderet. Qui ad imperatorem venientes, verba
wife he-should-return who to the-emperor coming the-words
regis Persarum nuntiant, qui suam requirebat reginam.
of-the-king of-the-Persians announce who his was-seeking queen
Imperator haec audiens remque omnino ignorans, eis
the-emperor these-things hearing and-the-matter altogether not-knowing to-them
responsum reddidit dicens: 'De regina, quam quaeritis, fatemur
answer returned saying about the-queen whom you-seek we-confess

nos nihil scire, praeter quod ad nos hic aliqua mulier
that-we nothing to-know except that to us here some woman
privato habitu advenit'. Legati vero responderunt dicentes:
in-private dress has-come the-envoys but answered saying
'Si placet vestro conspectui, velimus hanc quam dicitis
if it-pleases your sight we-should-wish this whom you-speak-of
mulierem videre'. Quae cum iussu imperatoris advenisset, mox
woman to-see who when by-order of-the-emperor she-had-come soon
eam legati conspiciunt, ad eius vestigia provulvuntur eique
her the-envoys behold to her footprints roll-forward and-to-her
venerabiliter, quia eam suus vir requireret, suggerunt.
reverently that her her husband was-seeking suggest
Quibus illa respondit: 'Ite, renuntiate regi vestro et
to-whom she answered go announce to-the-king your and
domino, quia, nisi, sicut ego iam credidi, ita et ipse
lord that unless as I already have-believed so also he-himself
in Christum crediderit, me iam ultra consortem thori
in Christ shall-have-believed me now any-longer as-partner of-the-bed
habere non poterit'. Quid multa? Reversi legati ad
to-have not he-shall-be-able what more having-returned the-envoys to
patriam, universa quae audierant suo regi renuntiant. Qui
the-fatherland all-things which they-had-heard to-their king report who
nihil moratus, cum sexaginta milibus viris Constantinopolim
nothing having-delayed with sixty thousand men to-Constantinople
pacifice ad imperatorem venit, a quo gratanter et satis digne
peacefully to the-emperor came by whom gladly and very worthily
susceptus est. Qui cum universis Christum dominum credens,
received was who with all Christ the-Lord believing
pariter cum omnibus sacri baptismatis unda perfusus
together with all of-sacred of-baptism with-the-wave suffused
et ab augusto de fonte levatus, catholica fide confirmatus
and by the-augustus from the-font raised in-the-catholic faith confirmed

est; multisque muneribus ab augusto honoratus, accepta sua
was and-with-many gifts by the-augustus honored received his
coniuge, laetus et gaudens ad suam patriam repedavit. Circa
wife glad and rejoicing to his fatherland went-back around
haec tempora mortuo aput Foroiuli Grasulfo duce, Foroiulensem
these times dead at Friuli Grasulf duke the-Friulian
ducatum Ago regendum suscepit. Aput Spoletium quoque
duchy Ago to-be-ruled took-up at Spoleto also
Theudelaupo defuncto, Atto eidem civitati ductor efficitur.
Teudelapius having-died Atto for-the-same city leader is-made

De morte Ariperti et Godiperti, filii eius, qui ei successit, et regno Grimoaldi et interitu Garipaldi ducis

LI · ARIPERT'S SONS, AND GRIMOALD TAKES THE KINGDOM

Aripert's young sons Perctarit and Godepert fall out, and Godepert sends Duke Garibald of Turin to ask Grimoald of Benevento for help, but Garibald urges Grimoald to take the kingdom. Garibald tells each that the other means murder, and Grimoald, feeling a breastplate under Godepert's clothes, kills him. Perctarit flees to the Avars, and a small man of Godepert's household beheads Garibald in Saint John's at Easter.

Igitur Aripert postquam aput Ticinum per annos novem
therefore Aripert after at Pavia through years nine
Langobardos rexerat diem obiens, regnum duobus filiis
the-Lombards he-had-ruled the-day meeting the-kingdom to-two sons
suis adhuc aduliscentibus Perctarit et Godeperto regendum
his still youths Perctarit and Godepert to-be-ruled
reliquit. Et Godepert quidem Ticini sedem regni habuit,
left and Godepert indeed of-Pavia the-seat of-the-kingdom had

Perctarit vero in civitate Mediolanensi. Inter quos fratres,
Perctarit but in the-city of-Milan between which brothers
facientibus malignis hominibus, discordiae et odiorum fomes
working wicked men of-discord and of-hatreds the-tinder
surrexit in tantum, ut alter alterius regnum invadere
arose to such-a-degree that the-one of-the-other the-kingdom to-invade
conaretur. Qua de re Godepertus Garipaldum Taurinatium
tried which for thing Godepert Garibald of-Turin
ducem ad Grimuald Beneventanorum strenuum tunc ductorem
duke to Grimoald of-the-Beneventans vigorous then leader
direxit, invitans eum, ut quantotius veniret et
directed inviting him that as-quickly-as-possible he-should-come and
sibi adversus germanum suum Perctarit auxilium ferret,
to-himself against brother his Perctarit help should-bring
regisque filiam, suam germanam, ei se daturum
and-of-the-king daughter his sister to-him himself to-be-about-to-give
promittens. Sed legatus ipse fraudulenter contra suum
promising but the-envoy himself fraudulently against his
dominum agens, Grimualdum exhortatus est, ut veniret
lord acting Grimoald exhorted has that he-should-come
et Langobardorum regnum, quod aduliscentes germani
and of-the-Lombards the-kingdom which the-youthful brothers
dissipabant, ipse arriperet, qui aetate maturus, consilio
were-squandering he-himself should-seize who in-age ripe in-counsel
providus et viribus fortis existeret. Grimuald haec audiens,
provident and in-strength strong was Grimoald these-things hearing
mox animum ad regnum Langobardorum obtinendum erexit.
soon the-mind to the-kingdom of-the-Lombards to-be-obtained raised
Ordinatumque aput Beneventum Romualdum suum filium
and-ordained at Benevento Romuald his son
ducem, ipse cum electa manu Ticinum profecturus iter
duke he-himself with a-chosen band to-Pavia about-to-set-out the-journey

arripuit, ac per omnes civitates, per quas viam habuit,
seized and through all the-cities through which the-way he-had
sibi amicos et adiutores ad regnum percipiendum adscivit.
for-himself friends and helpers for the-kingdom to-be-gained enlisted
Transemundum vero comitem Capuanum per Spoletium et
Transamund but count of-Capua through Spoleto and
Tusciam direxit, ut eius regionis Langobardos suo consortio
Tuscany he-directed that of-that region the-Lombards to-his fellowship
coaptaret. Qui imperata sibi strenue perficiens, ei
he-might-fit who the-things-commanded to-him vigorously accomplishing him
cum multis adiutoribus aput Aemiliam in itinere occurrit.
with many helpers at Emilia on the-journey met
Igitur Grimuald, cum prope Placentiam cum robusta virorum
therefore Grimoald when near Piacenza with a-robust of-men
multitudine advenisset, Garipaldum, qui legatus ad eum
multitude had-arrived Garibald who envoy to him
missus a Godeperto fuerat, Ticinum praemisit, ut eidem
sent by Godepert had-been to-Pavia sent-ahead that to-the-same
Godeperto de suo adventu nuntiaret. Qui ad Godepertum
Godepert about his coming he-should-announce who to Godepert
veniens, Grimualdum citius adventare dixit. Cumque Godepert
coming Grimoald quickly to-be-arriving said and-when Godepert
ab eo quaereret, quo in loco eidem Grimualdo hospitium
from him asked what in place to-the-same Grimoald lodging
parare deberet, Garipald ita respondit: quod dignum esset,
to-prepare he-ought Garibald thus answered that worthy it-would-be
ut Grimualdus, qui pro eius causa venerat eiusque sororem
that Grimoald who for his cause had-come and-his sister
accepturus esset, hospitium intra palatium haberet. Quod
about-to-receive was lodging within the-palace should-have which
ita quoque factum est. Nam adveniens Grimuald, intra
so also done was for arriving Grimoald within

palatium mansionem accepit. Isdem vero Garipald totius
the-palace a-dwelling received the-same but Garibald of-all
nequitiae seminator Godeperto persuasit, ut non aliter
wickedness the-sower Godepert persuaded that not otherwise
quam lorica sub veste indutus cum Grimualdo
than with-a-breastplate under the-garment clad with Grimoald
locuturus veniret; asserens, quia eum Grimuald occidere
about-to-speak he-should-come asserting that him Grimoald to-kill
vellet. Rursus idem fallendi artifex ad Grimualdum veniens
wished again the-same of-deceiving craftsman to Grimoald coming
dixit, quod, nisi se fortiter praepararet, eum Godepertus
said that unless himself bravely he-prepared him Godepert
suo gladio perimeret, asseverans, Godepertum, quando cum
with-his sword would-kill asserting Godepert when with
eo ad conloquendum veniret, loricam sub veste gestare.
him to speaking he-came a-breastplate under the-garment to-wear
Quid plura? Cum ad conloquium die crastino venissent, et
what more when to the-parley on-day next they-had-come and
Godepertum post salutationem Grimualdus amplexatus esset,
Godepert after the-greeting Grimoald embraced had
statim sensit, quod loricam sub veste gestaret. Nec mora,
at-once he-felt that a-breastplate under the-garment he-was-wearing nor delay
evaginato gladio eum vita privavit. Regnumque eius et omnem
drawn the-sword him of-life deprived and-the-kingdom his and all
potentiam invadens, suae subdidit ditioni. Habebat autem tunc
power invading to-his subjected rule had moreover then
Godepert iam filium parvulum nomine Raginpertum, qui a
Godepert already a-son little by-name Raginpert who by
Godeperti fidelibus sublatus et occulte nutritus est. Nec eum
of-Godepert the-faithful carried-off and secretly nourished was nor him
Grimuald persequi curavit, quippe qui adhuc infantulus esset.
Grimoald to-pursue cared inasmuch-as who still a-little-infant was

Quo audito Perctarit, qui aput Mediolanum regnabat, quod
which heard Perctarit who at Milan was-reigning that
germanus eius esset extinctus, quanta potuit velocitate
brother his had-been killed with-as-much he-could speed
fugam arripuit adque ad regem Avarum cacanum pervenit,
flight seized and to the-king of-the-Avars the-khagan came
uxorem Rodelindam et parvulum filium nomine Cunicpertum
the-wife Rodelinda and little son by-name Cunincpert
relinquens, quos Grimuald Beneventum in exilium direxit.
leaving whom Grimoald to-Benevento into exile directed
His ita gestis, Garipaldus, cuius instigatione et certamine
these-things thus done Garibald by-whose instigation and striving
ista patrata sunt — et non solum haec egerat,
these-things accomplished were and not only these-things he-had-done
sed et fraudem in legatione sua fecerat, dum munera, quae
but also fraud in embassy his he-had-made since the-gifts which
deferre Beneventum debuerat, non integra deportasset —
to-bring to-Benevento he-ought not whole had-carried
talium ergo operum patrator non diu laetatus est. Erat
of-such therefore works the-accomplisher not long rejoiced has there-was
quidam parvus homunculus ex propria familia Godeperti
a-certain small little-man from own household of-Godepert
oriundus in civitate Taurinatium. Is cum Garipaldum ducem
sprung in the-city of-Turin he when Garibald duke
ipso sacratissimo paschali die ad orationem in beati
on-that-very most-sacred Easter day for prayer into of-blessed
Iohannis basilicam venturum sciret, super sacrum baptisterii
John the-basilica about-to-come knew upon the-sacred of-the-baptistery
fontem conscendens laevaque manu se ad columellum
font climbing and-with-left hand himself to the-little-column
tugurii continens, unde Garipaldus transiturus erat, evaginato
of-the-canopy holding whence Garibald about-to-pass was drawn

ense sub amictu tenens, cum iuxta eum Garipald venisset, ut
a-sword under the-cloak holding when beside him Garibald had-come that
pertransiret, ipse, elevato amictu, toto adnisu eodem
he-might-pass-through he-himself raised the-cloak with-all effort with-the-same
ense in cervice percussit caputque eius protinus amputavit.
sword on the-neck struck and-the-head his forthwith cut-off
Super quem qui cum Garipaldo venerant inruentes, multis
upon whom those-who with Garibald had-come rushing many
eum ictuum vulneribus occiderunt. Qui licet occubuerit,
him of-blows with-wounds killed who though he-fell
tamen Godeperti sui domini iniuriam insigniter ultus est.
yet of-Godepert his lord the-wrong signally avenged has

Quomodo Grimuald, confirmato regno, uxorem duxit filiam Ariperti regis

I · GRIMOALD MARRIES ARIPERT'S DAUGHTER

Once his rule at Pavia is secure, Grimoald marries Aripert's daughter, long promised to him, whose brother Godepert he has killed. He sends the army of Benevento home with many gifts but keeps some of them with him on ample estates.

Confirmato itaque Grimuald regno aput Ticinum, non
confirmed and-so Grimoald the-kingdom at Pavia not
multo post tempore iam dudum pactam sibi Ariperti
much after time already long-since promised to-himself of-Aripert
regis filiam, cuius germanum Godepertum extincxerat,
king the-daughter whose brother Godepert he-had-killed
duxit uxorem. Beneventanum vero exercitum, cuius auxilio
married as-wife the-Beneventan but the-army whose by-help
regnum adeptus erat, multis dotatum muneribus remisit
the-kingdom gained he-had many endowed with-gifts sent-back
ad propria. Aliquantos tamen ex eis secum habitaturos
to their-own some yet of them with-himself about-to-dwell
retenuit, largissimas eis tribuens possessiones.
retained most-ample to-them granting possessions

De fuga Perctarit, et quomodo ad Grimualdum reversus est et iterum in Francia fugit

II · PERCTARIT RETURNS AND ESCAPES AGAIN

Sent away by the khagan, whom Grimoald threatens, Perctarit returns trusting Grimoald's mercy and is sworn safety, but when crowds flock to him, flatterers tell the king Perctarit must die, and Grimoald sends him wines to make him drunk before killing him. Warned, Perctarit drinks only water, and his faithful Unulf drives him out of the guarded house as a slave under bedclothes and a bearskin and lets him down the wall to flee to Francia.

Qui postquam conperit, Perctarit profugum Scithiam appetisse
who after he-learned Perctarit a-fugitive Scythia to-have-sought
et aput cacanum demorari, eidem cacano Avarum regi
and with the-khagan to-be-staying to-the-same khagan of-the-Avars king
per legatos mandavit, ut, si Perctarit in suo regno
through envoys sent-word that if Perctarit in his kingdom
detineret, cum Langobardis et secum pacem, quam
he-should-detain with the-Lombards and with-himself the-peace which
hactenus habuerat, deinceps habere non possit. Haec
hitherto he-had-had thereafter to-have not he-could these-things
Avarum rex audiens, adscito Perctarit, dixit ei, ut in
of-the-Avars the-king hearing summoned Perctarit said to-him that into
quam partem vellet pergeret, ne propter eum Avares cum
whatever direction he-wished he-should-go lest on-account-of him the-Avars with
Langobardis inimicitias contraherent. Perctarit vero haec
the-Lombards enmities should-contract Perctarit but these-things
audiens, Italiam ad Grimualdum reversurus repetiit; audierat
hearing Italy to Grimoald about-to-return sought-again he-had-heard
enim, eum clementissimum esse. Igitur cum ad Laudensem
for him most-merciful to-be therefore when to the-Lodi
civitatem venisset, misit ante se ad Grimualdum regem
city he-had-come he-sent before himself to Grimoald king

Unulfum sibi fidelissimum virum, qui suum ei adventum
Unulf to-himself most-faithful a-man who his to-him coming
nuntiaret. Unulfus vero ad regem veniens, Perctarit in
should-announce Unulf but to the-king coming Perctarit on
eius fide adventare nuntiavit. Haec ille audiens, fidenter
his faith to-be-arriving announced these-things he hearing confidently
promisit, in sua eum fide venientem nihil mali passurum
promised on his him faith coming nothing of-evil about-to-suffer
fore. Inter haec Perctarit adveniens, ad Grimualdum
would-be among these-things Perctarit arriving to Grimoald
ingressus, cum eius se vestigiis advolvere conatus esset,
having-entered when his himself to-the-footprints to-roll tried had
rex eum clementer retenuit atque ad suum osculum erexit.
the-king him mercifully held-back and to his kiss raised
Ad quem Perctarit: 'Servus tuus sum', inquit; 'sciens te
to whom Perctarit servant your I-am he-says knowing you
christianissimum et pium esse, cum possim inter paganos
most-Christian and pious to-be though I-could among pagans
vivere, fretus de tua clementia ad tua vestigia veni'. Cui
live relying on your mercy to your footprints I-have-come to-whom
rex, ut solebat, iureiurando ita repromisit dicens: 'Per
the-king as he-was-wont with-an-oath so promised-again saying by
eum qui me nasci fecit, postquam in meam fidem ad me
him who me to-be-born made since on my faith to me
venisti, nihil in aliquo mali patieris, sed ita te ordinabo,
you-have-come nothing in anything of-evil shall-you-suffer but so you I-shall-order
ut decenter vivere possis'. Tunc ei in spaciosa domo
that becomingly to-live you-may-be-able then to-him in a-spacious house
hospitium praebens, eum post viae laborem habere
lodging furnishing him after of-the-road the-labor to-have
requiem iussit; praecipiens, eidem ex publico victum et
rest he-ordered commanding to-the-same from the-public-store food and

quaeque essent necessaria largius ministrari. Perctarit vero
whatever-things might-be necessary more-liberally to-be-supplied Perctarit but
cum ad hospitium sibi a rege praeparatum venisset, mox
when to the-lodging for-himself by the-king prepared he-had-come soon
ad eum Ticinensium civium coeperunt turmae concurrere, ut
to him of-the-Ticinese citizens began the-throngs to-run-together that
eum vel viderent vel pristina notitia cognitum salutarent.
him either they-might-see or by-former acquaintance known they-might-greet
Verum quid non mala lingua inrumpere potest? Mox namque
but what not an-evil tongue to-break-in can soon for
venientes ad regem quidam maligni adolatores, regi
coming to the-king certain malicious flatterers to-the-king
denuntiant, quia, nisi Perctarit citius vita privaret,
announce that unless Perctarit more-quickly of-life he-should-deprive
ipse regnum protinus cum vita perderet; adseverantes,
he-himself the-kingdom forthwith with life would-lose asserting
ob hoc ad eum totam concurrere civitatem. His auditis
for this to him the-whole to-run-together city these-things heard
Grimuald nimium credulus effectus, et quod promiserat
Grimoald too-much credulous made and what he-had-promised
oblitus, in innocentis Perctarit statim necem accenditur,
having-forgotten into of-the-innocent Perctarit at-once the-killing is-kindled
consiliumque iniit, qualiter eum, quia iam hora tardior erat,
and-a-plan entered how him since already the-hour later was
in crastino vita privaret. Cui denique ad vesperam
on the-morrow of-life he-might-deprive to-whom finally toward evening
diversos cibos, vina quoque praecipua variaque potionum
various foods wines also choice and-various of-drinks
genera transmisit, ut eum inebriare possit, quatenus
kinds he-sent-over that him to-make-drunk he-might-be-able so-that
multa eadem nocte potatione resolutus vinoque sepultus,
with-much that-same night drinking loosened and-in-wine buried

de sua nihil salute cogitare valeret. Tunc unus qui de
about his nothing safety to-think he-might-be-able then one who of
eius patris obsequio fuerat, cum eidem Perctarit ferculum
his of-the-father service had-been when to-the-same Perctarit a-dish
regium adtulisset, quasi eum salutaturus sub mensam caput
royal had-brought as-if him about-to-greet under the-table the-head
mittens, eidem secrete, quia rex eum occidere disponeret,
putting to-the-same secretly that the-king him to-kill was-arranging
nuntiavit. Perctarit vero statim suo pincernae praecepit, ut
announced Perctarit but at-once his cupbearer ordered that
sibi in fiala argentea non aliud quam aliquantulum aquae
to-him in a-goblet silver not other than a-little of-water
propinaret. Cumque hi qui diversi generis potiones ei a
he-should-pledge and-when these who of-various kind drinks to-him from
rege deferebant de verbo regis eum rogarent, ut totam
the-king were-bringing on the-word of-the-king him asked that the-whole
fialam biberet, ille in honorem regis se totam bibere
goblet he-should-drink he in honor of-the-king himself the-whole to-drink
promittens, parum aquae libabat de argenteo calice. Qui
promising a-little of-water was-sipping from the-silver cup which
ministri dum haec regi nuntiarent, quod ille avidissime
servants when these-things to-the-king announced that he most-greedily
biberet, rex laetus respondit: 'Bibat ebriosus ille; cras
was-drinking the-king glad answered let-him-drink drunkard that tomorrow
enim pariter eadem vina mixta cum sanguine refundet'.
for equally the-same wines mixed with blood he-shall-pour-back
Perctarit vero Unulfum citius ad se adscitum, de
Perctarit but Unulf more-quickly to himself summoned about
sua morte ei regis consilium nuntiavit. Qui statim ad
his death to-him of-the-king the-plan announced who at-once to
domum suam puerum misit, ut sibi lectisternia deferret,
house his a-boy sent that to-him bedclothes he-should-bring

lectumque sibi iuxta stratum Perctarit fieri praecepit.
and-a-bed for-himself beside the-couch of-Perctarit to-be-made ordered
Nec mora, rex Grimuald suos satellites direxit, qui domum,
nor delay king Grimoald his guards directed who the-house
in qua Perctarit quiescebat, ne aliquo modo effugere
in which Perctarit was-resting lest in-any way to-escape
possit, custodire deberent. Cumque coena finita esset,
he-might-be-able to-guard ought and-when the-dinner finished had-been
et egressis omnibus Perctarit tantum et Unulfus ac
and having-gone-out all Perctarit only and Unulf and
vestiarius Perctarit remansissent, qui utique eidem satis
the-chamberlain of-Perctarit had-remained who certainly to-the-same very
erant fideles, consilium ei aperiunt et obsecrant eum,
were faithful the-plan to-him they-disclose and beseech him
ut, cum Perctarit fugeret, ipse eum quamdiu possit intra
that when Perctarit should-flee he-himself him as-long-as he-could within
eodem cubiculum quiescere simularet. Cumque se ille
the-same bedchamber to-be-resting should-feign and-when himself he
hoc facturum spopondisset, Unulfus pannos suos lectaricios
this about-to-do had-pledged Unulf cloths his of-the-bed
et culcitram ursinamque pellem supra dorsum ac cervicem
and a-quilt and-a-bear skin upon the-back and neck
Perctarit inposuit, eumque ex consilio quasi rusticanum
of-Perctarit put and-him by design as-if a-rustic
servum extra ianuam inpellere coepit, multasque ei iniurias
slave outside the-door to-drive began and-many on-him insults
faciens, fuste eum insuper percutere desuper et urguere
doing with-a-cudgel him moreover to-strike from-above and to-press-on
non cessabat, ita ut inpulsus atque ictus saepius ad terram
not he-ceased so that driven and struck rather-often to the-ground
corrueret. Cumque eundem Unulfum regii satellites, qui ad
he-fell and-when the-same Unulf the-royal guards who for

custodiam positi erant, requirerent, quid hoc esset: ‘Servus
the-watch placed were asked what this might-be slave
iste’, inquit, ‘nequam lectum mihi in cubiculo ebriosi
this he-says worthless a-bed for-me in the-bedchamber of-drunkard
istius Perctarit statuit, qui in tantum vino plenus est,
that Perctarit set-up who to such-a-degree with-wine full is
ut quasi mortuus ita cubet. Sed satis est, quod eius nunc
that as-if dead so he-lies but enough it-is that his now
usque amentiam secutus sum, iam deinceps in vita domni
up-to madness followed I-have now henceforth in the-life of-the-lord
regis in domo propria manebo’. Haec illi audientes et
king in house my-own I-shall-remain these-things they hearing and
vera quae audierant esse credentes, laeti effecti sunt, et eum
true what they-had-heard to-be believing glad made were and him
pariterque Perctarit, quem putabant servum et qui opertum,
and-equally Perctarit whom they-thought a-slave and who covered
ne agnosceretur, habebat caput, locum illis dantes, abire
lest he-should-be-recognized had the-head place to-them giving to-go-away
permiserunt. Illis autem abeuntibus, vestiarius ille fidelissimus,
permitted them moreover going-away chamberlain that most-faithful
obserato diligenter ostio, remansit intrinsecus solus. Unulfus
bolted carefully the-door remained inside alone Unulf
vero Perctarit de muro anguli, qui est a parte Ticini
but Perctarit from the-wall of-the-corner which is on the-side of-the-Ticino
fluminis, per funem deposuit eique quos potuit socios
river by a-rope let-down and-to-him whom he-could companions
coniunxit. Qui, arreptis quos in pastu invenerant equis,
joined who seized which at pasture they-had-found horses
eadem nocte ad Astensem properant civitatem, in qua
that-same night to the-Asti hasten city in which
Perctarit amici manebant et qui adhuc Grimualdo rebelles
of-Perctarit friends were-staying and who still to-Grimoald rebels

extabant. Deinde quantotius Perctarit Taurinensem urbem
stood then as-quickly-as-possible Perctarit the-Turin city
petens, ac post claustra Italiae transgressus, Francorum ad
seeking and after the-barriers of-Italy having-crossed of-the-Franks to
patriam pervenit. Sicque Deus omnipotens dispositione
the-fatherland came and-thus God almighty by-the-dispensation
misericordiae et innocentem a morte eripuit et regem
of-mercy both the-innocent from death snatched and the-king
ex animo bona facere cupientem ab offensione servavit.
from the-heart good to-do desiring from offense preserved

De clementia Grimualdi regis in Unulfo et vestiario Perctarit

III · GRIMOALD SPARES THE CHAMBERLAIN AND UNULF

Grimoald's men find Perctarit gone, and the chamberlain who stayed behind tells the king everything. When all call for his death, Grimoald swears that a man who would die for his lord's faith deserves well, and takes him into his own service. Unulf, who has fled to Saint Michael's, comes on the king's promise, tells how Perctarit escaped, and keeps all his property.

At vero rex Grimoald dum Perctarit in hospitio suo
but indeed king Grimoald while Perctarit in lodging his
quiescere putaret, ab eodem hospitio usque ad palatium
to-be-resting he-thought from the-same lodging all-the-way to palace
suum acies hominum hinc et inde adstare fecit, ut
his lines of-men on-this-side and on-that to-stand-by he-caused that
per eorum medio Perctarit deduceretur, quatenus effugere
through of-them the-middle Perctarit might-be-led so-that to-escape
minime possit. Cumque a rege missi venissent, qui
by-no-means he-might-be-able and-when by the-king sent had-come who
Perctarit ad palatium evocarent, et ad ostium, quo eum
Perctarit to the-palace should-summon and at the-door in-which him

quiescere putabant, pulsassent, vestiarius ille qui introrsus erat
to-be-resting they-thought had-knocked chamberlain that who inside was
rogabat eos dicens: 'Misericordiam cum eo facite eumque
asked them saying mercy with him do and-him
paululum quiescere sinite, quia adhuc de itinere lassus
a-little to-rest allow because still from the-journey tired
gravissimo somno deprimitur'. Quod cum illi adquievissent,
by-very-heavy sleep he-is-pressed-down which when they had-agreed
hoc ipsum regi nuntiaverunt, quia adhuc Perctarit gravi
this very to-the-king they-announced that still Perctarit in-heavy
somno quiesceret. Tunc ille: 'Sic', inquit, 'hesterna sera
sleep was-resting then he thus he-says yesterday's evening
se vino opplevit, ut adhuc vigilare non possit'. Quibus
himself with-wine filled that still to-wake not he-can to-whom
tamen praecepit, ut mox eum excitatum ad palatium
yet he-ordered that soon him awakened to the-palace
deducerent. Qui venientes ad ianuam cubiculi, in quo
they-should-lead who coming to the-door of-the-bedchamber in which
Perctarit sperabant quiescere, coeperunt acrius pulsare. Tunc
Perctarit they-hoped to-be-resting began more-sharply to-knock then
vestiarius ille rursum eos rogare coepit, ut quasi eundem
chamberlain that again them to-ask began that as-if the-same
Perctarit aliquantulum adhuc dormire permitterent. Qui irati
Perctarit a-little still to-sleep they-would-allow who angry
vociferantes, iam satis ebriosum illum quievisse, mox calcibus
shouting already enough drunkard that to-have-rested soon with-heels
eodem cubiculi ostium confringunt, ingressique Perctarit
the-same of-the-bedchamber the-door break-in and-having-entered Perctarit
in lectulo requirunt. Quem cum non invenissent, ad requisita
in the-little-bed seek whom when not they-had-found for the-needs
eum naturae residere, suspicati sunt. Quem cum nec ibi
him of-nature to-be-sitting suspected have whom when not-even there

repperissent, vestiarium illum interrogant, quid de Perctarit
they-had-found chamberlain that they-question what about Perctarit
factum fuisset. Quibus ille, fugisse eum, respondit. Quem
done had-been to-whom he to-have-fled him answered whom
statim capillis adprehensum, furentes eumque verberantes,
at-once by-the-hair seized raging and-him beating
ad palatium pertrahunt. Eumque in regis praesentiam
to the-palace drag and-him into of-the-king the-presence
perducentes, fugae Perctarit hunc esse conscium ideoque
bringing of-the-flight of-Perctarit him to-be privy and-therefore
morte dignissimum, dicunt. Quem rex dimitti praecepit
of-death most-worthy they-say whom the-king to-be-let-go ordered
eumque per ordinem, qualiter Perctarit effugisset, inquisivit.
and-him in order how Perctarit had-escaped questioned
Ille regi universa sicut acta fuerant retulit. Tunc rex
he to-the-king all-things as done they-had-been related then the-king
a circumstantibus requisivit dicens: 'Quid vobis de homine
of the-bystanders asked saying what to-you about man
isto videtur, qui talia perpetravit'? Tunc omnes una voce
this seems who such-things perpetrated then all with-one voice
responderunt, esse eum dignum multis suppliciis excruciatum
answered to-be him worthy with-many tortures racked
interire. At rex: 'Per [eum] qui me nasci fecit', inquit,
to-perish but the-king by him who me to-be-born made he-says
'dignus est homo iste bene habere, qui se pro fide sui
worthy is man this well to-have who himself for the-faith of-his
domini morti tradere non recusavit'. Eumque mox inter suos
lord to-death to-hand-over not refused and-him soon among his
vestiarios esse praecepit, ammonens eum, ut sibi eandem
chamberlains to-be ordered admonishing him that to-himself the-same
fidem quam Perctarit habuerat servaret; multa se ei
faith which to-Perctarit he-had-had he-should-keep many himself to-him

commoda largiturum promittens. Cumque rex requireret,
benefits about-to-bestow promising and-when the-king asked
quid de Unulfum factum fuisset, nuntiatum est ei,
what about Unulf done had-been announced it-was to-him
quod in beati archangeli Michahelis basilicam confugium
that into of-the-blessed archangel Michael the-basilica refuge
fecisset. Qui mox ad eum misit, sponte promittens, quod
he-had-made who soon to him sent freely promising that
nihil pateretur mali, tantum in sua fide veniret. Unulfus
nothing he-should-suffer of-evil only on his faith he-should-come Unulf
vero talem regis promissionem audiens, mox ad palatium
but such of-the-king promise hearing soon to the-palace
venit, atque ad regis vestigia provolutus, interrogatus ab
came and to of-the-king the-footprints rolled-forward questioned by
eo est, quomodo aut qualiter Perctarit evadere potuisset.
him was how or in-what-way Perctarit to-escape had-been-able
At ille cum ei cuncta ex ordine retulisset, rex eius
but he when to-him all-things in order had-related the-king his
fidem et prudentiam conlaudans, omnes eius facultates et
faith and prudence praising all his means and
quicquid habere poterat eidem clementer concessit.
whatever to-have he-could to-the-same mercifully granted

Quomodo Grimuald Unulfum et vestiarium Perctarit ad eundem Perctarit ire permisit

IV · UNULF AND THE CHAMBERLAIN GO TO PERCTARIT

Unulf swears he would rather die with Perctarit than live in luxury, and the chamberlain answers the same. Praising their faith, Grimoald lets them take their slaves, horses, and goods and go to Perctarit unharmed, and with his help they set out for him in Francia.

Cumque post aliquot tempus rex Unulfum inquireret,
and-when after some time the-king Unulf asked
utrum vellet ipsis diebus cum Perctarit esse, ille iureiurando
whether he-wished in-those days with Perctarit to-be he with-an-oath
ait, prius se vellet cum Perctarit mori, quam usquam
said rather himself he-wished with Perctarit to-die than anywhere
alibi in summis deliciis vivere. Tunc rex etiam vestiarium
elsewhere in the-highest delights to-live then the-king also chamberlain
illum requisivit dicens, utrum melius ei esset secum in
that asked saying whether better for-him it-were with-himself in
palatium manere, an cum Perctarit in peregrinatione degere.
the-palace to-remain or with Perctarit in exile to-live
Qui cum ei similia sicut et Unulfus respondisset, rex
who when to-him like-things as also Unulf had-answered the-king
eorum verba benigne suscipiens eorumque fidem conlaudans,
their words kindly receiving and-their faith praising
praecepit Unulfo, ut quicquid vellet de domo sua tolleret,
ordered to-Unulf that whatever he-wished from house his he-should-take
pueros scilicet et equos et diversam supellectilem, et ad
slaves namely and horses and various household-goods and to
Perctarit inlaesus properaret. Pari etiam modo et vestiarium
Perctarit unharmed he-should-hasten in-equal also manner also chamberlain

illum absolvit. Qui omnia sua secundum benignitatem regis
that he-released who all their according-to the-kindness of-the-king
sufficienter tollentes, cum eiusdem regis adiutorio Francorum
sufficiently taking with of-the-same king the-help of-the-Franks
in patriam ad suum dilectum Perctarit sunt profecti.
into the-fatherland to their beloved Perctarit have set-out

Bellum Grimualdi adversum Francos et victoriam eius

V · GRIMOALD DEFEATS THE FRANKS AT RIVUS

A Frankish army comes from Provence into Italy, and Grimoald pretends to flee, leaving his camp full of goods and wine but empty of men. The Franks plunder it and feast, and Grimoald falls on them after midnight as they sleep, so that few escape home. The place, not far from Asti, is still called the Franks' Stream, Rivus Francorum.

Hac tempestate Francorum exercitus de Provincia egrediens,
at-this time of-the-Franks the-army from Provence going-out
in Italiam introivit. Contra quos Grimuald cum Langobardis
into Italy entered against whom Grimoald with the-Lombards
progressus, hac eos arte decepit. Fugere quippe se eorum
having-advanced by-this them art deceived to-flee for himself their
impetum simulans, castra sua simul cum tentoriis et diversis
onset feigning camp his together with the-tents and with-various
pariter referta bonis praecipueque vini optimi copia hominibus
equally filled goods and-especially of-wine excellent a-plenty of-men
omnino vacua reliquit. Quo dum Francorum acies
altogether empty left whither when of-the-Franks the-battle-lines
advenissent, existimantes Grimualdum cum Langobardis pavore
had-come thinking Grimoald with the-Lombards by-fear
deterritos castra integra reliquisse, mox laeti effecti certatim
terrified the-camp whole to-have-left soon glad made eagerly

cuncta invadunt coenamque affluentissimam instruunt. Qui
all-things invade and-a-dinner most-abundant set-up who
dum diversis epulis multoque degravati vino somnoque
when with-various feasts and-with-much weighed-down wine and-sleep
quievissent, Grimuald super eos post noctis medium
had-rested Grimoald upon them after of-the-night the-middle
inruens, tanta eos caede prostravit, ut vix pauci ex eis
rushing with-such them slaughter laid-low that scarcely few of them
elapsi patriam valuerint reppedare. Qui locus, ubi
having-slipped-away the-fatherland were-able to-return which place where
hoc gestum est proelium, Francorum usque hodie Rivus
this waged was the-battle of-the-Franks up-to today Rivus
appellatur, nec longe distat ab Astensis civitatulae moenibus.
is-called nor far is-distant from of-the-Asti little-city the-walls

Quomodo Constans augustus Italiam veniens, Beneventum obsedit

VI · CONSTANS COMES TO ITALY

The emperor Constans sets out to wrest Italy from the Lombards and lands at Taranto, first asking a hermit whether he can conquer them. The hermit answers that they cannot be overcome now, since a queen has built a church of John the Baptist among them, but that when it is despised they will perish. Paul has seen that church at Monza given to unworthy men for bribes.

His diebus Constantinus augustus, qui et Constans est
in-these days Constantine augustus who also Constans is
appellatus, Italiam a Langobardorum manu eruere cupiens,
called Italy from of-the-Lombards the-hand to-rescue desiring
Constantinopolim egressus, per litoralia iter habens,
from-Constantinople having-gone-out along the-coasts the-journey having

Athenas venit, indeque mare transgressus, Tarentum applicuit.
to-Athens came and-thence the-sea having-crossed at-Taranto landed
Qui tamen prius ad solitarium quendam, qui prophetiae
who yet first to a-hermit certain who of-prophecy
spiritum habere dicebatur, adiit, studiose ab eo sciscitans,
the-spirit to-have was-said went eagerly from him inquiring
utrum gentem Langobardorum, quae in Italia habitabat,
whether the-nation of-the-Lombards which in Italy dwelt
superare et optinere possit. A quo cum servus Dei
to-overcome and to-hold he-might-be-able from whom when the-servant of-God
spatium unius noctis expetisset, ut pro hoc ipso Dominum
the-space of-one night had-asked that for this very-thing the-Lord
supplicaret, facto mane ita eidem augusto respondit: 'Gens
he-might-beseech made morning thus to-the-same augustus answered the-nation
Langobardorum superari modo ab aliquo non potest, quia
of-the-Lombards to-be-overcome now by anyone not can because
regina quaedam ex alia provincia veniens basilicam beati
a-queen certain from another province coming a-basilica of-blessed
Iohannis baptistae in Langobardorum finibus construxit,
John the-Baptist in of-the-Lombards the-borders built
et propter hoc ipse beatus Iohannes pro Langobardorum
and on-account-of this himself blessed John for of-the-Lombards
gente continue intercedit. Veniet autem tempus, quando
the-nation continually intercedes shall-come moreover a-time when
ipsud oraculum habebitur despectui, et tunc gens ipsa
that-very oratory shall-be-held in-contempt and then nation that-very
peribit'. Quod nos ita factum esse probavimus, qui
shall-perish which we so done to-have-been have-proved who
ante Langobardorum perditionem eandem beati Iohannis
before of-the-Lombards the-ruin the-same of-blessed John
basilicam, quae utique in loco qui Modicia dicitur est
basilica which certainly in the-place which Monza is-called is

constituta, per viles personas ordinari conspeximus, ita
established through vile persons to-be-ordered we-beheld so
ut indignis et adulteris non pro vitae merito, sed
that to-the-unworthy and adulterers not for of-life merit but
praemiorum datione, isdem locus venerabilis largiretur.
of-rewards by-the-giving the-same place venerable was-bestowed

Quomodo Grimuald invitatus a filio suo Romualdo Beneventum advenit

VII · CONSTANS BESIEGES BENEVENTO

Constans takes nearly all the Lombard cities he passes, destroys Lucera, and besieges Benevento, where Grimoald's young son Romuald is duke. Romuald sends his guardian Sesuald to his father, and Grimoald sets out, though many Lombards desert on the way. Sesuald, sent back to announce him, is captured, and the frightened emperor seeks terms so as to return to Naples.

Igitur cum, ut diximus, Constans augustus Tarentum venisset,
therefore when as we-have-said Constans augustus to-Taranto had-come
egressus exinde, Beneventanorum fines invasit omnesque
having-gone-out thence of-the-Beneventans the-borders invaded and-all
pene per quas venerat Langobardorum civitates cepit.
nearly through which he-had-come of-the-Lombards the-cities took
Luceriam quoque, opulentam Apuliae civitatem, expugnatam
Lucera also the-wealthy of-Apulia city stormed
fortius invadens diruit, ad solum usque prostravit.
more-strongly invading destroyed to the-ground up-to laid-low
Agerentia sane propter munitissimam loci positionem
Acerenza truly on-account-of the-most-fortified of-the-place position
capere minime potuit. Deinde cum omni suo exercitu
to-take by-no-means he-could then with all his army

Beneventum circumdedit et eam vehementer expugnare coepit;
Benevento surrounded and it violently to-storm began
ubi tunc Romuald, Grimualdi filius adhuc iuvenulus, ducatum
where then Romuald of-Grimoald son still a-young-man the-duchy
tenebat. Qui statim ut imperatoris adventum cognovit,
held who as-soon as of-the-emperor the-coming he-learned
nutricium suum nomine Sesualdum ad patrem Grimualdum
guardian his by-name Sesuald to father Grimoald
trans Padum direxit, obsecrans, ut quantocius veniret
across the-Po directed beseeching that as-quickly-as-possible he-should-come
filioque suo ac Beneventanis, quos ipse nutrierat, potenter
and-to-son his and to-the-Beneventans whom he-himself had-nourished powerfully
succurreret. Quod Grimuald rex audiens, statim cum exercitu
should-give-aid which Grimoald king hearing at-once with an-army
filio laturus auxilium Beneventum pergere coepit. Quem
to-son about-to-bring help to-Benevento to-go began whom
plures ex Langobardis in itinere relinquentes, ad propria
many of the-Lombards on the-journey leaving to their-own
remearunt, dicentes, quia expoliasset palatium et iam non
returned saying that he-had-despoiled the-palace and now not
reversurus repeteret Beneventum. Interim imperatoris
about-to-return was-seeking-again Benevento meanwhile of-the-emperor
exercitus Beneventum diversis machinis vehementer
the-army Benevento with-various engines violently
expugnabat, econtra Romuald cum Langobardis fortiter
was-storming on-the-other-hand Romuald with the-Lombards bravely
resistebat. Qui quamvis cum tanta multitudine congredi
was-resisting who although with so-great a-multitude to-engage
manu ad manum propter paucitatem exercitus non auderet,
hand to hand on-account-of the-fewness of-the-army not he-dared
frequenter tamen cum expeditis iuvenibus hostium castra
often yet with light-armed young-men of-the-enemies the-camp

inrumpens, magnas eisdem inferebat undique clades. Cumque
breaking-into great to-them was-inflicting on-all-sides disasters and-when
Grimuald, eius pater, iamque properaret, eundem nutricium
Grimoald his father and-now was-hastening the-same guardian
eius, de quo praemisimus, ad filium misit, qui ei suum
his about whom we-have-spoken-before to the-son he-sent who to-him his
adventum nuntiaret. Qui cum prope Beneventum venisset,
coming should-announce who when near Benevento he-had-come
a Grecis captus imperatori delatus est. Qui ab eo unde
by the-Greeks captured to-the-emperor brought was who from him whence
adveniret requirens, ille se a Grimualdo rege venire
he-came asking he himself from Grimoald king to-come
dixit eundemque regem citius adventare nuntiavit. Statimque
said and-the-same king quickly to-be-arriving announced and-at-once
imperator exterritus, consilium cum suis iniit, quatenus cum
the-emperor terrified counsel with his-men entered so-that with
Romualdo pacisceretur, ut Neapolim possit reverti.
Romuald he-might-make-terms that to-Naples he-might-be-able to-return

Quomodo imperator, accepta obside Romualdi sorore, ad Benevento discessit

VIII · SESUALD'S MESSAGE FROM THE WALLS

Constans takes Romuald's sister Gisa as a hostage and has Sesuald brought to the walls to say Grimoald cannot come. Instead Sesuald tells Romuald to stand firm, for his father is camped that night by the Sangro, and asks mercy for his wife and children. The emperor has his head cut off and thrown into the city, and Romuald kisses it weeping and buries it with honor.

Acceptaque obside Romualdi sororem, cui nomen Gisa fuit,
and-received as-hostage of-Romuald the-sister whose name Gisa was
cum eodem pacem fecit. Eius vero nutricium Sesualdum ad
with the-same peace he-made his but guardian Sesuald to
muros duci praecepit, mortem eidem minatus, si aliquid
the-walls to-be-led he-ordered death to-the-same having-threatened if anything
Romualdo aut civibus de Grimualdi adventum nuntiaret,
to-Romuald or to-the-citizens about of-Grimoald the-coming he-should-announce
sed potius asseveraret, eundem venire minime posse. Quod
but rather he-should-assert the-same to-come by-no-means to-be-able which
ille ita se facturum ut ei praecipiebatur promisit; sed
he so himself about-to-do as to-him was-ordered promised but
cum prope muros advenisset, velle se Romualdum videre
when near the-walls he-had-come to-wish himself Romuald to-see
dixit. Quo cum Romuald citius advenisset, sic ad eum
he-said whither when Romuald quickly had-come thus to him
locutus est: 'Constans esto, domine Romuald, et habens
spoken has steadfast be O-lord Romuald and having
fiduciam noli turbari, quia tuus genitor citius tibi auxilium
confidence do-not be-troubled because your father quickly to-you help
praebiturus aderit. Nam scias, eum hac nocte iuxta
about-to-furnish shall-be-present for you-should-know him this night beside

Sangrum fluvium cum valido exercitu manere. Tantum
the-Sangro river with a-strong army to-be-staying only
obsecro, ut misericordiam exhibeas cum mea uxore et filiis,
I-beseech that mercy you-show with my wife and children
quia gens ista perfida me vivere non sinebit'. Cumque hoc
because nation this faithless me to-live not shall-allow and-when this
dixisset, iussu imperatoris caput eius abscisum atque cum
he-had-said by-order of-the-emperor the-head his cut-off and with
belli machina quam petrariam vocant in urbem proiectum est.
of-war an-engine which petraria they-call into the-city thrown was
Quod caput Romuald sibi deferri iussit idque lacrimans
which head Romuald to-himself to-be-brought ordered and-it weeping
obsculatus est dignoque in loculo tumulari praecepit.
kissed has and-a-worthy in coffin to-be-entombed ordered

Quomodo imperatoris exercitum Mitola Capuanus comes afflixit

IX · MITOLA STRIKES THE EMPEROR'S ARMY

Fearing Grimoald's sudden arrival, the emperor abandons the siege of Benevento and sets out for Naples, and Mitola, count of Capua, badly mauls his army by the river Calore at a place still called Pugna.

Metuens igitur imperator subito Grimualdi regis adventum,
fearing therefore the-emperor sudden of-Grimoald king the-coming
dimissa Beneventi obsidione, Neapolim proficiscitur. Cuius
abandoned of-Benevento the-siege to-Naples sets-out whose
tamen exercitum Mitola Capuanus comes iuxta fluenta
yet army Mitola of-Capua count beside the-streams

Caloris fluminis in loco qui usque hodie Pugna dicitur
of-the-Calore river in the-place which up-to today Pugna is-called
vehementer adtrivit.
violently wore-down

Quomodo Romualdus Saburrum ab imperatore missum cum viginti milibus vicit

X · ROMUALD DEFEATS SABURRUS

At Naples the noble Saburrus asks the emperor for twenty thousand men and swears to beat Romuald, and camps at Forino. Romuald, given part of his father's army, attacks with trumpets from four sides, and Amalong, the king's pike-bearer, lifts a Greek off his saddle on his pike and holds him aloft. The Greeks flee in panic, and Saburrus brings his emperor disgrace instead of a trophy.

Postquam vero imperator Neapolim pervenit, unus ex eius
after indeed the-emperor to-Naples came one of his
optimatibus, cui nomen Saburrus erat, ab augusto, ut
nobles whose name Saburrus was from the-augustus as
fertur, viginti milia militum expetiit, seque cum
it-is-reported twenty thousand of-soldiers requested and-himself with
Romualdo pugnaturum victoremque spopondit. Qui cum
Romuald about-to-fight and-victor pledged who when
accepto exercitu ad locum cui Forinus nomen est advenisset
received the-army to the-place whose Forino name is had-come
ibique castra posuisset, Grimuald, qui iam Beneventum
and-there a-camp had-pitched Grimoald who already to-Benevento
advenerat, haec audiens, contra eum proficisci voluit. Cui
had-come these-things hearing against him to-set-out wished to-whom
filius Romuald: 'Non est opus', inquit; 'sed tantum partem
the-son Romuald not there-is need he-says but only a-part

nobis de exercitu vestro tribuite. Ego Deo favente cum eo
to-us of army your grant I God favoring with him
pugnabo; et cum vicero, maior utique gloria vestrae
shall-fight and when I-shall-have-conquered greater certainly glory to-your
potentiae adscribetur'. Factumque est; et accepta aliqua
power shall-be-ascribed and-done it-was and received some
parte de patris exercitu, pariterque cum suis hominibus
part of of-the-father the-army and-equally with his men
contra Saburrum proficiscitur. Qui priusquam bellum cum
against Saburrus he-sets-out who before war with
eo iniret, a quattuor partibus tubas insonare praecepit
him he-entered from four sides trumpets to-sound ordered
moxque super eos audenter inrupit. Cumque utraeque acies
and-soon upon them boldly burst and-when both battle-lines
forti intentione pugnarent, tunc unus de regis exercitu
with-strong intent were-fighting then one from of-the-king the-army
nomine Amalongus, qui regium contum ferre erat solitus,
by-name Amalong who the-royal pike to-carry was accustomed
quendam Greculum eodem contulo utrisque manibus
a-certain little-Greek with-the-same little-pike with-both hands
fortiter percutiens, de sella super quam equitabat sustulit
strongly striking from the-saddle on which he-was-riding lifted
eumque in aera super caput suum levavit. Quod cernens
and-him into the-air over head his raised which seeing
Grecorum exercitus, mox inmenso pavore perterritus in fugam
of-the-Greeks the-army soon by-immense fear terrified into flight
convertitur, ultimaque pernicie caesus, sibi fugiens mortem,
is-turned and-by-utmost ruin slain for-itself fleeing death
Romualdo et Langobardis victoriam peperit. Ita Saburrus,
for-Romuald and the-Lombards victory brought-forth thus Saburrus
qui se imperatori suo victoriae tropeum de Langobardis
who himself to-emperor his of-victory a-trophy over the-Lombards

promiserat patrare, ad eum cum paucis remeans, ignominiam
had-promised to-accomplish to him with few returning disgrace
deportavit; Romuald vero, patrata de inimicis victoria,
carried-back Romuald but accomplished over the-enemies victory
Beneventum triumphans reversus est patrique gaudium
to-Benevento triumphing returned has and-to-the-father joy
et cunctis securitatem, sublato hostium timore, convexit.
and to-all security removed of-the-enemies the-fear brought

De malis quae Constans augustus Romanis intulit, et de praedationibus quas singulis regionibus fecit, et quomodo extinctus est

XI · CONSTANS PLUNDERS ROME AND SICILY AND IS KILLED

Failing against the Lombards, Constans turns his cruelty on the Romans: met by Pope Vitalian, he strips Rome of its bronze in twelve days, even the tiles of the Pantheon, and sends it to Constantinople. From Syracuse he so oppresses Calabria, Sicily, Africa, and Sardinia that wives are parted from husbands and sacred vessels taken, until he is killed by his own men in the bath.

At vero Constans augustus cum nihil se contra
but indeed Constans augustus when nothing himself against
Langobardos gessisse conspiceret, omnes saevitiae suae
the-Lombards to-have-accomplished he-saw all of-cruelty his
minas contra suos, hoc est Romanos, retorsit. Nam
the-threats against his-people that is the-Romans he-turned-back for
egressus Neapolim, Romam perrexit. Cui sexto ab
having-gone-out from-Naples to-Rome he-went whom at-the-sixth from
urbe miliario Vitalianus papa cum sacerdotibus et Romano
the-city milestone Vitalian pope with the-priests and the-Roman
populo occurrit. Qui augustus cum ad beati Petri limina
people met which augustus when to of-blessed Peter the-threshold

pervenisset, optulit ibi pallium auro textilem; et manens
he-had-come offered there a-pall with-gold woven and remaining
aput Romam diebus duodecim, omnia quae fuerant antiquitus
at Rome for-days twelve all-things which had-been anciently
instituta ex aere in ornamentum civitatis deposuit, in
set-up of bronze for the-ornament of-the-city took-down to
tantum ut etiam basilicam beatae Mariae, quae aliquando
such-a-degree that even the-basilica of-blessed Mary which once
pantheum vocabatur et conditum fuerat in honore omnium
Pantheon was-called and founded had-been in honor of-all
deorum, et iam ibi per concessionem superiorum principum
gods and now there by the-grant of-earlier princes
locus erat omnium martyrum, discoperiret tegulasque aereas
the-place was of-all martyrs he-uncovered and-the-tiles bronze
exinde auferret easque simul cum aliis omnibus ornamentis
thence carried-off and-them together with other all ornaments
Constantinopolim transmitteret. Deinde reversus imperator
to-Constantinople sent then having-returned the-emperor
Neapolim, itinere terreno perrexit civitatem Regium.
to-Naples by-the-journey overland went-to the-city Reggio
Ingressusque Siciliam per indictionem septimam, habitavit
and-having-entered Sicily through the-indiction seventh dwelt
in Syracusa, et tales afflictiones inposuit populo seu
in Syracuse and such afflictions laid on-the-people or
habitatoribus vel possessoribus Calabriae, Siciliae, Africae
the-inhabitants or the-possessors of-Calabria of-Sicily of-Africa
atque Sardiniae, quales antea numquam auditae sunt, ita ut
and of-Sardinia as before never heard were so that
etiam uxores a maritis vel filii a parentibus separarentur.
even wives from husbands or sons from parents were-separated
Sed et alia multa et inaudita harum regionum populi
but also other many-things and unheard-of of-these regions the-peoples

sunt perpessi, ita ut alicui spes vitae non remaneret. Nam
have suffered so that to-anyone hope of-life not remained for
et vasa sacrata vel cimilia sanctarum Dei ecclesiarum
both the-vessels consecrated and the-treasures of-the-holy of-God churches
imperiali iussu et Grecorum avaricia sublata sunt. Mansit
by-imperial order and of-the-Greeks by-the-avarice carried-off were remained
autem imperator in Sicilia ab indictione septima usque in
moreover the-emperor in Sicily from the-indiction seventh all-the-way into
duodecimam; sed tandem tantarum iniquitatum poenas luit,
the-twelfth but at-last of-such-great iniquities the-penalties he-paid
atque dum se in balneo lavaret, a suis extinctus est.
and while himself in the-bath he-was-washing by his-men killed he-was

De imperio Mecetii, et de morte ipsius

XII · MECETIUS' USURPATION AND DEATH

After Constans is killed at Syracuse, Mecetius seizes the rule in Sicily without the eastern army's will. Soldiers from Istria, Campania, Africa, and Sardinia come and kill him, and the false emperor's head is taken to Constantinople with many of his mutilated officials.

Interfecto igitur aput Siracusas Constante imperatore, Mecetius
killed therefore at Syracuse Constans emperor Mecetius
in Sicilia regnum arripuit, sed absque orientalis exercitus
in Sicily the-kingdom seized but without of-the-eastern army
voluntate. Contra quem Italiae milites alii per Histriam,
the-will against whom of-Italy the-soldiers some through Istria
alii per partes Campaniae, alii vero a partibus Africae et
others through the-parts of-Campania others but from the-parts of-Africa and
Sardiniae venientes in Siracusas, eum vita privarunt. Multique
of-Sardinia coming into Syracuse him of-life deprived and-many

ex iudicibus eius detruncati Constantinopolim perducti sunt;
of the-judges his mutilated to-Constantinople brought were
cum quibus pariter et falsi imperatoris caput est deportatum.
with whom equally also of-the-false emperor the-head was carried-off

Quomodo Sarraceni ab Alexandria venientes, Siciliam populati sunt et quicquid Constans augustus de Roma abstulerat depraedati sunt

XIII · THE SARACENS SACK SYRACUSE

Hearing this, the Saracens, who have overrun Alexandria and Egypt, come suddenly with many ships, take Syracuse, and slaughter its people. They carry off great booty and all the bronze Constans took from Rome, and return to Alexandria.

Haec audiens gens Sarracenorum, quae iam Alexandriam
these-things hearing the-nation of-the-Saracens which already Alexandria
et Aegyptum pervaserat, subito cum multis navibus venientes,
and Egypt had-overrun suddenly with many ships coming
Siciliam invadunt, Siracusas ingrediuntur multamque stragem
Sicily invade Syracuse enter and-great slaughter
faciunt populorum, vix paucis evadentibus, qui per
make of-the-peoples scarcely few escaping who through
munitissima castra et iuga confugerant montium, auferentes
the-most-fortified forts and ridges had-fled of-the-mountains carrying-off
quoque praedam nimiam et omne illud quod Constans
also booty excessive and all that which Constans
augustus a Roma abstulerat ornatum in aere et diversis
augustus from Rome had-carried-off adornment in bronze and various
speciebus; sicque Alexandriam reversi sunt.
kinds and-thus to-Alexandria returned have

De morte Gisae, sororis Romualdi

XIV · THE DEATH OF GISA

Grimoald's daughter, taken from Benevento as a hostage, dies on reaching Sicily.

Porro regis filiam, quam de Benevento obsidis nomine
further of-the-king the-daughter whom from Benevento of-hostage in-the-name
sublatam diximus, Siciliam veniens, diem clausit extremum.
carried-off we-have-said Sicily coming the-day closed last

De pluviis et tonitruis, quae eo tempore nimiae factae sunt

XV · RAINS AND THUNDER

There are rains and thunderstorms such as no one remembers, and many thousands of people and animals are killed by lightning. That year the legumes the rains have kept from being gathered grow again and ripen.

Hoc tempore tantae pluviae tantaque tonitrua fuerunt, quanta
at-this time such rains and-such thunders there-were as-great-as
ante nullus meminerat hominum, ita ut innumera hominum
before no-one remembered of-men so that innumerable of-men
et animantium milia fulminibus essent perempta. Eo
and of-animals thousand by-lightnings were slain in-that
anno legumina, quae propter pluvias colligi nequiverunt,
year the-legumes which on-account-of the-rains to-be-gathered could-not
iterum renata et ad maturitatem usque perducta sunt.
again reborn and to ripeness up-to brought were

Quomodo rex Grimuald Transamundum ducem aput Spoletium ordinavit eique suam filiam in matrimonium tradidit

XVI · TRANSAMUND MADE DUKE OF SPOLETO

Having saved Benevento from the Greeks, Grimoald gives Transamund, once count of Capua, his daughter in marriage and makes him duke of Spoleto, and then returns to Pavia.

At vero rex Grimuald, ereptis Beneventanis et eorum
but indeed king Grimoald rescued the-Beneventans and their
provinciis a Grecis, ad palatium suum aput Ticinum
provinces from the-Greeks to palace his at Pavia
repedare disponens, Transamundum, qui dudum Capuae
to-return arranging Transamund who formerly of-Capua
comes fuerat et ei ad percipiendum regnum strenuissime
count had-been and to-him for gaining the-kingdom most-vigorously
paruerat, data ei in matrimonium sua filia, Romualdi
had-obeyed given to-him in marriage his daughter of-Romuald
altera sorore, eum post Attonem, de quo superius diximus,
the-other sister him after Atto about whom above we-have-said
aput Spoletium ductorem effecit, indeque Ticinum reversus est.
at Spoleto leader made and-thence to-Pavia returned has

Quod in Foroiuli post Grasulfum Ago ducatum tenuit, et post hunc eorum ductor Lupus effectus est

XVII · AGO AND LUPUS AT FRIULI

When Grasulf dies, Ago becomes duke of Friuli, and a house there is still called Ago's house. After him Lupus becomes duke, rides along an old causeway across the sea to Grado, and carries off the treasures of the church of Aquileia. When Grimoald goes to Benevento he entrusts his palace to Lupus.

Siquidem, ut superius praemiseramus, Grasulfo Foroiulanorum
for as above we-had-set-forth Grasulf of-the-Friulians
duce defuncto, successor ei in ducato Ago datus, de
duke having-died successor to-him in the-duchy Ago given from
cuius nomine usque hodie domus quaedam intra Foroiuli
whose name up-to today house a-certain within Friuli
constituta domus Agonis appellatur. Quo Agone mortuo,
established the-house of-Ago is-called which Ago dead
Foroiulanorum ductor Lupus efficitur. Hic Lupus in Grados
of-the-Friulians leader Lupus is-made this Lupus into Grado
insulam, quae non longe ab Aquileia est, cum equestri
the-island which not far from Aquileia is with a-mounted
exercitu per stratam quae antiquitus per mare facta fuerat
army by the-causeway which anciently through the-sea made had-been
introivit, et depraedata ipsa civitate, Aquileiensis ecclesiae
entered and plundered that-very city of-the-Aquileian church
thesauros exinde auferens, reportavit. Huic Lupo, quando
the-treasures thence carrying-off brought-back to-this Lupus when
Grimuald Beneventum perrexit, suum palatium commendavit.
Grimoald to-Benevento went his palace he-entrusted

Quomodo Lupus dux contra Grimualdum rebellavit

XVIII · LUPUS REBELS

With the king away, Lupus behaves insolently at Pavia, not expecting him to return. When the king comes back, Lupus goes to Friuli and, conscious of his guilt, rebels.

Qui Lupus dum rege absente multa insolenter aput
who Lupus when the-king being-absent many-things insolently at
Ticinum egisset, quippe quem reversurum non aestimaret:
Pavia had-done inasmuch-as whom about-to-return not he-reckoned
revertente rege, sciens, eidem ea quae non recte
returning the-king knowing to-the-same those-things which not rightly
gesserat displicere, Forumiuli petens, contra eundem regem
he-had-done to-displease Friuli seeking against the-same king
suae nequitiae conscius rebellavit.
of-his wickedness conscious rebelled

Quomodo ipse dux bellum contra Avares gessit

XIX · LUPUS FIGHTS THE AVARS

Not wishing to stir up civil war among the Lombards, Grimoald asks the khagan to crush Lupus. As old men who were there tell Paul, Lupus fights the Avars for three days at Flovius, killing many at the cost of more and more of his own. On the fourth day so great a host comes that the Lombards barely escape by flight.

Tum Grimuald, nolens civile bellum inter Langobardos
then Grimoald not-wishing civil war among the-Lombards
excitare, regi Avarum cacano mandavit, ut in Forumiuli
to-stir-up to-the-king of-the-Avars the-khagan sent-word that into Friuli
contra Lupum ducem cum exercitu veniret eumque bello
against Lupus duke with an-army he-should-come and-him in-war

protereret. Quod et factum est. Nam veniente cacano cum
should-crush which also done was for coming the-khagan with
magno exercitu, in loco qui Flovius dicitur, sicut nobis
a-great army in the-place which Flovius is-called as to-us
retulerunt seniores viri qui in ipso bello fuerunt, per tres
related elder men who in that-very war were for three
dies Lupus dux cum Foroiulanis adversus cacani exercitum
days Lupus duke with the-Friulians against of-the-khagan the-army
conflixit. Et prima quidem die validum eius exercitum,
clashed and on-the-first indeed day strong his army
paucis suis vulneratis, prostravit. Secunda vero die, iam
few his-men wounded he-laid-low on-the-second indeed day now
aliquantis e suis vulneratis et mortuis, pari modo multos
some of his-men wounded and dead in-equal manner many
ex Avaribus extincxit. Tertia vero die, iam pluribus ex
of the-Avars he-killed on-the-third indeed day now very-many of
suis sauciatis sive peremptis, nihilominus magnum cacani
his-men wounded or slain nonetheless great of-the-khagan
exercitum delevit praedamque copiosam invasit. At vero
the-army destroyed and-booty abundant seized but indeed
die quarto tantam super se multitudinem conspexerunt
on-day fourth such-a over themselves multitude they-beheld
venientem, ut vix per fugam evadere possint.
coming that scarcely by flight to-escape they-could

De morte Lupi ducis, et quomodo Avares Foroiulanorum fines depraedati sunt

XX · LUPUS KILLED, AND FRIULI RAVAGED

Lupus is killed, the survivors shut themselves in their forts, and the Avars ravage the land. When Grimoald bids them stop, they answer that they will not give up Friuli, which they have won by their own arms.

Ibi itaque Lupo duce perempto, reliqui qui remanserant
there and-so Lupus duke slain the-rest who had-remained
sese per castella communiunt. Avares vero per omnes
themselves through the-fortresses fortify the-Avars but through all
eorum fines discurrentes, cuncta rapinis invadunt vel
their borders running-about all-things with-plunderings invade or
subposito igni conburunt. Qui cum per aliquot dies hoc
put-under fire burn who when through some days this
facerent, a Grimualdo eis mandatum est, ut iam a
they-were-doing by Grimoald to-them word-sent was that now from
devastatione quiescerent. Qui legatos ad Grimualdum mittunt,
devastation they-should-rest who envoys to Grimoald send
dicentes, Foroiuli se minime relicturos, quam armis
saying Friuli themselves by-no-means about-to-leave which with-arms
propriis conquisissent.
their-own they-had-won

Quomodo Avares nolentes de Foroiuli exire Grimualdi astutia expulsi sunt

XXI · GRIMOALD'S RUSE AGAINST THE AVARS

Grimoald gathers an army, and having only a small part of one, parades the same men for days before the Avar envoys in different dress and arms, as though new troops keep arriving. He tells them he will fall on the khagan with all of it unless the Avars leave Friuli, and the khagan goes home.

Tunc Grimuald necessitate conpulsus exercitum quoadunare
then Grimoald by-necessity compelled an-army to-gather
coepit, quatenus Avares de suis finibus exturbaret. In
began so-that the-Avars from his borders he-might-drive-out in
medio itaque campo sua castra et Avarum hospitium
the-middle and-so plain his camp and of-the-Avars the-lodging
conponens, cum exercitus partem exiguam haberet, eosdem
arranging since of-the-army a-part small he-had the-same
ipsos quos habebat diverso habitu variisque instructos
very-ones whom he-had in-different dress and-with-various furnished
armis ante oculos legatorum per dies aliquot, quasi
arms before the-eyes of-the-envoys through days some as-if
novus iugiter exercitus adventaret, frequenter transire fecit.
a-new continually army were-arriving frequently to-pass he-made
Avarum vero legati dum eundem ipsum exercitum aliis et
of-the-Avars but the-envoys while the-same very army in-other and
aliis modis praeterire conspiciunt, inmensam Langobardorum
other ways to-pass-by they-behold immense of-the-Lombards
multitudinem esse, crediderunt. Quibus Grimuald ita dixit:
a-multitude to-be believed to-whom Grimoald thus said
'Cum omni hac quam vidistis exercitus multitudine statim
with all this which you-have-seen of-army multitude at-once

super cacanum inruam et Avares, nisi de Foroiulanorum
upon the-khagan I-shall-rush and the-Avars unless from of-the-Friulians
finibus velociter exierint'. His visis et auditis
the-borders swiftly they-shall-have-gone-out these-things seen and heard
legati Avarum cum haec suo regi nuntiassent, mox
the-envoys of-the-Avars when these-things to-their king had-announced soon
cum omni suo exercitu ad proprium reversus est regnum.
with all his army to his-own returned has kingdom

De Arnefrit, filio Lupi

XXII · ARNEFRIT KILLED AT NIMIS

Lupus' son Arnefrit wants his father's duchy, but fearing Grimoald he flees to the Slavs of Carantanum. Coming back with them to take the duchy by force, he is killed by the Friulians near the fort of Nimis.

Denique Lupo hoc modo ut praemisimus interempto,
finally Lupus in-this manner as we-have-set-forth killed
Arnefrit, eius filius, voluit in loco patris aput Foroiuli
Arnefrit his son wished in the-place of-the-father at Friuli
optinere ducatum. Sed metuens Grimualdi regis vires,
to-obtain the-duchy but fearing of-Grimoald king the-strength
fugiit ad Sclavorum gentem in Carnuntum, quod corrupte
fled to of-the-Slavs the-nation in Carnuntum which corruptly
vocitant Carantanum. Qui postea cum Sclavis adveniens,
they-call Carantanum who afterward with the-Slavs coming
quasi ducatum eorum viribus resumpturus, aput Nemas
as-if the-duchy by-their strength about-to-resume at Nimis

castrum, quod non longe a Foroiuli distat, inruentibus
the-fort which not far from Friuli is-distant rushing
super se Foroiulanis, extinctus est.
upon himself the-Friulians killed was

De Wictari Foroiulanorum duce, et de eius victoria de Sclavis

XXIII · WECHTARI ROUTS THE SLAVS

Wechtari of Vicenza, a kind man, becomes duke of Friuli, and the Slavs gather to attack, thinking him away at Pavia. With twenty-five men he rides to the Natisone bridge, and when the Slavs mock him as a patriarch with his clerics, he takes off his helmet and shows his bald head. Crying that it is Wechtari, they panic, and few of five thousand escape.

Deinde ordinatus est aput Foroiuli dux Wechtari, qui fuit
then ordained was at Friuli duke Wechtari who was
oriundus de Vincentina civitate, vir benignus et populum
sprung from the-Vicenza city a-man kind and the-people
suaviter regens. Hunc cum audisset Sclavorum gens Ticinum
gently ruling him when had-heard of-the-Slavs the-nation to-Pavia
profectum esse, congregata valida multitudine, voluerunt
set-out to-have gathered a-strong multitude they-wished
super Foroiulanum castrum inruere; et venientes castrametati
upon the-Friulian fort to-rush and coming encamped
sunt in loco qui Broxas dicitur, non longe a Foroiuli.
have in the-place which Broxas is-called not far from Friuli
Secundum divinam autem dispositionem contigit, ut dux
according-to the-divine moreover dispensation it-happened that duke
Wechtari superiori vespere a Ticino reverteretur nescientibus
Wechtari on-the-earlier evening from Pavia returned not-knowing
Sclavis. Cuius comites cum ad propria, ut adsolet fieri,
the-Slavs whose companions when to their-own as is-wont to-happen

remeassent, ipse hoc nuntium de Sclavis audiens, cum
had-returned he-himself this news about the-Slavs hearing with
paucis viris, hoc est viginti quinque, contra eos progressus
few men that is twenty five against them advanced
est. Quem Sclavi cum tam paucis venire conspicientes,
has whom the-Slavs when so with-few to-come beholding
inriserunt, dicentes, patriarcham contra se cum clericis
mocked saying the-patriarch against themselves with clerics
adventare. Qui cum ad pontem Natisionis fluminis, qui
to-be-arriving who when to the-bridge of-the-Natisone river which
ibidem est ubi Sclavi residebant, propinquasset, cassidem
there is where the-Slavs were-staying he-had-drawn-near the-helmet
sibi de capite auferens, vultum suum Sclavis ostendit;
from-himself from the-head taking-off face his to-the-Slavs showed
erat enim calvo capite. Quem dum Sclavi, quia ipse
he-was for with-bald head whom when the-Slavs that he-himself
esset Wechtari, cognovissent, mox perturbati, Wechtari
was Wechtari had-recognized soon thrown-into-confusion Wechtari
adesse clamitant, Deoque eos exterrente, plus de fuga
to-be-at-hand keep-shouting and-God them terrifying more about flight
quam de proelio cogitant. Tunc super eos Wechtari cum
than about battle think then upon them Wechtari with
paucis quos habebat inruens, tanta eos strage prostravit, ut
the-few whom he-had rushing with-such them slaughter laid-low that
ex quinque milibus viris vix pauci qui evaderent remanerent.
of five thousand men scarcely few who might-escape remained

De morte Wictari, et quomodo ei Landari successit, et de Rodoaldo, qui post eum ducatum tenuit

XXIV · LANDARI AND RODOALD

After Wechtari, Landari holds the duchy of Friuli, and when he dies Rodoald succeeds him.

Post hunc Wechtari Landari aput Foroiuli ducatum tenuit.
after this Wechtari Landari at Friuli the-duchy held
Quo defuncto, ei Rodoald in ducato successit.
who having-died to-him Rodoald in the-duchy succeeded

Quomodo Grimuald filiam Lupi ducis Romualdo suo filio sociavit

XXV · ROMUALD MARRIES LUPUS' DAUGHTER

After Lupus' death Grimoald gives Lupus' daughter Theuderada in marriage to his son Romuald, who rules Benevento, and she bears him three sons, Grimoald, Gisulf, and Arichis.

Mortuo igitur, ut dixeramus, Lupo duce, Grimualdus rex filiam
dead therefore as we-had-said Lupus duke Grimoald king daughter
eius nomine Theuderadam suo filio Romualdo, qui Beneventum
his by-name Theuderada to-his son Romuald who Benevento
regebat, in matrimonium tradidit. Ex qua inde tres filios,
ruled in marriage handed-over from whom thereupon three sons
hoc est Grimualdum, Gisulfum necnon et Arichis, genuit.
that is Grimoald Gisulf and-also even Arichis he-begot

Quomodo rex Grimuald de suis se contemptoribus ultus est

XXVI · GRIMOALD PUNISHES THE DESERTERS

King Grimoald takes vengeance on all those who deserted him when he set out for Benevento.

Rex quoque Grimuald de omnibus illis, qui eum, quando
the-king also Grimoald on all those who him when
Beneventum profectus fuerat, deseruerunt, suas iniurias ultus
to-Benevento set-out he-had deserted his wrongs avenged
est.
has

Quomodo rex Grimuald Forum Populi expugnans delevit

XXVII · FORLIMPOPOLI DESTROYED

Grimoald destroys Forlimpopoli, a Roman city whose citizens wronged him on his way to Benevento and often harmed his envoys. Entering Tuscany by the Bardo pass in Lent, he falls on it on Holy Saturday at the hour of baptism and kills even the deacons baptizing infants at the font. Very few live there still.

Sed et Forum Populi, Romanorum civitatem, cuius cives
but also Forum of-the-People of-the-Romans the-city whose citizens
eidem adversa quaedam intulerant Beneventum proficiscenti
to-the-same hostile certain-things had-inflicted to-Benevento setting-out
missosque illius euntes et redeuntes a Benevento saepius
and-the-envoys his going and returning from Benevento often
laeserant, hoc modo delevit. Quadragesimorum tempore
had-harmed in-this manner he-destroyed of-Lent in-the-time
per Alpem Bardonis Tusciam ingressus, nescientibus omnino
through the-Alp of-Bardo Tuscany having-entered not-knowing at-all

Romanis, in ipso sacratissimo sabbato paschali super
the-Romans on that-very most-sacred Saturday of-Easter upon
eandem civitatem, ea hora qua baptismum fiebat,
the-same city at-that hour in-which baptism was-being-done
inopinate inruit, tantamque occisorum stragem fecit, ut
unexpectedly rushed and-such of-the-slain a-slaughter made that
etiam diacones ipsos, qui infantulos baptizabant, in ipso
even the-deacons themselves who the-little-infants were-baptizing in the-very
sacro fonte perimeret. Sicque eandem urbem deiecit, ut
sacred font he-killed and-thus the-same city he-cast-down that
usque hodie paucissimi in ea commaneant habitatores.
up-to today very-few in it dwell inhabitants

De odio quod Grimuald adversum Romanos habuit

XXVIII · ODERZO DESTROYED

Grimoald hates the Romans, who treacherously killed his brothers Taso and Cacco, and so he destroys Oderzo, where they died, and divides its lands among Friuli, Treviso, and Ceneda.

Erat quidem Grimualdo contra Romanos non mediocre
there-was indeed to-Grimoald against the-Romans no moderate
odium, pro eo quod eius quondam germanos Tasonem
hatred for this that his once brothers Taso
et Cacconem in sua fide decepissent. Quam ob causam
and Cacco in their faith they-had-deceived which for reason
Opitergium civitatem, ubi ipsi extincti sunt, funditus
Oderzo the-city where they-themselves killed were utterly

destruxit eorumque qui ibi habitaverant fines Foroiulanis
he-destroyed and-of-them who there had-dwelt the-borders to-the-Friulians
Tarvisianisque et Cenetensibus divisit.
and-the-Trevisans and to-the-Cenetans divided

De Vulgarum duce Alzecone, et quomodo in Benevento cum suis ordinatus est

XXIX · ALZECO AND THE BULGARS AT BENEVENTO

Alzeco, a duke of the Bulgars, comes peacefully to Grimoald with all his army, offering to serve him. Romuald settles them at Benevento in Sepino, Boiano, Isernia, and other deserted places and makes Alzeco a gastald, and they live there still, speaking Latin but keeping their own tongue.

Per haec tempora Vulgarum dux Alzeco nomine, incertum
through these times of-the-Bulgars duke Alzeco by-name uncertain
quam ob causam, a sua gente digressus, Italiam pacifice
what for reason from his nation having-departed Italy peacefully
introiens, cum omni sui ducatus exercitu ad regem Grimuald
entering with all of-his duchy the-army to king Grimoald
venit, ei se serviturum atque in eius patria habitaturum
came to-him himself about-to-serve and in his fatherland about-to-dwell
promittens. Quem ille ad Romualdum filium Beneventum
promising whom he to Romuald the-son to-Benevento
dirigens, ut ei cum suo populo loca ad habitandum
directing that to-him with his people places for dwelling
concedere deberet, praecepit. Quos Romualdus dux gratanter
to-grant he-ought ordered whom Romuald duke gladly
excipiens, eisdem spatiosa ad habitandum loca, quae usque
receiving to-the-same spacious for dwelling places which all-the-way
ad illud tempus deserta erant, contribuit, scilicet Sepinum,
to that time deserted had-been allotted namely Sepino

Bovianum et Iserniam et alias cum suis territoriis civitates,
Boiano and Isernia and other with their territories cities
ipsumque Alzeconem, mutato dignitatis nomine, de duce
and-himself Alzeco changed of-dignity the-name from duke
gastaldium vocitari praecepit. Qui usque hodie in his ut
gastald to-be-called ordered who up-to today in these as
diximus locis habitantes, quamquam et Latine loquantur,
we-have-said places dwelling although also in-Latin they-speak
linguae tamen propriae usum minime amiserunt.
of-the-tongue yet own the-use by-no-means have-lost

Quia extincto tyranno Mezetio Constantinus in locum Constantis augusti Romanorum princeps effectus est

XXX · CONSTANTINE EMPEROR; THEODORE IN BRITAIN

After Constans and the tyrant Mecetius, Constans' son Constantine takes the empire and rules seventeen years. In Constans' time Archbishop Theodore and Abbot Hadrian, sent by Pope Vitalian, enrich the English churches, and Theodore writes with discernment how long a penitent should do penance for each sin.

Igitur extincto, ut diximus, aput Siciliam Constante augusto,
therefore killed as we-have-said in Sicily Constans augustus
punitoque qui ei successerat Mezetio tyranno, Romanorum
and-punished who to-him had-succeeded Mecetius the-tyrant of-the-Romans
regnum Constantinus, Constantii augusti filius, suscepit
the-kingdom Constantine of-Constans augustus the-son took-up
regendum, Romanisque principatus est annis decem et
to-be-ruled and-over-the-Romans ruled has years ten and
septem. Constanti sane temporibus Theodorus archiepiscopus
seven of-Constans truly in-the-times Theodore archbishop
et Adrianus abbas, vir aeque doctissimus, a Vitaliano papa
and Hadrian abbot a-man equally most-learned by Vitalian pope

missi in Brittaniam, plurimas ecclesias Anglorum doctrinae
sent into Britain very-many churches of-the-English of-teaching
ecclesiasticae fruge foecundarunt. E quibus Theodorus
ecclesiastical with-the-fruit made-fruitful of whom Theodore
archiepiscopus peccantium iudicia, quantis scilicet annis
archbishop of-sinners the-judgments for-how-many namely years
pro unoquoque peccato quis poenitere debeat, mirabili
for each sin anyone to-do-penance ought with-wonderful
et discreta consideratione descripsit.
and discerning consideration wrote-down

De stella comete, et de operibus Doni papae

XXXI · A COMET, PLAGUE, AND POPE DONUS

A comet appears in the east in August and vanishes, and soon a severe plague from the east devastates the Roman people. Pope Donus paves the Paradise before Saint Peter's with large white marble.

Insequenti post tempore mense Augusto a parte orientis
in-the-following after time in-the-month of-August from the-side of-the-east
stella cometis apparuit nimis fulgentibus radiis, quae post
a-star comet appeared with-very gleaming rays which after
semet ipsam reversa disparuit. Nec mora, gravis
it itself having-turned-back disappeared nor delay a-heavy
pestilentia ab eadem parte orientis secuta, Romanum
pestilence from the-same side of-the-east having-followed the-Roman
populum devastavit. His diebus Domnus papa Romanae
people devastated in-these days Donus pope of-the-Roman

ecclesiae locum qui Paradisus dicitur ante basilicam beati
church the-place which Paradise is-called before the-basilica of-the-blessed
apostoli Petri candidis et magnis marmoribus mirifice stravit.
apostle Peter with-white and great marbles wondrously paved

Quomodo Perctarit ad regnum Saxonum in Brittaniam ire disposuit

XXXII · PERCTARIT PLANS TO GO TO BRITAIN

Dagobert rules the Franks and has made a firm peace with Grimoald, so Perctarit, fearing Grimoald even in Francia, leaves Gaul to go to Britain and the king of the Saxons.

Hac tempestate Francorum regnum aput Gallias Dagipertus
at-this time of-the-Franks the-kingdom in the-Gauls Dagobert
regebat, cum quo rex Grimuald pacis firmissimae foedus
was-ruling with whom king Grimoald of-peace most-firm a-treaty
inierat. Cuius Grimualdi vires Perctarit etiam aput
had-entered whose Grimoald the-strength Perctarit even in
Francorum patriam constitutus metuens, egressus e Gallia,
of-the-Franks the-fatherland placed fearing having-gone-out from Gaul
ad Brittaniam insulam Saxonumque regem properare disponit.
to Britain the-island and-of-the-Saxons the-king to-hasten arranges

De morte Grimualdi regis, et de reversione Perctarit et regno eius

XXXIII · GRIMOALD DIES; PERCTARIT RETURNS

Grimoald bursts a vein drawing a bow, and physicians, it is said, kill him with poisoned salves; he added chapters to Rothari's edict and was strong, bold, and bald. At sea Perctarit hears a voice from shore that Grimoald died three days before, and turns back. At the Alps he finds the court awaiting him, drives out the boy Garibald, is made king, and recalls his wife and son.

At vero Grimuald nono die post flevotomum in suo
but indeed Grimoald on-the-ninth day after the-bloodletting in his
palatio constitutus, accepto arcu cum columbam sagitta
palace placed received a-bow when a-dove with-an-arrow
percutere nisus esset, eius brachii vena disrupta est. Cui, ut
to-strike striven he-had of-his arm the-vein burst was to-whom as
ferunt, medici venenata medicamina supponentes, eum ab
they-report the-physicians poisoned medicines applying him from
hac funditus privarunt luce. Hic in edicto, quod Rothari rex
this utterly they-deprived light he in the-edict which Rothari king
conposuerat, aliqua capitula legis, quae ei utilia visa sunt,
had-composed some chapters of-law which to-him useful seemed were
adiecit. Fuit autem corpore praevalidus, audacia primus, calvo
added he-was moreover in-body very-strong in-daring first with-bald
capite, barba prominenti, non minus consilio quam viribus
head with-beard prominent not less with-counsel than with-strength
decoratus. Sepultum autem est corpus eius in basilica beati
adorned buried moreover was body his in the-basilica of-blessed
Ambrosii confessoris, quam dudum ipse intra Ticinensem
Ambrose confessor which formerly he-himself within the-Ticinese
construxerat civitatem. Hic, post mortem Ariperti regis expleto
had-built city he after the-death of-Aripert king completed

iam anno uno et mensibus tribus, Langobardorum regnum
already year one and months three of-the-Lombards the-kingdom
invasit, regnavitque ipse annis novem, relicto Garibald, filio
invaded and-reigned he-himself years nine left Garibald son
suo, quem ei Ariperti regis filia genuerat, rege adhuc
his whom to-him of-Aripert king the-daughter had-borne king still
puerilis aetatis. Igitur, ut dicere coeperamus, Perctarit egressus
of-boyish age therefore as to-say we-had-begun Perctarit having-gone-out
de Gallia, navem ascendit, ut ad Brittaniam insulam ad
from Gaul a-ship boarded that to Britain the-island to
regnum Saxonum transmearet. Cumque iam aliquantum per
the-kingdom of-the-Saxons he-might-cross and-when already some-way through
pelagus navigasset, vox a litore audita est inquirentis, utrum
the-sea he-had-sailed a-voice from the-shore heard was of-one-asking whether
Perctarit in eadem nave consisteret. Cui cum responsum
Perctarit in the-same ship was to-whom when answered
esset, quod Perctarit ibi esset, ille qui clamabat subiunxit:
it-had-been that Perctarit there was he who was-shouting added
'Dicite illi, revertatur in patriam suam, quia tertia die est
tell him let-him-return into fatherland his because the-third day is
hodie, quod Grimualdus ab hac subtractus est luce'. Quo
today that Grimoald from this withdrawn was light which
audito, Perctarit statim post se reversus est, veniensque ad
heard Perctarit at-once back himself turned has and-coming to
litus, invenire personam non potuit, quae ei de Grimualdi
the-shore to-find the-person not he-could which to-him about of-Grimoald
morte nuntiavit; unde arbitratus est, non hunc hominem, sed
the-death had-announced whence judged has not this a-man but
divinum nuntium fuisse. Exindeque ad patriam tendens, cum
a-divine messenger to-have-been and-thence to the-fatherland making when
ad claustra Italiae venisset, iam ibi omnia obsequia palatina
to the-barriers of-Italy he-had-come already there all the-services palatine

omnemque regiam dignitatem cum magna Langobardorum
and-all royal dignity with a-great of-the-Lombards
multitudine praeparatam, se repperit expectari. Itaque
multitude prepared himself he-found to-be-awaited and-so
Ticinum reversus, exturbato Garibaldo puerulo a regno,
to-Pavia having-returned driven-out Garibald the-little-boy from the-kingdom
ab universis Langobardis mense tertio post mortem
by all the-Lombards in-the-month third after the-death
Grimualdi in regnum levatus est. Erat autem vir pius,
of-Grimoald into the-kingdom raised was he-was moreover a-man pious
fide catholicus, iustitiae tenax pauperumque largissimus
in-faith catholic of-justice tenacious and-of-the-poor most-generous
nutritor. Qui statim Beneventum misit exindeque Rodelindam
nourisher who at-once to-Benevento sent and-thence Rodelinda
suam coniugem et Cunincpertum filium suum revocavit.
his wife and Cunincpert son his recalled

De monasterio quod construxit vel quod regina eius aedificavit

XXXIV · PERCTARIT'S MONASTERY AND RODELINDA'S CHURCH

Perctarit builds a convent of Saint Agatha at the spot by the Ticino from which he fled. Rodelinda builds a church of the Mother of God outside Pavia, called At the Poles, because there the Lombards set up poles for kinsmen who died far away, with a wooden dove on top turned toward where each died.

Qui ut regni iura suscepit, in loco illo qui a parte
who as of-the-kingdom the-rights he-took-up in place that which on the-side
fluminis Ticini est, unde ipse olim fugerat, monasterium
of-the-river Ticino is whence he-himself once had-fled a-monastery
quod Novum appellatur Domino et liberatori suo in honore
which New is-called to-the-Lord and deliverer his in honor

sanctae virginis et martyris Agathae construxit. In quo
of-the-holy virgin and martyr Agatha built in which
multas virgines adgregavit rebusque et diversis pariter
many virgins he-gathered and-with-goods and various equally
eundem locum ornamentis ditavit. Regina vero eius Rodelinda
the-same place ornaments enriched the-queen but his Rodelinda
basilicam sanctae Dei genitricis extra muros eiusdem civitatis
a-basilica of-the-holy of-God mother outside the-walls of-the-same city
Ticinensis, quae Ad perticas appellatur, opere mirabili
Ticinese which At-the poles is-called with-work wonderful
condidit ornamentisque mirificis decoravit. Ad perticas autem
founded and-with-ornaments wondrous adorned at-the poles moreover
locus ipse ideo dicitur, quia ibi olim perticae, id est
place itself for-this-reason is-called because there once poles that is
trabes, erectae steterant, quae ob hanc causam iuxta morem
beams erected had-stood which for this reason according-to the-custom
Langobardorum poni solebant: si quis enim in aliquam
of-the-Lombards to-be-placed were-wont if anyone for in some
partem aut in bello aut quomodocumque extinctus fuisset,
direction either in war or in-any-way-whatever killed had-been
consanguinei eius intra sepulchra sua perticam figebant, in
the-kinsmen his within the-burial-grounds their a-pole fixed on
cuius summitate columbam ex ligno factam ponebant, quae illuc
whose top a-dove of wood made they-placed which thither
versa esset, ubi illorum dilectus obisset, scilicet ut sciri
turned was where of-them the-beloved had-died namely that to-be-known
possit, in quam partem his qui defunctus fuerat quiesceret.
it-might-be-able in which direction he who died had was-resting

De Perctarit et regno Cunicperti, filii eius, quem sibi adscivit

XXXV · CUNINCPERT MADE CO-RULER

After reigning alone for seven years, Perctarit takes his son Cunincpert as partner in the eighth, and they reign together for ten years.

Igitur Perctarit, cum solus per annos septem regnasset,
therefore Perctarit when alone through years seven he-had-reigned
octavo iam anno Cunincpert filium suum in regno
in-the-eighth already year Cunincpert son his in the-kingdom
consortem adscivit, cum quo pariter per decem annos regnavit.
as-partner took-on with whom together through ten years he-reigned

De rebellatione Alahis prima, et quomodo in gratiam rediit

XXXVI · ALAHIS' FIRST REBELLION

A son of iniquity, Alahis, duke of Trent, defeats the Bavarian count of Bolzano and, grown proud, rebels against Perctarit and routs his army. Cunincpert, who loves him, brings him back into favor, keeps his father from killing him, and wins him the duchy of Brescia over his father's protests. Perctarit builds the Palace Gate at Pavia.

Cumque in magna pace degerent et ex omni parte
and-when in great peace they-were-living and from every side
in circuitu tranquillitatem haberent, surrexit contra eos
in circuit tranquility they-had rose-up against them
filius iniquitatis Alahis nomine, per quem in regno
a-son of-iniquity Alahis by-name through whom in the-kingdom
Langobardorum, perturbata pace, maximae populorum factae
of-the-Lombards disturbed the-peace very-great of-peoples made
sunt strages. Hic dum dux esset in Tredentina civitate, cum
were slaughters he while duke he-was in the-Trent city with

comite Baioariorum, quem illi gravionem dicunt, qui Bauzanum
the-count of-the-Bavarians whom they gravio call who Bolzano
et reliqua castella regebat, conflixit eumque mirifice superavit.
and the-other fortresses ruled clashed and-him wondrously overcame
Qua de causa elatus, etiam contra regem suum Perctarit
which for reason elated even against king his Perctarit
manum levavit atque se intra Tredentinum castellum
the-hand raised and himself within the-Trent fortress
rebellans communivit. Contra quem rex Perctarit progressus,
rebelling fortified against whom king Perctarit having-advanced
cum eum extrinsecus obsideret, inopinate subito Alahis cum
when him from-outside he-was-besieging unexpectedly suddenly Alahis with
suis civitate egressus, regis castra protrivit regemque
his-men from-the-city having-gone-out of-the-king the-camp crushed and-the-king
ipsum fugam petere conpulit. Qui tamen postmodum,
himself flight to-seek compelled who yet afterward
faciente Cunincperto, regis filio, qui eum iam olim
bringing-it-about Cunincpert of-the-king the-son who him already long-since
diligebat, in regis Perctarit gratiam reversus est. Qui rex cum
loved into of-king Perctarit the-favor returned has which king when
eum interficere aliquotiens vellet, Cunincpertus, eius filius,
him to-kill several-times wished Cunincpert his son
hoc fieri semper proibuit, reputans eum de reliquo fidelem
this to-be-done always forbade reckoning him for the-rest faithful
existere; nec destitit patrem optinere, quin etiam ei
to-be nor ceased the-father to-prevail-on but-that even to-him
ducatum Brexiae contribueret; reclamante saepius patre, quod
the-duchy of-Brescia he-should-grant protesting often the-father that
in suam hoc Cunincpert perniciem faceret, qui hosti suo ad
to his this Cunincpert destruction was-doing who to-enemy his for
regnandum vires praeberet. Brexiana denique civitas magnam
reigning strength was-furnishing the-Brescian indeed city great

semper nobilium Langobardorum multitudinem habuit, quorum
always of-noble Lombards a-multitude had by-whose
auxilio metuebat Perctarit Alahis potentiorem fore. His
help feared Perctarit Alahis more-powerful would-be in-these
diebus rex Perctarit in civitate Ticinensi portam contiguam
days king Perctarit in the-city Ticinese a-gate adjoining
palatio, quae et Palatiensis dicitur, opere mirifico construxit.
to-the-palace which also Palatine is-called with-work wondrous built

De morte Perctarit et regno Cunicperti et stupro Theodotae

XXXVII · PERCTARIT DIES; CUNINCPERT AND THEODOTE

Perctarit dies, gentle and kind, after eighteen years. Cunincpert marries Hermelinda of the Anglo-Saxons, who praises to him the beauty of the Roman girl Theodote, seen in the bath. Cunincpert slips back from a hunt to Pavia by night and lies with her, and later sends her to the convent named after her.

Qui cum decem et octo annos, et primum solus et post cum
who when ten and eight years both first alone and afterward with
filio, regnum tenuisset, ab hac luce subtractus est, corpusque
the-son the-kingdom he-had-held from this light withdrawn was and-the-body
illius iuxta basilicam domini Salvatoris, quam Aripert, eius
his beside the-basilica of-the-Lord Savior which Aripert his
genitor, construxerat, sepultum est. Fuit autem statura decens,
father had-built buried was he-was moreover in-stature comely
corpore pleno, mitis per omnia et suavis. At vero Cunincpert
in-body full gentle in all-things and pleasant but indeed Cunincpert
rex Hermelinda ex Saxonum Anglorum genere duxit uxorem.
king Hermelinda from of-the-Saxons of-the-English the-race married as-wife
Quae cum in balneo Theodotem, puellam ex nobilissimo
who when in the-bath Theodote a-girl from the-most-noble

Romanorum genere ortam, eleganti corpore et flavis
of-the-Romans race sprung of-elegant body and with-golden
prolixisque capillis pene usque ad pedes decoratam vidisset,
and-long hair nearly all-the-way to the-feet adorned had-seen
eius pulchritudinem suo viro Cunincperto regi laudavit.
her beauty to-her husband Cunincpert king praised
Qui ab uxore hoc libenter audire dissimulans, in magnum
who from the-wife this gladly to-hear dissembling into great
tamen puellae exarsit amorem; nec mora, venatum in silvam
yet of-the-girl burned love nor delay to-hunt into the-forest
quam Urbem appellant perrexit secumque suam coniugem
which Urbs they-call went and-with-himself his wife
Hermelindam venire praecepit. Qui exinde noctu egrediens,
Hermelinda to-come ordered who thence by-night going-out
Ticinum venit, et ad se Theodotem puellam venire faciens,
to-Pavia came and to himself Theodote the-girl to-come making
cum ea concubuit. Quam tamen postea in monasterium,
with her lay whom yet afterward into the-monastery
quod de illius nomine intra Ticinum appellatum est, misit.
which from her name within Pavia called is he-sent

Quomodo Alahis palatium Cunicperti invasit

XXXVIII · ALAHIS SEIZES PAVIA

With Aldo and Grauso of Brescia, Alahis forgets his oath and seizes the palace at Pavia, and Cunincpert flees to the island in Lake Como. Bishop Damian sends his deacon Thomas with a blessing, and Alahis, who hates clerics, sends word that he may enter only in clean breeches; Thomas answers that only God can find fault with him there. The clergy long for Cunincpert.

Alahis vero iam dudum conceptam iniquitatem parturiens,
Alahis but already long-since conceived iniquity bringing-forth
adnitentibus Aldone et Grausone Brexianis civibus, sed et
striving-with-him Aldo and Grauso of-Brescia citizens but also
aliis multis ex Langobardis, oblitus tantorum beneficiorum
others many of the-Lombards forgetful of-such-great benefits
quae in eum rex Cunincpert inpenderat, oblitus etiam
which upon him king Cunincpert had-bestowed forgetful also
iusiurandum quo ei se fidelissimum esse spoponderat,
the-oath by-which to-him himself most-faithful to-be he-had-pledged
cum Cunincpert abesset, regnum eius et palatium intra
when Cunincpert was-absent kingdom his and the-palace within
Ticinum positum invasit. Quod Cunincpert ubi erat audiens,
Pavia placed invaded which Cunincpert where he-was hearing
statim ad insulam, quae intra lacum Larium non longe a
at-once to the-island which within the-lake Lario not far from
Como est, confugit ibique se fortiter communivit. Facta
Como is fled and-there himself strongly fortified made
est autem magna tribulatio omnibus qui eum diligebant, et
was moreover great tribulation to-all who him loved and
maxime sacerdotibus et clericis, quos omnes Alahis exosos
especially to-the-priests and clerics whom all Alahis hated

habebat. Erat autem eo tempore Ticinensis ecclesiae
had there-was moreover at-that time of-the-Ticinese church
episcopus vir Domini Damianus, sanctitate praecipuus,
bishop a-man of-the-Lord Damian in-holiness outstanding
liberalibus artibus sufficienter instructus. Is cum Alahis
in-liberal arts sufficiently instructed he when Alahis
palatium invasisse respiceret, ne quid ab eo ipse
the-palace to-have-invaded saw lest anything from him he-himself
vel sua ecclesia adversi perpeteretur, Thomam diaconem
or his church of-adversity should-suffer Thomas deacon
suum, sapientem scilicet et religiosum virum, ad eum
his wise namely and religious a-man to him
misit perque eum eidem Alahis benedictionem sanctae
sent and-through him to-the-same Alahis the-blessing of-holy
suae ecclesiae transmisit. Nuntiatum est Alahis, Thomam
his church sent-over announced it-was to-Alahis Thomas
diaconem ante fores adstare benedictionemque ab episcopo
the-deacon before the-doors to-stand and-the-blessing from the-bishop
detulisse. Tunc Alahis, qui, ut diximus, omnes clericos
to-have-brought then Alahis who as we-have-said all clerics
odio habebat, ita inquit ad suos: 'Ite, dicite illi, si
in-hatred had thus says to his-men go tell him if
munda femoralia habet, intret; sin autem aliter, foris
clean breeches he-has let-him-enter but-if moreover otherwise outside
contineat pedem'. Thomas vero cum hos sermones audisset,
let-him-keep the-foot Thomas but when these words he-had-heard
ita respondit: 'Nuntiate ei, quia munda femoralia habeo,
thus answered announce to-him that clean breeches I-have
quippe qui ea hodie lota indutus sum'. Cui Alahis ita
inasmuch-as who them today washed put-on I-have to-whom Alahis thus
iterato mandavit: 'Ego non dico de femoralibus, sed de
again sent-word I not speak about breeches but about

his quae intra femoralia habentur'. Ad haec Thomas
those-things which within breeches are-held to these-things Thomas
ita respondit: 'Ite, dicite illi: Deus solus potest in me in his
thus answered go tell him God alone can in me in these
causis reprehensionem invenire; nam ille nullatenus potest'.
matters fault to-find for he by-no-means can
Cumque eundem diaconem Alahis ad se ingredi fecisset,
and-when the-same deacon Alahis to himself to-enter had-made
aspere satis et obiurgando cum eo locutus est. Tunc omnes
harshly enough and in-rebuking with him spoken has then all
clericos et sacerdotes pavor et odium tyranni invasit,
clerics and priests fear and hatred of-the-tyrant invaded
aestimantium se eius feritatem tolerare omnino non posse.
thinking themselves his ferocity to-endure at-all not to-be-able
Coeperuntque tanto amplius Cunincpertum desiderare, quanto
and-they-began so-much more Cunincpert to-long-for as
pervasorem regni superbum execrationi haberent. Sed non
the-usurper of-the-kingdom proud in-execration they-held but not
diutius feritas et cruda barbaries pervasum regnum optinuit.
longer ferocity and raw barbarism the-usurped kingdom held

Quomodo Cunicpert rursus suum palatium ingressus est

XXXIX · CUNINCPERT REGAINS HIS PALACE

Alahis tells Aldo's little son that his father has many such gold coins and will soon give them to Alahis, if God wills, and the boy tells his father. Aldo and Grauso send Alahis hunting, confess to Cunincpert, and bring him back into Pavia, where all welcome him with tears. Alahis wins the cities of Austria by flattery or force, makes the Friulians swear to him at the Livenza bridge, and the armies camp at Coronate.

Denique cum die quadam solidos super mensam numeraret,
finally when on-day a-certain solidi on the-table he-was-counting
unus ei tremisses de eadem mensa cecidit, quem filius
one from-him tremissis from the-same table fell which the-son
Aldonis adhuc puerulus de terra colligens, eidem Alahis
of-Aldo still a-little-boy from the-ground gathering to-the-same Alahis
reddidit. Ad quem Alahis, sperans puerulum parum intellegere,
returned to whom Alahis hoping the-little-boy little to-understand
ita locutus est: 'Multos ex his genitor tuus habet, quos
thus spoken has many of these father your has which
mihi in proximo, si Deus voluerit, daturus est'. Qui
to-me in the-near-future if God shall-have-wished about-to-give he-is which
puer cum vespere domum ad patrem regressus esset, eum
boy when at-evening home to the-father returned had him
suus genitor requisivit, si quid ei illo die rex locutus
his father asked if anything to-him on-that day the-king spoken
fuisset, ille patri omnia ut facta fuerant et quid sibi
had he to-the-father all-things as done they-had-been and what to-him
rex dixerat nuntiavit. Audiens haec Aldo vehementer
the-king had-said announced hearing these-things Aldo violently
pertimuit, fratremque suum Grausonem adscitum, ei omnia
was-terrified and-brother his Grauso summoned to-him all-things

quae rex maligne locutus fuerat nuntiavit. Qui mox cum
which the-king maliciously spoken had announced who soon with
amicis et his quibus credere poterant consilium ineunt,
friends and those whom to-trust they-could counsel enter
qualiter Alahis tyrannum regno privarent, priusquam
how Alahis the-tyrant of-the-kingdom they-might-deprive before
ipse eis aliquam laesionem facere possit. Qui maturius
he to-them some injury to-do might-be-able who very-early
ad palatium profecti, ita Alahis dixerunt: 'Quid dignaris
to the-palace having-set-out thus to-Alahis said why do-you-deign
in civitate residere? Ecce omnis civitas et universus populus
in the-city to-sit behold all the-city and the-whole people
tibi fidelis existit, et ebriosus ille Cunincpert ita dissolutus
to-you faithful is and drunkard that Cunincpert so dissolute
est, ut iam ultra nullas possit habere vires. Egredere et
is that now further no he-can have strength go-out and
vade in venationem et exerce te cum iuvenibus tuis,
go into hunting and exercise yourself with young-men your
nos autem cum reliquis fidelibus tuis defendimus tibi
we moreover with the-remaining faithful your defend for-you
hanc civitatem. Sed et ita tibi repromittimus, ut in
this city but also thus to-you we-promise that in
proximo inimici tui Cunincperti caput adferamus'. Qui
the-near-future of-enemy your Cunincpert the-head we-shall-bring who
eorum verbis persuasus, civitatem egressus atque ad Urbem
by-their words persuaded the-city having-gone-out and to Urbs
vastissimam silvam profectus est ibique se iocis et
the-most-vast forest set-out has and-there himself in-sports and
venationibus exercere coepit. Aldo vero et Grauso euntes ad
hunts to-exercise began Aldo but and Grauso going to
lacum Comacinum ingressique navem, ad Cunincpertum
the-lake Comacino and-having-boarded a-ship to Cunincpert

profecti sunt. Ad quem venientes, eius pedibus provoluti,
set-out have to whom coming at-his feet rolled-forward
se contra eum nequiter egisse professi sunt, eique,
themselves against him wickedly to-have-acted confessed have and-to-him
quid Alahis malitiose contra eos locutus fuerit, vel quale
what Alahis maliciously against them spoken had or what-sort
ipsi ad eius perditionem consilium eidem dederint,
they-themselves for his destruction counsel to-the-same had-given
nuntiarunt. Quid plura? Fleverunt pariter et inter se
announced what more they-wept together and among themselves
sacramenta dederunt, diem statuentes, in quo Cunincpert
oaths gave a-day appointing on which Cunincpert
veniret, ut ipsi ei civitatem Ticinensem contraderent.
should-come that they to-him the-city Ticinese might-hand-over
Quod et factum est. Nam die statuto Cunincpert
which also done was for on-the-day appointed Cunincpert
Ticinum adveniens, ab eis libentissime susceptus palatium
to-Pavia arriving by them most-gladly received palace
suum ingressus est. Tunc omnes cives, et praecipue
his entered has then all the-citizens and especially
episcopus, sacerdotes quoque et clerus, iuvenes et senes,
the-bishop the-priests also and the-clergy young and old
certatim ad eum concurrentes, omnesque eum cum lacrimis
eagerly to him running-together and-all him with tears
amplexantes, Deo gratias de eius reversione, inaestimabili
embracing to-God thanks for his return with-inestimable
gaudio repleti, conclamabant; quos ille omnes prout potuit
joy filled were-crying-out whom he all as he-could
osculatus est. Nuntius subito ad Alahis pervenit, adimplesse
kissed has a-messenger suddenly to Alahis came to-have-fulfilled
Aldonem et Grausonem quod ei promiserant: et caput
Aldo and Grauso what to-him they-had-promised and the-head

Cunincperti attulisse, et non solum caput, sed et totum
of-Cunincpert to-have-brought and not only the-head but also the-whole
corpus, eumque adfirmans in palatio consedere. Quod ille
body and-him affirming in the-palace to-be-seated which he
audiens, animo consternatus est, multaque contra Aldonem
hearing in-mind dismayed was and-many-things against Aldo
et Grausonem furibundus et frendens comminans, exinde
and Grauso raging and gnashing threatening thence
egressus, per Placentiam ad Austriam rediit singulasque
having-gone-out through Piacenza to Austria returned and-the-individual
civitates partim blanditiis partim viribus sibi socios
cities partly by-blandishments partly by-force to-himself as-allies
adscivit. Nam Vincentiam veniens, contra eum eius cives
took-on for to-Vicenza coming against him its citizens
egressi, bellum paraverunt; sed mox victi, eius socii
having-gone-out war prepared but soon conquered his allies
effecti sunt. Inde exiens, Tarvisium pervasit, pari modo
made were thence going-out Treviso overran in-equal manner
etiam et reliquas civitates. Cumque contra eum Cunincpert
also and the-remaining cities and-when against him Cunincpert
exercitum colligeret, et Foroiulani in eius auxilium iuxta
an-army was-gathering and the-Friulians into his help according-to
fidelitatem suam vellent proficisci: ipse Alahis ad pontem
fidelity their wished to-set-out he-himself Alahis at the-bridge
Liquentiae fluminis, quod a Foroiuli quadraginta et octo
of-the-Livenza river which from Friuli forty and eight
milibus distat et est in itinere Ticinum pergentibus, in
miles is-distant and is on the-road to-Pavia for-those-going in
silvam quae Capulanus dicitur latens, cum Foroiulanorum
the-forest which Capulanus is-called lurking when of-the-Friulians
exercitus sparsim veniret, omnes eos, sicut veniebant, iurare
the-army scatteredly came all them as they-came to-swear

sibi conpulit, diligenter cavens, ne aliquis ex his retro
to-himself he-compelled carefully taking-care lest anyone of them back
reversus venientibus hoc aliis nuntiaret; sicque omnes a
having-returned to-those-coming this to-others should-announce and-thus all from
Foroiuli venientes eius sunt sacramentis adstricti. Quid plura?
Friuli coming by-his were oaths bound what more
Cum omni Alahis Austria, econtra Cunincpert cum suis
with all Alahis Austria on-the-other-side Cunincpert with his-men
venientes, in campo cui Coronate nomen est castra posuere.
coming in the-plain whose Coronate name is a-camp pitched

Bellum Alahis adversus Cunicpertum et mors Senoni diaconi

XL · BATTLE OF CORONATE; THE DEACON SENO

Alahis refuses single combat, saying Cunincpert, though drunken, is bold and strong. Seno, a deacon of Pavia, begs to fight in the king's armor lest the king die, and Alahis kills him thinking him the king. When the helmet comes off and he sees a cleric, he vows that if he wins he will fill a well with clerics' testicles.

Ad quem Cunincpert nuntium misit, mandans ei, ut
to whom Cunincpert a-messenger sent bidding him that
cum eo singulare certamen iniret, nec opus esset
with him a-single combat he-should-enter nor need there-were
utrorumque exercitum fatigare. Ad quae verba Alahis minime
of-both the-army to-weary to these words Alahis by-no-means
consensit. Cui cum unus e suis, genere Tuscus, ei
consented to-whom when one of his-men by-race a-Tuscan him
persuaderet, virum bellicosum fortemque eum appellans,
was-urging a-man warlike and-brave him calling
ut contra Cunincpertum audenter exiret, Alahis ad
that against Cunincpert boldly he-should-go-out Alahis to

haec verba respondit: 'Cunincpert, quamvis ebriosus sit et
these words answered Cunincpert although drunken he-be and
stupidi cordis, tamen satis est audax et mirae fortitudinis.
of-stupid heart yet very is bold and of-wondrous strength
Nam tempore patris eius quando nos erabamus iuvenculi,
for in-the-time of-father his when we were young-lads
habebantur in palatio berbices mirae magnitudinis, quos
there-were-kept in the-palace wethers of-wondrous size which
ille supra dorsum eorum lanam adprehendens, extenso
he upon the-back of-them the-wool seizing with-outstretched
eos brachio a terra levabat; quod quidem ego facere
them arm from the-ground used-to-lift which indeed I to-do
non poteram'. Haec ille Tuscus audiens, dixit ad eum: 'Si
not could these-things that Tuscan hearing said to him if
tu cum Cunincperto pugnam inire singulari certamine non
you with Cunincpert battle to-enter in-single combat not
audes, me iam in tuo adiutorio socium non habebis'. Et
dare me now in your help as-ally not you-shall-have and
haec dicens, proripuit se et statim ad Cunincpertum
these-things saying he-rushed-forth himself and at-once to Cunincpert
confugiit et haec ipsa illi nuntiavit. Convenerunt itaque,
fled and these very-things to-him announced came-together and-so
ut diximus, utraeque acies in campo Coronate. Cumque
as we-have-said both battle-lines in the-plain of-Coronate and-when
iam prope essent, ut se coniungere deberent, Seno
now near they-were that themselves to-join they-should Seno
diaconus Ticinensis ecclesiae, qui custus erat basilicae beati
deacon of-the-Ticinese church who keeper was of-the-basilica of-blessed
Iohannis baptistae, quae intra eadem sita est civitatem,
John the-Baptist which within the-same situated is city
quam quondam Gundiperga regina construxerat, cum nimium
which once Gundiperga queen had-built since exceedingly

diligeret regem et metueret, ne rex in bello periret, ait ad
he-loved the-king and feared lest the-king in battle should-perish says to
regem: 'Domine rex, omnis vita nostra in tua salute consistit;
the-king O-lord king all life our in your safety stands
si tu in bello perieris, omnes nos iste tyrannus Alahis
if you in battle shall-have-perished all us that tyrant Alahis
per diversa supplicia extinguet. Placeat itaque tibi consilium
through various tortures shall-kill let-please and-so you the-counsel
meum. Da mihi apparatum armorum tuorum, et ego vadam
my give to-me the-equipment of-arms your and I shall-go
et pugnabo cum isto tyranno. Si ego obiero, tu recuperabis
and shall-fight with this tyrant if I shall-have-died you shall-recover
causam tuam; si vero vicero, maior tibi, quia per
cause your if but I-shall-have-conquered greater to-you because through
servum viceris, gloria adscribetur'. Cumque rex hoc
a-servant you-have-conquered glory shall-be-ascribed and-when the-king this
se facturum esse denegaret, coeperunt eum pauci qui
himself about-to-do to-be refused began him the-few who
aderant eius fideles cum lacrimis deposcere, ut ad ea
were-present his faithful with tears to-entreat that to those-things
quae diaconus dixerat adsensum praeberet. Victus tandem,
which the-deacon had-said assent he-should-furnish overcome at-last
ut erat pii cordis, eorum precibus et lacrimis, loricam
as he-was of-pious heart of-them by-prayers and tears breastplate
suam, galeam atque ocreas et cetera arma diacono praebuit
his helmet and greaves and the-other arms to-the-deacon furnished
in suaque persona eum ad proelium direxit. Erat enim ipse
in and-his person him to battle directed was for he-himself
diaconus eiusdem staturae et habitus, ita ut, cum fuisset de
the-deacon of-the-same stature and appearance so that when he-had from
tentorio armatus egressus, rex Cunincpert ab omnibus esse
the-tent armed gone-out king Cunincpert by all to-be

putaretur. Commissum itaque est proelium et totis viribus
he-was-thought joined and-so was the-battle and with-all strength
decertatum. Cumque Alahis ibi magis intenderet, ubi regem
fought-out and-when Alahis there more pressed where the-king
esse putaret, Cunincpertum se extinxisse putans, Senonem
to-be he-thought Cunincpert himself to-have-killed thinking Seno
diaconem interfecit. Cumque caput eius amputari praecepisset,
deacon he-killed and-when the-head his to-be-cut-off he-had-ordered
ut, levato eo in conto, 'Deo gratias' adclamarent, sublata
that raised it on a-pike to-God thanks they-might-shout removed
casside, clericum se occidisse cognovit. Tunc furibundus
the-helmet a-cleric himself to-have-killed he-recognized then raging
exclamans: 'Heu me!' inquit, 'nihil egimus, quando ad hoc
crying-out alas me he-says nothing we-have-done when to this
proelium gessimus, ut clericum occiderimus. Tale itaque nunc
battle we-have-waged that a-cleric we-have-killed such and-so now
facio votum, ut, si mihi Deus victoriam iterum dederit,
I-make a-vow that if to-me God victory again shall-have-given
quod unum puteum de testiculis impleam clericorum'.
that one well with testicles I-shall-fill of-clerics

Item bellum Cunicperti et Alahis, et de victoria Cunincperti, et quomodo triumphans Ticinum ingressus est

XLI · CUNINCPERT'S VICTORY

Cunincpert shows himself to his men and offers single combat again, but Alahis refuses, saying he sees among the king's pikes the image of Saint Michael, in whose church he swore loyalty to Cunincpert. In the battle Alahis falls and is mutilated, and his army flees, the Adda drowning those the sword spares, while the Friulians help neither side. Cunincpert buries Seno before Saint John's and returns to Pavia in triumph.

Igitur Cunincpert perdidisse suos conspiciens, statim se
therefore Cunincpert to-have-lost his-men beholding at-once himself
eis ostendit omniumque corda, sublato pavore, ad sperandam
to-them showed and-of-all the-hearts removed fear for hoping-for
victoriam confortavit. Instruuntur iterum acies, et hinc
victory strengthened are-drawn-up again the-battle-lines and on-this-side
Cunincpert, inde Alahis ad belli certamina praeparantur.
Cunincpert on-that-side Alahis for of-war the-contests are-prepared
Cumque iam prope essent, ut se utraeque acies ad
and-when now near they-were that themselves both battle-lines for
pugnandum coniungerent, Cunincpert ad Alahis iterato in
fighting should-join Cunincpert to Alahis again in
haec verba mandavit: 'Ecce, quantus populus ex utraque
these words sent-word behold how-great a-people on each
parte consistit! Quid opus est, ut tanta multitudo pereat?
side stands what need is-there that so-great a-multitude should-perish
Coniungamus nos ego et ille singulari certamine, et cui
let-us-join ourselves I and he in-single combat and to-whom
voluerit Dominus de nobis donare victoriam, omnem hunc
shall-have-wished the-Lord of us to-give victory all this

populum salvum et incolomem ipse possideat'. Cumque
people safe and unharmed he-himself may-possess and-when
Alahis sui hortarentur, ut faceret quod Cunincpert illi
Alahis his-men were-urging that he-should-do what Cunincpert to-him
mandavit, ipse respondit: 'Hoc facere ego non possum,
sent-word he-himself answered this to-do I not can
quia inter contos suos sancti archangeli Michahelis, ubi
because among the-pikes his of-the-holy archangel Michael where
ego illi iuravi, imaginem conspicio'. Tunc unus ex illis:
I to-him swore the-image I-behold then one of them
'Prae pavore', inquit, 'cernis quod non est; et tibi iam tarde
for fear he-says you-see what not is and to-you now late
est modo ista meditari'. Conseruntur itaque acies
it-is now these-things to-ponder are-joined and-so the-battle-lines
perstrepentibus bucinis, et neutra parte locum dante, maxima
resounding the-trumpets and neither side ground giving very-great
populorum facta est strages. Tandem crudelis tyrannus Alahis
of-peoples made was slaughter at-last the-cruel tyrant Alahis
interiit, et Cunincpert, adiuvante se Domino, victoriam
perished and Cunincpert helping him the-Lord victory
cepit. Exercitus quoque Alahis, conperta eius morte, fugae
took the-army also of-Alahis learned his death of-flight
subsidium arripuit. E quibus quem mucro non perculit, Addua
the-help seized of whom whom the-sword not struck-down the-Adda
fluvius interemit. Caput quoque Alahis detruncatum cruraque
river killed the-head also of-Alahis cut-off and-the-legs
eius succisa sunt, informeque tantum truncumque cadaver
his cut-off were and-shapeless only and-maimed the-corpse
remansit. In hoc bello Foroiulanorum exercitus minime fuit,
remained in this war of-the-Friulians the-army by-no-means was
quia, cum invitus Alahis iurasset, propter hoc nec regi
because since unwilling to-Alahis it-had-sworn on-account-of this neither to-king

Cunincperto nec Alahis auxilium tulit, sed cum illi bellum
Cunincpert nor to-Alahis help brought but when they battle
commisissent, ipsi ad propria sunt reversi. Igitur Alahis
had-joined they-themselves to their-own have returned therefore Alahis
hoc modo defuncto, rex Cunincpert corpus Senoni diaconi
in-this manner having-died king Cunincpert the-body of-Seno deacon
ante fores basilicae beati Iohannis, quam ipse rexerat,
before the-doors of-the-basilica of-blessed John which he-himself had-ruled
mirifice sepelire mandavit; ipse vero regnator cum omnium
wondrously to-bury commanded he-himself but the-ruler with of-all
exultatione et triumpho victoriae Ticinum reversus est.
exultation and triumph of-victory to-Pavia returned has

Quomodo Romuald Tarentum cepit, et quomodo Theuderata monasterium sancti Petri aedificavit

I · ROMUALD TAKES TARANTO; THEUDERADA'S CONVENT

Romuald, duke of Benevento, takes Taranto and Brindisi and brings all the wide region around under his rule. His wife Theuderada builds a church of Saint Peter outside Benevento and founds a convent there.

Dum ista aput Langobardos trans Padum geruntur,
while these-things among the-Lombards across the-Po are-done
Romualdus Beneventanorum dux, congregata exercitus
Romuald of-the-Beneventans duke gathered of-the-army
multitudine, Tarentum expugnavit et cepit, parique modo
a-multitude Taranto stormed and took and-in-equal manner
Brundisium et omnem illam quae in circuitu est latissimam
Brindisi and all that which in circuit is most-wide
regionem suae dicioni subiugavit. Coniux quoque eius
region to-his rule subjugated the-wife also his
Theuderata eodem tempore foras muros Beneventanae
Theuderada at-the-same time outside the-walls of-the-Beneventan
civitatis basilicam in honore beati Petri apostoli construxit;
city a-basilica in honor of-blessed Peter apostle built
quo in loco multarum ancillarum Dei coenobium instituit.
which in place of-many handmaids of-God a-convent established

De morte Romualdi, et quomodo corpus beati Benedicti ad Gallias delatum est

II · ROMUALD'S SUCCESSORS, AND BENEDICT'S BONES TAKEN

Romuald's sons Grimoald and Gisulf rule Benevento after him in turn. At Cassino, long deserted, Franks from Le Mans or Orléans, pretending to keep a night's vigil by the body, carry off the bones of Benedict and his sister Scholastica, building a monastery for each. But Paul is sure the saint's sweet mouth, his eyes, and his other limbs remain there.

Romuald quoque, postquam sedecim annos ducatum gessit,
Romuald also after sixteen years the-duchy he-held
ab hac luce subtractus est. Post quem eius filius Grimualdus
from this light withdrawn was after whom his son Grimoald
tribus annis Samnitum populos rexit. Huic in coniugio sociata
for-three years of-the-Samnites the-peoples ruled to-him in marriage joined
fuit Wigilinda, soror Cunincperti, filia Perctarit regis.
was Wigilinda sister of-Cunincpert daughter of-Perctarit king
Defuncto quoque Grimualdo, Gisulfus, eius germanus, ductor
having-died also Grimoald Gisulf his brother leader
effectus est, praefuitque Benevento annis decem et septem.
made was and-presided over-Benevento years ten and seven
Huic sociata fuit Winiperga, quae ei Romuald peperit.
to-him joined was Winiperga who to-him Romuald bore
Circa haec tempora, cum in castro Cassini, ubi beatissimi
around these times when in the-fort of-Cassino where of-most-blessed
Benedicti sacrum corpus requiescit, ab aliquantis iam elapsis
Benedict the-sacred body rests from some already elapsed
annis vasta solitudo existeret, venientes de Celmanicorum
years a-vast solitude there-was coming from of-Le-Mans
vel Aurelianensium regione Franci, dum aput venerabile
or of-Orléans region Franks while beside the-venerable

corpus se pernoctare simulassent, eiusdem venerabilis
body themselves to-pass-the-night had-feigned of-the-same venerable
patris pariterque eius germanae venerandae Scolasticae ossa
father and-equally his sister venerable Scholastica the-bones
auferentes, in suam patriam adportarunt; ubi singillatim duo
carrying-off into their fatherland brought where separately two
monasteria in utrorumque honorem, hoc est beati Benedicti
monasteries in of-both honor that is of-blessed Benedict
et sanctae Scolasticae, constructa sunt. Sed certum est, nobis
and of-holy Scholastica built were but certain it-is to-us
os illud venerabile et omni nectare suavius et oculos semper
mouth that venerable and than-all nectar sweeter and the-eyes always
caelestia contuentes, cetera quoque membra quamvis defluxa
heavenly-things beholding the-other also limbs although decayed
remansisse. Solum etenim singulariter dominicum corpus non
to-have-remained alone for singularly the-Lord's body not
vidit corruptionem; ceterum omnium sanctorum corpora in
saw corruption otherwise of-all saints the-bodies into
aeternam postea gloriam reparanda corruptioni subiecta sunt,
eternal afterward glory to-be-restored to-corruption subject are
his exceptis, quae ob divina miracula sine labe servantur.
these excepted which for divine miracles without stain are-preserved

De Rodoald duce Foroiulano, et de Ansfrit, qui eius ducatum invasit

III · ANSFRIT SEIZES FRIULI

While Rodoald, duke of Friuli, is away, Ansfrit of Ragogna seizes the duchy, and Rodoald flees by Istria and Ravenna to Cunincpert. Not content with Friuli, Ansfrit rebels against the king, but is seized at Verona, blinded, and exiled, and Rodoald's brother Ado governs Friuli as placeholder.

At vero Rodoald, quem aput Foroiuli praemisimus ducatum
but indeed Rodoald whom at Friuli we-have-said-before the-duchy
tenuisse, cum ab eadem civitate abesset, Ansfrit de castro
to-have-held when from the-same city he-was-absent Ansfrit from the-fort
Reunia ducatum eius absque regis nutu pervasit. Quo
Ragogna duchy his without of-the-king the-nod overran which
comperto, Rodoald in Histriam fugiit ac deinde navigio
learned Rodoald into Istria fled and then by-ship
per Ravennam Ticinum ad Cunincpertum regem pervenit.
through Ravenna to-Pavia to Cunincpert king came
Ansfrit vero non contentus ducatum Foroiulanensium regere,
Ansfrit but not content the-duchy of-the-Friulians to-rule
insuper contra Cunincpertum rebellans, regnum eius invadere
moreover against Cunincpert rebelling kingdom his to-invade
voluit. Sed conprehensus in Verona, ad regem deductus,
wished but seized in Verona to the-king led
evulsis oculis, in exilium trusus est. Foroiulano autem
torn-out the-eyes into exile thrust was the-Friulian moreover
ducatui post haec Ado, frater Rodoaldi, lociservatoris
duchy after these-things Ado brother of-Rodoald of-placeholder
nomine per annum et menses septem gubernavit.
in-the-name for a-year and months seven governed

De sinodo quae aput Constantinopolim facta est, et de epistola Damiani episcopi

IV · THE SIXTH COUNCIL, AND DAMIAN'S LETTER

A heresy arises at Constantinople that Christ has one will and operation. Constantine gathers a hundred and fifty bishops, with legates of Pope Agatho, who condemn it, while cobwebs fall among the people as a sign the filth is driven out. Damian of Pavia writes a letter in the name of Archbishop Mansuetus of Milan that helps the council, setting out two wills in Christ, as two natures.

Dum haec in Italia geruntur, heresis aput Constantinopolim
while these-things in Italy are-done a-heresy at Constantinople
orta est, quae unam in domino nostro Iesu Christo voluntatem
arose has which one in Lord our Jesus Christ will
et operationem adseverabat. Hanc autem heresem excitarunt
and operation asserted this moreover heresy stirred-up
Georgius patriarcha Constantinopolitanus, Macharius, Pyrrus,
George patriarch of-Constantinople Macarius Pyrrhus
Paulus et Petrus. Quam ob causam Constantinus augustus
Paul and Peter which for reason Constantine augustus
centum quinquaginta episcopos congregari fecit; inter quos
a-hundred fifty bishops to-be-gathered caused among whom
etiam fuerunt legati sanctae Romanae ecclesiae missi ab
also were the-legates of-the-holy Roman church sent by
Agathone papa, Iohannes diaconus et Iohannes Portuensis
Agatho pope John deacon and John of-Porto
episcopus; qui omnes eandem heresem damnaverunt. Ea
bishop who all the-same heresy condemned at-that
hora tantae haranearum telae in medio populi ceciderunt,
hour such of-spiders webs into the-midst of-the-people fell
ut omnes mirarentur; ac per hoc significatum est, quod
that all wondered and by this signified was that

sordes hereticae pravitatis depulsae sunt. Et Georgius quidem
the-filth of-heretical depravity driven-out were and George indeed
patriarcha correptus est, ceteri vero in sua defensione
patriarch corrected was the-others but in their defense
perseverantes anathematis sunt ultione perculsi. Eo
persevering of-anathema were by-the-punishment struck at-that
tempore Damianus Ticinensis ecclesiae episcopus sub nomine
time Damian of-the-Ticinese church bishop under the-name
Mansueti Mediolanensis archiepiscopi hac de causa satis utilem
of-Mansuetus of-Milan archbishop this for reason very useful
rectaeque fidei epistolam conposuit, quae in praefato sinodo
and-of-right faith a-letter composed which in the-aforesaid synod
non mediocre suffragium tulit. Recta autem et vera fides
no moderate support brought right moreover and true faith
haec est, ut in domino nostro Iesu Christo sicut duae sunt
this is that in Lord our Jesus Christ as two are
naturae, hoc est Dei et hominis, sic etiam duae credantur
natures that is of-God and of-man so also two be-believed
esse voluntates sive operationes. Vis audire de eo quod
to-be wills or operations do-you-wish to-hear about that which
deitatis est? 'Ego', inquit, 'et pater unum sumus'. Vis
of-the-deity is I he-says and the-father one are do-you-wish
audire quod humanitatis? 'Pater maior me est'. Cerne
to-hear what of-the-humanity the-father greater than-me is see
secundum humanitatem eum in navi dormientem; cerne eius
according-to the-humanity him in the-ship sleeping see his
divinitatem, cum euangelista ait: 'Tunc surgens imperavit
divinity when the-evangelist says then rising he-commanded
ventis et mari, et facta est tranquillitas magna'. Haec est
the-winds and the-sea and made was a-calm great this is
sexta sinodus universalis Constantinopoli celebrata et Greco
the-sixth synod universal at-Constantinople celebrated and in-Greek

sermone conscripta, temporibus papae Agathonis, exsequente
speech written-down in-the-times of-pope Agatho carrying-it-out
ac residente Constantino principe intra septa palatii sui.
and presiding Constantine prince within the-enclosures of-palace his

De eclipsi lunae et solis, et de pestilentia quae Romae et Ticini facta est

V · ECLIPSES AND PLAGUE AT ROME AND PAVIA

The moon and then the sun are eclipsed, and a heavy plague follows, so that at Rome the dead are carried two to a bier. At Pavia people flee to the mountains and grass grows in the streets, while a good and a bad angel are seen at night, and as often as the bad one strikes a door with his spear, so many die there. When an altar of Saint Sebastian is set up in Saint Peter in Chains, the plague ends.

His temporibus per indictionem octavam luna eclypsin
in-these times through the-indiction eighth the-moon an-eclipse
passa est. Solis quoque eclypsis eodem pene tempore,
suffered has of-the-sun also an-eclipse at-the-same nearly time
hora diei quasi decima, quinto Nonas Maias effecta
at-the-hour of-the-day about tenth on-the-fifth Nones of-May brought-about
est. Moxque subsecuta gravissima pestis est tribus mensibus,
was and-soon followed a-very-heavy plague has for-three months
hoc est Iulio, Augusto et Septembrio; tantaque fuit multitudo
that is July August and September and-so-great was the-multitude
morientium, ut etiam parentes cum filiis atque fratres cum
of-the-dying that even parents with children and brothers with
sororibus, bini per feretra positi, aput urbem Romam
sisters two-by-two on biers placed at the-city Rome
ad sepulchra ducerentur. Pari etiam modo haec pestilentia
to the-tombs were-carried in-equal also manner this pestilence

Ticinum quoque depopulata est, ita ut, cunctis civibus
Pavia also depopulated has so that all the-citizens
per iuga montium seu per diversa loca fugientibus,
through the-ridges of-the-mountains or through different places fleeing
in foro et per plateas civitatis herbae et frutecta
in the-forum and through the-streets of-the-city grasses and shrubs
nascerentur. Tuncque visibiliter multis apparuit, quia bonus et
grew and-then visibly to-many it-appeared that a-good and
malus angelus noctu per civitatem pergerent, et ex iussu
a-bad angel by-night through the-city went and by command
boni angeli malus angelus, qui videbatur venabulum manu
of-the-good angel the-bad angel who was-seen a-hunting-spear in-hand
ferre, quotiens de venabulo hostium cuiuscumque domus
to-carry as-often-as with the-spear the-door of-any house
percussisset, tot de eadem domo die sequenti homines
he-had-struck so-many from the-same house on-the-day following men
interirent. Tunc cuidam per revelationem dictum est,
perished then to-a-certain-man through revelation said it-was
quod pestis ipsa prius non quiesceret, quam in basilica
that plague itself before not would-rest than in the-basilica
beati Petri quae ad Vincula dicitur sancti Sebastiani martyris
of-blessed Peter which at the-Chains is-called of-holy Sebastian martyr
altarium poneretur. Factumque est, et delatis ab urbe
an-altar should-be-placed and-done it-was and brought from the-city
Roma beati Sebastiani martyris reliquiis, mox in iam
Rome of-blessed Sebastian martyr the-relics soon in the-already
dicta basilica altarium constitutum est, pestis ipsa quievit.
said basilica the-altar established was plague itself rested

Quomodo per antiquum hostem Aldoni et Grausoni nuntiatum est, quod eos Cunincperto occidere vellet

VI · THE FLY WITH ONE FOOT

As Cunincpert plans with his groom to kill Aldo and Grauso, a large fly settles on the window, and the king strikes at it and cuts off a foot. A lame man with one foot cut off meets Aldo and Grauso and warns them, and they flee to Saint Romanus' church. Cunincpert understands that the fly was an evil spirit, receives them on his word, and forgives them.

Rex vero Cunincpert dum post haec cum stratore suo, qui
king but Cunincpert while after these-things with groom his who
lingua propria 'marpahis' dicitur, consilium iniret in civitate
in-tongue own marpahis is-called counsel was-entering in the-city
Ticinensi, quomodo Aldonem et Grausonem vita privare
Ticinese how Aldo and Grauso of-life to-deprive
deberet: repente in fenestra, iuxta quam consistebant, una de
he-ought suddenly on the-window beside which they-were-standing one of
maiusculis musca consedit; quam Cunincpert cultello
the-rather-large-ones fly settled which Cunincpert with-a-little-knife
ut extingueret percutere volens, eius tantum pedem abscidit.
that he-might-kill to-strike wishing its only foot cut-off
Aldo vero et Grauso dum ad palatium regis consilium
Aldo but and Grauso while to the-palace of-the-king the-plan
nescientes venirent, cum basilicae sancti Romani martyris,
not-knowing were-coming when to-the-basilica of-holy Romanus martyr
quae prope palatium sita est, propinquassent, repente
which near the-palace situated is they-had-drawn-near suddenly
eis obvius quidam claudus uno pede truncato factus
to-them in-the-way a-certain lame-man with-one foot cut-off made
est; qui eis dixit, quod eos Cunincpert, si ad eum
was who to-them said that them Cunincpert if to him

pergerent, occisurus esset. Qui haec audientes, magno
they-went about-to-kill was who these-things hearing by-great
timore correpti, post altarium eiusdem basilicae confugiere.
fear seized behind the-altar of-the-same basilica fled
Moxque Cunincperto regi nuntiatum est, quod Aldo et
and-soon to-Cunincpert king announced it-was that Aldo and
Grauso in basilica beati Romani martyris confugissent. Tunc
Grauso in the-basilica of-blessed Romanus martyr had-fled then
Cunincpert stratorem suum arguere coepit, ut quid suum
Cunincpert groom his to-accuse began that why his
consilium prodere debuisset. Cui suus strator ita respondit:
plan to-betray he-should-have to-whom his groom thus answered
'Domine mi rex, tu scis, quia, postquam hoc consiliati sumus,
O-lord my king you know that after this taken-counsel we-have
ego a tuo conspectu non exivi; et quomodo hoc alicui
I from your sight not went-out and how this to-anyone
dicere potui?' Tunc rex [ad] Aldonem et Grausonem
to-say could-I then the-king to Aldo and Grauso
misit, interrogans eos, ut quid in locum sanctum confugium
sent asking them that why into the-place holy refuge
fecissent. Qui respondentes dixerunt: 'Quia nuntiatum est
they-had-made who answering said because announced it-was
nobis, quod nos dominus rex occidere vellet'. Iterato rex
to-us that us the-lord king to-kill wished again the-king
misit ad eos, sciscitans, quis fuerit ille qui eis nuntiaverit,
sent to them inquiring who had-been he who to-them had-announced
mandans eis, ut, nisi ei nuntiatorem proderent, eius
bidding them that unless to-him the-announcer they-betrayed his
gratiam invenire non possint. Tunc illi sicut factum fuerat
favor to-find not they-could then they as done it-had-been
regi mandaverunt, dicentes, claudum hominem obvium
to-the-king sent-word saying a-lame man in-the-way

se habuisse, qui unum pedem truncatum habebat et
themselves to-have-had who one foot cut-off had and
genu tenus crure ligneo utebatur, et hunc fuisse sui
the-knee up-to with-a-leg wooden used and this-one to-have-been of-their
interitus nuntium. Tunc intellexit rex, muscam illam cui
destruction the-messenger then understood the-king fly that whose
pedem truncaverat malignum spiritum fuisse et ipsum sui
foot he-had-cut-off a-malign spirit to-have-been and itself of-his
secreti consilia prodidisse. Qui statim Aldonem et Grausonem
secret the-counsels to-have-betrayed who at-once Aldo and Grauso
in sua fide de eadem basilica suscipiens, eisdem culpam
on his faith from the-same basilica receiving to-the-same the-fault
pepercit et in reliquum eosdem in loco fidelium habuit.
spared and for the-rest the-same in the-place of-the-faithful held

De Felice diacono gramatico

VII · FELIX THE GRAMMARIAN

Felix, uncle of Paul's teacher Flavian, flourishes in grammar, and the king loves him so much that he gives him a staff adorned with silver and gold.

Eo tempore floruit in arte gramatica Felix, patruus
at-that time flourished in the-art grammatical Felix uncle
Flaviani praeceptoris mei; quem in tantum rex dilexit,
of-Flavian teacher my whom to such-a-degree the-king loved
ut ei baculum argento auroque decoratum inter reliqua
that to-him a-staff with-silver and-gold adorned among the-other
suae largitatis munera condonaret.
of-his liberality gifts he-granted

De Iohanne Bergomensi episcopo

VIII · JOHN, BISHOP OF BERGAMO

John, bishop of Bergamo, offends Cunincpert at a banquet, and for his ride home the king has him given a wild horse that throws its riders. The horse carries him gently all the way, and from that day the king reveres the bishop and gives him the horse.

Per idem quoque tempus Iohannes episcopus Bergomatis
through the-same also time John bishop of-the-Bergamo
ecclesiae vir mirae sanctitatis extitit. Qui cum regem
church a-man of-wondrous holiness stood-out who when king
Cunincpertum in convivio dum sermocinarentur offendisset,
Cunincpert at a-banquet while they-were-conversing had-offended
rex ei hospitium revertenti equum ferocem et indomitum,
the-king for-him to-the-lodging returning a-horse fierce and untamed
qui inmenso fremitu super se sedentes terrae allidere
which with-immense snorting upon itself those-sitting to-the-ground to-dash
solebat, praeparari fecit. Cui cum episcopus supersedisset,
was-wont to-be-prepared caused on-which when the-bishop had-sat
ita mansuetus extitit, ut eum blando incessu usque
so gentle it-proved that him with-a-smooth gait all-the-way
ad domum propriam deportaret. Quod rex audiens, et
to the-house own it-carried which the-king hearing both
episcopum ex eo die honore debito coluit, et ei ipsum
the-bishop from that day with-the-honor due revered and to-him the-very
equum, quem suae sessioni dedicaverat, dono largitus est.
horse which to-his riding he-had-dedicated as-a-gift bestowed has

De stella obscura quae tunc apparuit, et de eructuatione Bebii montis

IX · A DARKENED STAR, AND VESUVIUS ERUPTS

A darkened star appears at night near the Pleiades between Christmas and Epiphany, and in February a bright star crosses from west to east. In March Vesuvius erupts for some days, and all green things around are destroyed by its dust and ash.

Hac tempestate noctu stella iuxta vergilias caelo sereno
at-this time by-night a-star beside the-Pleiades with-sky clear
inter Domini natalem et theophaniam apparuit, omnimodo
between of-the-Lord the-birthday and the-Theophany appeared in-every-way
obumbrata, veluti cum luna sub nube est constituta. Post
overshadowed as-if when the-moon under a-cloud is placed after
haec mense Februario die media stella ab occasu
these-things in-the-month of-February at-day mid a-star from the-west
exiit, quae cum magno fulgore in partes orientis declinavit.
went-out which with great brightness into the-parts of-the-east sank
Dehinc mense Martio Bebius eructuavit per dies aliquod,
thereafter in-the-month of-March Vesuvius erupted for days some
et omnia virentia circumquaque prae pulvere et cinere
and all green-things round-about for dust and ash
illius exterminata sunt.
its destroyed were

Quomodo gens Sarracinorum Africam cepit et Cartaginem diruit

X · THE SARACENS DESTROY CARTHAGE

The Saracens, unbelieving and hostile to God, come from Egypt into Africa with a vast host, besiege and take Carthage, ravage it, and raze it to the ground.

Tunc Sarracinorum gens infidelis et Deo inimica ex
then of-the-Saracens the-nation unbelieving and to-God hostile from
Aegypto in Africam cum nimia multitudine pergens,
Egypt into Africa with excessive multitude going
obsessam Cartaginem cepit captamque crudeliter depopulata
besieged Carthage took and-captured cruelly depopulated
est et ad solum usque prostravit.
has and to the-ground up-to laid-low

De morte Constantini et regno Iustiniani et victoria eius de Sarracinis

XI · JUSTINIAN, THE SARACENS, AND POPE SERGIUS

Constantine dies, and his younger son Justinian reigns ten years, takes Africa back from the Saracens, and makes peace with them. When Pope Sergius will not sign his synod, he sends his protospatharius Zacharias to bring him to Constantinople, but the soldiers of Ravenna and the parts around drive Zacharias from Rome with insults.

Inter haec Constantinus imperator aput Constantinopolim
among these-things Constantine emperor at Constantinople
moritur, et eius minor filius Iustinianus Romanorum
dies and his younger son Justinian of-the-Romans

regnum suscepit, cuius per decem annos gubernacula
the-kingdom took-up of-which through ten years the-helm
tenuit. Hic Africa a Sarracenis abstulit et cum eisdem
he-held he Africa from the-Saracens took-away and with the-same
pacem terra marique fecit. Hic Sergium pontificem, quia in
peace by-land and-by-sea made he Sergius pontiff because in
erroris illius synodo, quam Constantinopolim fecerat, favere
of-error that synod which at-Constantinople he-had-held to-favor
et subscribere noluit, misso Zacharia protospathario suo,
and to-subscribe refused sent Zacharias protospatharius his
iussit Constantinopolim deportari. Sed militia Ravennae
ordered to-Constantinople to-be-carried-off but the-soldiery of-Ravenna
vicinarumque partium iussa principis nefanda contemnens,
and-of-the-neighboring parts the-orders of-the-prince wicked despising
eundem Zachariam cum contumeliis ab urbe Roma et
the-same Zacharias with insults from the-city Rome and
iniuriis pepulit.
injuries drove

Quomodo Leo Iustinianum exilio trusum, regnum eius invasit

XII · LEO EXILES JUSTINIAN

Leo seizes the imperial dignity against Justinian, takes his throne, and rules three years, keeping Justinian an exile in Pontus.

Contra hunc Iustinianum Leo augustalem dignitatem arripiens,
against this Justinian Leo the-augustal dignity seizing
eum regno privavit; regnumque Romanorum tribus annis
him of-the-kingdom deprived and-the-kingdom of-the-Romans for-three years
regens, Iustinianum exulem in Ponto servavit.
ruling Justinian an-exile in Pontus kept

Quomodo Tiberius Leonem superans et in carcerem coiciens, imperator effectus

XIII · TIBERIUS DEPOSES LEO

Then Tiberius rises against Leo, takes his throne, and keeps him in custody in the city for all the time he reigns.

Rursumque Tiberius contra hunc Leonem insurgens, regnum
and-again Tiberius against this Leo rising-up kingdom
eius invasit eumque toto quo ipse regnavit tempore in
his invaded and-him the-whole which he-himself reigned time in
eadem civitatem in custodia tenuit.
the-same city in custody held

Quomodo papa Sergius Aquileiensem sinodum nolentem sanctam quintam sinodum suscipere correxit

XIV · THE SYNOD OF AQUILEIA ACCEPTS THE FIFTH COUNCIL

A synod at Aquileia, from ignorance of the faith, hesitates to accept the fifth universal council until Pope Sergius' admonitions teach it to agree. That council, held under Vigilius and Justinian, condemned those who said Mary bore only a man, and laid down that she be called Theotokos, since she bore God and man.

Hoc tempore sinodus Aquileiae facta ob imperitiam fidei
at-this time a-synod at-Aquileia held for ignorance of-the-faith
quintum universalem concilium suscipere diffidit, donec
the-fifth universal council to-accept hesitated until
salutaribus beati papae Sergii monitis instructa et ipsa
by-the-saving of-blessed pope Sergius admonitions instructed also it
huic cum ceteris Christi ecclesiis annuere consentit. Facta
to-this with the-other of-Christ churches to-assent consents held
autem est haec sinodus Constantinopolim temporibus Vigilii
moreover was this synod at-Constantinople in-the-times of-Vigilius
papae sub Iustiniano principe contra Theodorum et
pope under Justinian prince against Theodore and
omnes hereticos, qui, beatam Mariam solum hominem, non
all heretics who blessed Mary only a-man not
Deum et hominem genuisse, adfirmabant. In qua sinodo
God and man to-have-borne affirmed in which synod
catholice est institutum, ut beata Maria semper virgo
in-catholic-fashion was established that blessed Mary ever virgin
theotocos diceretur, quia, sicut catholica fides habet, non
Theotokos should-be-called because as the-catholic faith holds not
hominem solum, sed vere Deum et hominem genuit.
a-man only but truly God and man she-bore

De Cedoald rege Anglorum, quomodo Romam veniens baptizatus est statimque obiit

XV · CÆDWALLA BAPTIZED AT ROME

Cædwalla, king of the English Saxons, turns to Christ and goes to Rome, received on the way by Cuninc pert. Pope Sergius baptizes him and names him Peter, and while still in his white robes he dies. He is buried in Saint Peter's, and Paul gives his epitaph, which tells how he left his kingdom for love of God and was carried, newly washed, into heaven.

His diebus Cedoal rex Anglorum Saxonum, qui multa in sua
in-these days Cædwalla king of-the-English of-the-Saxons who many in his
patria bella gesserat, ad Christum conversus Romam properavit.
fatherland wars had-waged to Christ converted to-Rome hastened
Qui per Cuninc pertum regem veniens, ab eo mirifice susceptus
who through Cuninc pert king coming by him wondrously received
est. Is cum Romam pervenisset, a Sergio papa baptizatus
was he when to-Rome he-had-come by Sergius pope baptized
Petrusque appellatus et adhuc in albis constitutus, ad
and-Peter called and still in white-robes placed to
regna caelestia migravit. Cuius corpus in basilica beati Petri
the-kingdoms heavenly departed whose body in the-basilica of-blessed Peter
sepultum est, et hoc super se epythapium descriptum habet:
buried is and this over itself epitaph written has

'Culmen, opes, sobolem, pollentia regna, triumphos,
summit wealth offspring powerful kingdoms triumphs
exubias, proceres, moenia, castra, lares,
spoils nobles walls camps hearths
quaeque patrum virtus et quae congesserat ipse,
and-whatever of-the-fathers the-valor and what had-gathered he-himself

Cedoal armipotens liquit amore Dei,
Cædwalla mighty-in-arms left for-the-love of-God
ut Petrum sedemque Petri rex cerneret hospes,
that Peter and-the-see of-Peter the-king might-see as-a-guest
cuius fonte meras sumeret almus aquas,
whose from-font pure might-take kindly waters
splendificumque iubar radianti carperet haustu,
and-the-splendid radiance with-a-radiant might-draw draft
ex quo vivificus fulgor ubique fluit;
from which life-giving brightness everywhere flows
percipiensque alacer recidivae praemia vitae,
and-receiving eager of-the-revived the-rewards life
barbaricam rabiem nomen et inde suum
the-barbaric madness name and thence his
conversus convertit ovans, Petrumque vocari
converted he-converted exulting and-Peter to-be-called
Sergius antistes iussit, ut ipse pater
Sergius the-prelate ordered as he-himself father
fonte renascentis quem Christi gratia purgans
from-the-font of-one-reborn whom of-Christ the-grace cleansing
protinus albatum vexit in arce poli.
straightway white-robed carried into the-citadel of-heaven
Mira fides regis, clementia maxima Christi,
wonderful the-faith of-the-king the-clemency greatest of-Christ
cuius consilium nullus adire potest!
whose counsel no-one to-approach can
Sospes enim veniens supremo ex orbe Brittani
safe for coming the-farthest from world the-Briton
per varias gentes, per freta perque vias,
through various peoples through straits and-through roads

urbem Romuleam vidit templumque verendum
the-city of-Romulus saw and-the-temple venerable
aspexit Petri, mistica dona gerens.
beheld of-Peter mystic gifts bearing
Candidus inter oves Christi sociabilis ibit,
white among the-sheep of-Christ companionable he-shall-go
corpore nam tumulum, mente superna tenet.
in-body for the-tomb in-mind the-heavenly he-holds
Commutasse magis sceptrorum insignia credas,
to-have-exchanged rather of-scepters the-insignia you-would-believe
quem regnum Christi promeruisse vides'.
him-whom the-kingdom of-Christ to-have-merited you-see

Quod regnum Francorum aput Gallias sub maioribus domus esse coepit

XVI · THE MAYORS OF THE PALACE, AND ARNULF

In Gaul the Frankish kings have fallen from their strength and wisdom, and the mayors of the palace exercise the royal power, since the kingdom is ordained to pass to their line. Arnulf, mayor then, becomes a wonderful bishop of Metz and at last a hermit serving lepers, and Paul has written of him in his book on the bishops of that city.

Hoc tempore aput Gallias Francorum regibus a soli[ta]
at-this time among the-Gauls of-the-Franks the-kings from accustomed
fortitudine et scientia degenerantibus, hi qui maiores domui
strength and knowledge degenerating those who mayors of-the-house
regalis esse videbantur administrare regi potentiam et
royal to-be seemed to-administer for-the-king the-power and

quicquid regibus agere mos est coeperunt; quippe cum
whatever for-kings to-do the-custom is they-began indeed since
caelitus esse[t] dispositum, ad horum progeniem Francorum
from-heaven it-was disposed to of-these the-progeny of-the-Franks
transvehi regnum. Fuitque eo tempore maior domus
to-be-carried-over the-kingdom and-there-was at-that time mayor of-the-house
in regio palatio Arnulfus, vir, ut postmodum claruit,
in the-royal palace Arnulf a-man as afterward became-clear
Deo amabilis et mirae sanctitatis. Qui post gloriam
to-God lovable and of-wondrous holiness who after the-glory
seculi Christi se servitio subdens, mirabilis in
of-the-world of-Christ himself to-the-service subjecting wonderful in
episcopatu extitit, ac demum heremiticam vitam eligens,
the-episcopate proved and at-last the-hermit's life choosing
leprosis universa praebens obsequia, continentissime vixit. De
to-lepers all furnishing services most-continently lived about
cuius mirabilibus aput Metensem ecclesiam, ubi episcopatum
whose wonders at the-Metz church where the-episcopate
gessit, liber existit, eiusdem miracula et vitae abstinentiam
he-held a-book exists of-the-same the-miracles and of-life the-abstinence
continens. Sed et ego in libro quem de episcopis eiusdem
containing but also I in the-book which about the-bishops of-the-same
civitatis conscripsi flagitante Angelramno, viro mitissimo
city I-wrote urging Angilram a-man most-gentle
et sanctitate praecipuo, praefatae ecclesiae archiepiscopo,
and in-holiness outstanding of-the-aforesaid church archbishop
de hoc sacratissimo viro Arnulfo quaedam eius miranda
about this most-holy man Arnulf certain his wonders
conposui, quae modo superfluum duxi replicare.
composed which now superfluous I-have-thought to-repeat

De morte Cunincperti regis, et de regno filii eius Liutperti

XVII · CUNINCPERT DIES; LIUTPERT KING

Cunincpert, a most lovable prince, dies after twelve years of reigning alone; he built a monastery of Saint George at Coronate and was a bold warrior. He is buried, mourned by the Lombards, and leaves the kingdom to his young son Liutpert with the wise Ansprand as guardian.

Inter haec Cunincpert cunctis amabillimus princeps,
among these-things Cunincpert to-all most-lovable prince
postquam duodecim annos Langobardorum regnum post
after twelve years of-the-Lombards the-kingdom after
patrem solus obtenuit, tandem ab hac luce subtractus est.
the-father alone he-held at-last from this light withdrawn was
Hic in campo Coronate, ubi bellum contra Alahis gessit, in
he in the-plain of-Coronate where war against Alahis he-waged in
honore beati Georgii martyris monasterium construxit. Fuit
honor of-blessed George martyr a-monastery built he-was
autem vir elegans et omni bonitate conspicuus audaxque
moreover a-man elegant and in-all goodness conspicuous and-bold
bellator. Hic cum multis Langobardorum lacrimis iuxta
a-warrior he with many of-the-Lombards tears beside
basilicam domini Salvatoris, quam quondam avus eiusdem
the-basilica of-the-Lord Savior which once grandfather of-the-same
Aripert construxerat, sepultus est. Regnumque Langobardorum
Aripert had-built buried was and-the-kingdom of-the-Lombards
Liutperto filio adhuc puerilis aetatis reliquit, cui tutorem
to-Liutpert son still of-boyish age left to-whom as-guardian
Ansprandum, virum sapientem et inlustrem, contribuit.
Ansprand a-man wise and illustrious assigned

De Raginperto duce Taurinensium, quomodo superato Liutperto regnum invasit et eo anno occubuit

XVIII · RAGINPERT SEIZES THE KINGDOM

Eight months later Raginpert, duke of Turin, Godepert's son, beats Ansprand and Rotharit of Bergamo at Novara and seizes the kingdom. He dies the same year.

Dehinc elapsis octo mensibus, Raginpertus dux Taurinensium,
thereafter elapsed eight months Raginpert duke of-Turin
quem quondam rex Godipertus, cum extingueretur a Grimualdo,
whom once king Godepert when he-was-killed by Grimoald
reliquerat parvolum, de quo et superius diximus, cum valida
had-left a-little-one about whom also above we-have-said with a-strong
manu veniens, adversus Ansprandum et Rotharit Bergomensium
band coming against Ansprand and Rotharit of-the-Bergamasks
ducem aput Novarias conflixit, eosque in campo exsuperans,
duke at Novara clashed and-them in the-field overcoming
regnum Langobardorum invasit. Sed eodem anno mortuus est.
the-kingdom of-the-Lombards invaded but in-the-same year dead was

Quomodo Ariperto regnum invasit et Liutpertum vivum conprehendit et postea extinxit

XIX · ARIPERT CAPTURES LIUTPERT

Raginpert's son Aripert fights at Pavia against King Liutpert and his supporters Ansprand, Ato, Tatzo, Rotharit, and Faro. He defeats them all and captures the boy Liutpert alive, and Ansprand flees to the island of Comacina.

Tunc filius eius Aripert iterum bellum parans, pugnavit cum
then son his Aripert again war preparing fought with
Liutperto rege aput Ticinum cumque Ansprando et Atone
Liutpert king at Pavia and-with Ansprand and Ato
et Tatzone necnon et Rotharit ac Faraone. Sed omnes
and Tatzo and-also also Rotharit and Faro but all
hos bello exsuperans, Liutpertum infantulum vivum in bello
these in-war overcoming Liutpert the-little-infant alive in battle
conprehendit. Ansprand quoque fugiens, in insulam se
seized Ansprand also fleeing onto the-island himself
Commacinam conmunivit.
Comacina fortified

Quomodo Rotharit aput Bergamum regnans ab Ariperto captus vitaque privatus est

XX · ROTHARIT'S FALL AND LIUTPERT'S DEATH

Rotharit takes the royal title at Bergamo, but Aripert takes Lodi and Bergamo, shaves the false king's head and beard, and exiles him to Turin, where he is killed. Aripert also puts the captive Liutpert to death in the bath.

At vero Rotharit dux Bergamum civitatem suam rediens,
but indeed Rotharit duke to-Bergamo city his returning
regnum arripuit. Contra quem rex Aripert cum magno
the-kingdom seized against whom king Aripert with great
exercitu proficiscens, expugnata primum et capta Laude,
army setting-out stormed first and taken Lodi
Bergamum obsedit, eamque cum arietibus et diversis
Bergamo besieged and-it with rams and various
belli machinis sine aliqua difficultate expugnans mox
of-war engines without any difficulty storming soon
cepit, conprehensumque Rotharit pseudoregem, eius caput
took and-seized Rotharit the-false-king his head
barbamque radens, Taurinis in exilium trusit, quique ibidem
and-beard shaving to-Turin into exile thrust and-who there
post aliquod dies peremptus est. Liutpertum vero, quem
after some days killed was Liutpert but whom
ceperat, pari modo in balneo vita privavit.
he-had-taken in-equal manner in the-bath of-life deprived

Quomodo Ansprandus in Baioariam fugiens, cum Theutperto eorum duce permansit

XXI · ANSPRAND FLEES TO BAVARIA

Aripert sends an army against Ansprand on Comacina. Ansprand flees through Chiavenna and Chur to Theudebert, duke of the Bavarians, and stays with him nine years, and Aripert's army destroys the town on the island.

Misit quoque exercitum adversus Ansprandum in insulam
he-sent also an-army against Ansprand onto the-island
Commacinam. Quo conperto, Ansprand fugiit Clavennam;
Comacina which learned Ansprand fled to-Chiavenna
deinde per Curiam Retorum civitatem venit ad
then through Chur of-the-Raetians the-city came to
Theutpertum Baioariorum ducem, et fuit cum eo per annos
Theudebert of-the-Bavarians duke and was with him for years
novem. Exercitus vero Ariperti insulam in qua Ansprand
nine the-army but of-Aripert the-island in which Ansprand
fuerat invadens, eius oppidum diruit.
had-been invading his town pulled-down

Quomodo Aripert Ansprandi uxorem filiumque eius et filiam diversis modis deturpavit, et quomodo Liutprandum ad patrem suum in Baioariam ire permisit

XXII · ARIPERT'S CRUELTY TO ANSPRAND'S FAMILY

Aripert blinds Ansprand's son Sigiprand and afflicts all his kin, but lets the younger son Liutprand go to his father, thinking him contemptible, surely by God's will. Ansprand's wife Theodorada, who boasts she will be queen, has her nose and ears cut off, and his daughter Aurona is disfigured the same way.

Rex igitur Aripert, confirmato regno, Sigiprandum,
king therefore Aripert confirmed the-kingdom Sigiprand
Ansprandi filium, oculis privavit omnesque qui ei
of-Ansprand the-son of-the-eyes deprived and-all who to-him
consanguinitate iuncti fuerant diversis modis afflixit. Minorem
by-kinship joined had-been in-various ways afflicted the-younger
quoque Ansprandi filium Liutprandum in custodia tenuit;
also of-Ansprand son Liutprand in custody held
quem quia despicabilem personam et adhuc adulescentulum
whom because a-contemptible person and still a-young-lad
esse perspexit, non solum in eius corpore vindictam aliquam
to-be he-perceived not only on his body vengeance any
minime ingessit, sed eum, ut ad patrem suum pergeret,
by-no-means inflicted but him that to father his he-might-go
abire permisit. Quod Dei omnipotentis nutu factum
to-depart permitted which of-God almighty by-the-nod done
fuisse, qui eum ad regni gubernacula praeparabat,
to-have-been who him for of-the-kingdom the-helm was-preparing
dubium non est. Igitur Liutprand ad patrem suum in
doubtful not is therefore Liutprand to father his into
Baioariam profectus, ei de suo adventu inaestimabile
Bavaria having-set-out to-him by his coming inestimable

gaudium fecit. Uxorem vero Ansprandi Theodoradam nomine
joy made the-wife but of-Ansprand Theodorada by-name
rex Aripert conprehendi fecit. Quae cum se voluntate
king Aripert to-be-seized caused who when herself with-will
feminea reginam futuram esse iactaret, naso atque auribus
womanly queen about-to-be to-be boasted the-nose and ears
abscisis, decore suae faciei deturpata est. Pari etiam modo
cut-off of-the-beauty of-her face disfigured was in-equal also manner
et germana Liutprandi nomine Aurona deformis effecta est.
also the-sister of-Liutprand by-name Aurona deformed made was

Quod aput Gallias maior domus Anscis, Arnulfi filius, tunc erat

XXIII · ANSCHIS, MAYOR OF THE PALACE

At this time Anschis, son of Arnulf, said to be named after the Trojan Anchises, holds power among the Franks as mayor of the palace.

Hoc tempore aput Gallias in Francorum regnum Anschis,
at-this time among the-Gauls in of-the-Franks the-kingdom Anschis
Arnulfi filius, qui de nomine Anschise quondam Troiani
of-Arnulf the-son who from the-name of-Anchises once the-Trojan
creditur appellatus, sub nomine maioris domui gerebat
is-believed called under the-name of-mayor of-the-house was-holding
principatum.
the-princedom

De morte Adonis aput Foroiuli et ducatu Ferdulfi, qui a Sclavis occisus est

XXIV · FERDULF AND THE DISASTER OF FRIULI

Ferdulf, a slippery and haughty Ligurian, becomes duke of Friuli and bribes some Slavs to bring an army in, and when the sculdahis Argait fails to catch Slav raiders, Ferdulf calls him arga, a coward. As the Slavs hold a hilltop, Argait charges up the steep side and Ferdulf and the army follow for shame, and all the nobility of Friuli dies there with both men. Paul tells it as a warning against quarrels.

Mortuo quoque aput Foroiuli Adone, quem dixeramus
dead also at Friuli Ado whom we-had-said
lociservatorem fuisse, Ferdulfus ducatum suscepit, qui de
placeholder to-have-been Ferdulf the-duchy took-up who from
partibus Liguriae extitit, homo lubricus et elatus. Qui
the-parts of-Liguria was a-man slippery and haughty who
dum victoriae laudem de Sclavis habere cupiit, magna
while of-victory the-praise over the-Slavs to-have desired great
sibi et Foroiulanis detrimenta invexit. His praemia
to-himself and to-the-Friulians harms brought-in he rewards
quibusdam Sclavis dedit, ut exercitum Sclavorum in eadem
to-certain Slavs he-gave that an-army of-the-Slavs into the-same
provinciam sua adhortatione inmitterent. Quod ita quoque
province at-his urging they-should-send-in which so also
effectum est. Causa autem magnae in eadem Foroiulana
effected was the-cause moreover of-great in the-same Friulian
provincia perditionis ista fuit. Inruerunt latrunculi Sclavorum
province ruin this was burst the-robbers of-the-Slavs
super greges et pastores ovium, quae in eorum vicinia
upon the-flocks and the-shepherds of-sheep which in their neighborhood
pascebantur, et de eis praedas abigerunt. Subsecutus est
were-pastured and from them booty drove-off followed has

hos rector loci illius, quem 'sculdahis' lingua propria dicunt,
these the-ruler of-place that whom sculdahis in-tongue own they-call
vir nobilis animoque et viribus potens; sed tamen eosdem
a-man noble and-in-spirit and in-strength powerful but yet the-same
latrunculos adsequi non potuit. Cui exinde revertenti
robbers to-overtake not he-could to-whom thence returning
dux Ferdulfus obviam factus est. Quem dum interrogaret,
duke Ferdulf in-the-way made was whom when he-asked
quid de illis latrunculis factum esset, Argait ei —
what about those robbers done had-been Argait to-him
sic enim nomen habebat—, eosdem fugisse, respondit.
thus for the-name he-had the-same to-have-fled answered
Tunc ei Ferdulfus indignans ita locutus est: 'Quando tu
then to-him Ferdulf indignant thus spoken has when you
aliquid fortiter facere poteras, qui Argait ab arga nomen
anything bravely to-do could who Argait from arga the-name
deductum habes'? Cui ille maxima stimulatus ira, ut
derived have to-whom he by-very-great goaded anger as
erat vir fortis, ita respondit: 'Sic vellit Deus, ut non
he-was a-man brave thus answered so may-wish God that not
antea ego et tu, dux Ferdulfe, exeamus de hac vita,
before I and you O-duke Ferdulf we-go-out from this life
quam cognoscant alii, quis ex nobis magis est arga'. Haec
than may-know others which of us more is arga these-things
cum sibi invicem vulgaria verba locuti fuissent, contigit
when to-each-other in-turn vulgar words spoken they-had it-happened
non post multos dies, ut exercitus Sclavorum, pro quorum
not after many days that the-army of-the-Slavs for whose
adventu dux Ferdulfus praemia dederat, cum magnis viribus
coming duke Ferdulf rewards had-given with great strength
adventaret. Qui cum castra in summo montis vertice
was-arriving who when a-camp on the-highest of-the-mountain summit

posuissent, et pene ex omni parte difficile esset ad eos
they-had-placed and nearly from every side difficult it-was to them
accedere, Ferdulfus dux cum exercitu superveniens, coepit
to-approach Ferdulf duke with the-army coming-up began
eundem montem circuire, ut per loca planiora super eos
the-same mountain to-go-around that through places more-level upon them
possit inruere. Tunc Argait, de quo praemisimus,
he-might-be-able to-rush then Argait about whom we-have-spoken-before
ita Ferdulfo dixit: 'Memento, dux Ferdulf, quod me esse
thus to-Ferdulf said remember O-duke Ferdulf that me to-be
inertem et inutilem dixeris et vulgari verbo arga vocaveris.
sluggish and useless you-said and by-a-vulgar word arga called
Nunc autem ira Dei veniat super illum, qui posterior
now moreover the-wrath of-God may-come upon him who later
e nobis ad hos Sclavos accesserit'. Et haec dicens,
of us to these Slavs shall-have-approached and these-things saying
verso equo, per asperitatem montis, unde gravis erat
turned the-horse through the-roughness of-the-mountain whence heavy was
ascensus, ad castra contendere coepit Sclavorum. Ferdulfus
the-ascent to the-camp to-strive began of-the-Slavs Ferdulf
vero opprobrium ducens, si non ipse per eadem difficilia
but a-disgrace reckoning if not he-himself through the-same difficult
loca super Sclavos inruerit, eum per aspera quaeque et
places upon the-Slavs should-rush him through rough all and
difficilia inviaque loca secutus est. Quem suus exercitus,
difficult and-pathless places followed has whom his army
turpe ducens ducem non sequi, subsequi et ipse coepit.
shameful reckoning the-duke not to-follow to-follow also itself began
Videntes itaque Sclavi, eos per devexa loca super se
seeing and-so the-Slavs them through sloping places upon themselves
venire, praeparaverunt se viriliter, et magis lapidibus
to-come prepared themselves manfully and more with-stones

ac securibus quam armis contra eos pugnantes, pene
and axes than with-arms against them fighting nearly
omnes deiectos equis perimerunt. Sicque victoriam non
all thrown from-horses killed and-thus victory not
viribus, sed casu adepti sunt. Ibi omnis nobilitas periit
by-strength but by-chance gained have there all the-nobility perished
Foroiulanorum; ibi Ferdulfus dux cecidit; ibi et ille qui
of-the-Friulians there Ferdulf duke fell there also he who
eum provocaverat extinctus est. Tantique ibi viri fortes per
him had-provoked killed was and-so-many there men brave through
contentionis malum et inprovidentiam debellati sunt, quanti
of-contention the-evil and improvidence vanquished were as-many-as
possent per unam concordiam et salubre consilium multa
might through one concord and wholesome counsel many
milia sternere aemulorum. Ibi tamen unus e Langobardis
thousand lay-low of-rivals there yet one of the-Lombards
nomine Munichis, qui pater post Petri Foroiulani et Ursi
by-name Munichis who father afterward of-Peter of-Friuli and of-Ursus
Cenetensis ducum extitit, solus fortiter et viriliter fecit. Is
of-Ceneda dukes was alone bravely and manfully did he
cum de equo eiectus esset, et eum unus e Sclavis subito
when from the-horse thrown he-had-been and him one of the-Slavs suddenly
invadens eius manus fune conligasset, ipse manibus
assailing his hands with-a-rope had-bound he-himself with-hands
ligatis lanceam ab eiusdem Sclavi dextera extrahens, eum
bound the-lance from of-the-same Slav the-right-hand drawing-out him
cum ipsa percussit, et ligatus per aspera se loca deiciens
with it struck and bound through rough himself places throwing
evasit. Haec ideo vel maxime in hac posuimus historia,
escaped these-things therefore even most-of-all in this we-have-put history
ne quid aliquid per contentionis malum simile contingat.
lest anything something through of-contention the-evil like should-happen

De ducatu Corvuli aput Foroiuli, qui a rege excaecatus est

XXV · CORVULUS BLINDED

Corvulus becomes duke of Friuli after Ferdulf. He holds it a short time, and when he offends the king his eyes are torn out and he lives in disgrace.

Mortuo itaque Ferdulfo duce hoc modo, in eius loco
dead and-so Ferdulf duke in-this manner in his place
ordinatus est Corvolus. Qui pauco tempore ducatum tenens,
ordained was Corvulus who for-little time the-duchy holding
dum regem offendisset, evulsis oculis dedecorose vixit.
when the-king he-had-offended torn-out the-eyes disgracefully lived

De Pemmone Foroiulanorum duce, et de nativitate trium filiorum eius

XXVI · PEMMO AND HIS SONS

Pemmo, a capable man, becomes duke. His wife Ratperga, plain of face, urges him to take a wife worthier of a duke, but he says her modesty pleases him more than beauty. She bears him Ratchis, Ratchait, and Aistulf, and he raises with them the sons of the nobles killed under Ferdulf.

Deinceps vero Pemmo ducatum promeruit, qui fuit homo
thereafter but Pemmo the-duchy earned who was a-man
ingeniosus et utilis patriae. Hic patre genitus Billone,
ingenious and useful to-the-fatherland he by-father begotten by-Billo
qui de Belluno fuerat, sed propter seditionem, quam illuc
who from Belluno had-been but on-account-of the-sedition which there
fecerat, in Forumiuli post veniens, ibi pacifice vixit. Hic
he-had-made into Friuli afterward coming there peacefully lived this
Pemmo habuit coniugem Ratpergam nomine; quae cum esset
Pemmo had a-wife Ratperga by-name who since she-was

facie rusticana, saepe maritum deprecata, ut se dimissa aliam
in-face rustic often the-husband entreated that herself put-away another
uxorem duceret, quam tanti ducis coniugem esse deceret.
wife he-should-marry who of-so-great a-duke the-wife to-be might-befit
Sed ipse, ut erat vir sapiens, plus eius mores et humilitatem
but he as he-was a-man wise more her manners and humility
verecundamque pudicitiam quam corporis pulchritudinem
and-modest chastity than of-the-body the-beauty
sibi conplacere, dicebat. De hac igitur coniuge tres Pemmo
to-himself to-please said from this therefore wife three Pemmo
filios, hoc est Ratchis et Ratchait et Ahistulfum, viros
sons that is Ratchis and Ratchait and Aistulf men
strenuos, genuit. Quorum nativitas humilitatem matris ad
vigorous begot whose birth the-humility of-the-mother to
gloriam erexit. Qui dux, congregatis omnium nobilium qui
glory raised which duke gathered of-all the-nobles who
in bello de quo diximus obierant filiis, sic eos cum suis
in the-war about which we-have-said had-died the-sons so them with his
natis pariter nutrivit, acsi et ipsi ab eo geniti fuissent.
children equally nourished as-if also they-themselves by him begotten had-been

De Gisulfo Beneventanorum duce, quomodo Suram et alia castra invasit

XXVII · GISULF OF BENEVENTO RAIDS CAMPANIA

Gisulf of Benevento takes Sora, Arpino, and Arce and, in Pope John's time, ravages Campania and takes many captives. The pope sends priests with gifts, redeems all the captives, and has the duke go home.

Hac denique aetate Gisulfus Beneventanorum ductor Suram
in-this finally age Gisulf of-the-Beneventans leader Sora
Romanorum civitatem, Hirpinum atque Arcim pari modo
of-the-Romans the-city Arpino and Arce in-equal manner
oppida cepit. Qui Gisulfus tempore Iohannis papae cum omni
towns took who Gisulf in-the-time of-John pope with all
sua virtute Campaniam venit, incendia et depraedationes
his force to-Campania came burnings and plunderings
faciens, multos captivorum cepit et usque in locum
making many of-captives took and all-the-way into the-place
qui Horrea dicitur castrametatus est, nullusque ei resistere
which Horrea is-called encamped has and-no-one him to-resist
potuit. Ad hunc pontifex missis sacerdotibus cum apostolicis
could to him the-pontiff sent priests with apostolic
donariis, universos captivos de eorum manibus redimit
gifts all the-captives from their hands redeems
ipsumque ducem cum suo exercitu ad propria repedare fecit.
and-the-very duke with his army to their-own to-return made

De donatione quam Aripert Romanae ecclesiae fecit, et de duobus Anglorum regibus

XXVIII · ARIPERT RESTORES THE COTTIAN ALPS

Aripert restores to the apostolic see the patrimony of the Cottian Alps and sends the donation to Rome written in gold letters. Two Saxon kings come to Rome to the apostles' threshold and soon die there, as they wish.

Hoc tempore Aripertus rex Langobardorum donationem
at-this time Aripert king of-the-Lombards the-donation
patrimonii Alpium Cottiarum, quae quondam ad ius
of-the-patrimony of-the-Alps Cottian which once to the-right
pertinuerat apostolicae sedis, sed a Langobardis multo
had-belonged of-the-apostolic see but by the-Lombards for-much
tempore fuerat ablata, restituit et hanc donationem aureis
time had-been taken-away restored and this donation in-golden
exaratam litteris Romam direxit. His etiam diebus duo
written letters to-Rome directed in-these also days two
reges Saxonum ad vestigia apostolorum Romam venientes,
kings of-the-Saxons to the-footprints of-the-apostles to-Rome coming
sub velocitate, ut obtabant, defuncti sunt.
with speed as they-wished died have

De Benedicto Mediolanensi archiepiscopo

XXIX · BENEDICT OF MILAN

Benedict, archbishop of Milan, pleads at Rome his claim over the church of Pavia and loses, since its bishops have been consecrated by Rome from of old. He is a man of outstanding holiness, renowned throughout Italy.

Tunc quoque venit Benedictus archiepiscopus Mediolanensis
then also came Benedict archbishop of-Milan
Romam et causam egit pro ecclesia Ticinensi; sed victus est,
to-Rome and the-case pleaded for the-church Ticinese but defeated was
eo quod a priscis temporibus Ticinenses episcopi a Romana
for-this that from ancient times the-Ticinese bishops by the-Roman
fuerant ecclesia consecrati. Fuit autem hisdem venerabilis
had-been church consecrated was moreover the-same venerable
Benedictus archiepiscopus vir egregiae sanctitatis, de quo
Benedict archbishop a-man of-outstanding holiness about whom
per universam Italiam bonae opinionis fama flagravit.
through all Italy of-good opinion the-report blazed

De morte Transamundi Spoletini ducis et ducatu filii eius Faroaldi

XXX · FAROALD AND WACHILAP AT SPOLETO

When Transamund, duke of Spoleto, dies, his son Faroald takes his place, and Transamund's brother Wachilap rules the duchy with him.

Igitur defuncto Transamundo duce Spolitanorum, Farualdus,
therefore having-died Transamund duke of-the-Spoletans Faroald
eius filius, in loco patris est subrogatus. Denique
his son in the-place of-the-father was substituted finally
Wachilapus germanus fuit Transamundi et cum fratre
Wachilap brother was of-Transamund and with the-brother
pariter eundem rexit ducatum.
together the-same ruled duchy

De Iustiniano imperatore, quomodo iterum regnum invasit et suos rebelles occidit

XXXI · JUSTINIAN REGAINS THE EMPIRE

Justinian regains his throne with the help of Tervel, king of the Bulgars, has Leo and Tiberius slaughtered in the circus, blinds the patriarch Gallicinus, and makes Cyrus, who fed him in exile, bishop in his place. He receives Pope Constantine with honor and renews his church's privileges, but will not heed the pope's plea not to send an army against Philippicus.

At vero Iustinianus, qui amisso principatu in Ponto exulabat,
but indeed Justinian who lost the-princedom in Pontus was-in-exile
auxilio Terebelli Bulgarum regis regnum rursus recipiens,
with-the-help of-Tervel of-the-Bulgars king the-kingdom again recovering

eos qui se expulerant patricios occidit. Leonem quoque et
those who him had-expelled patricians killed Leo also and
Tiberium, qui locum eius usurpaverant, cepit et in medio
Tiberius who place his had-usurped he-took and in the-middle
circo coram omni populo iugulari fecit. Gallicinum
of-the-circus before all the-people to-be-slaughtered made Gallicinus
vero patriarcham Constantinopolitanum erutis oculis Romam
but patriarch of-Constantinople torn-out the-eyes to-Rome
misit Cyrumque abbatem, qui eum in Ponto exulem aluerat,
sent and-Cyrus abbot who him in Pontus an-exile had-fed
episcopum in loco Gallicini constituit. Hic Constantinum
bishop in the-place of-Gallicinus appointed he Constantine
papam ad se venire iubens, honorifice suscepit ac remisit;
pope to himself to-come bidding honorably received and sent-back
quem prostratus in terra pro suis peccatis intercedere rogans,
whom prostrate on the-ground for his sins to-intercede asking
cuncta eius ecclesiae privilegia renovavit. Qui cum exercitum
all of-his church the-privileges renewed who when an-army
in Ponto mitteret ad conprehendendum Filippicum, quem
into Pontus he-was-sending for seizing Philippicus whom
ibi religaverat, multum eum hisdem venerabilis papa prohibuit,
there he-had-banished much him the-same venerable pope forbade
ne hoc facere deberet; sed tamen inhibere non potuit.
lest this to-do he-should but yet to-restrain not could

Quomodo Philippicus Iustinianum peremit et augustales decus invasit

XXXII · PHILIPPICUS KILLS JUSTINIAN

The army sent against Philippicus goes over to him, and he kills Justinian twelve miles from Constantinople and takes his throne. Leo had cut off Justinian's nose, and once restored Justinian had an enemy slaughtered nearly every time he wiped the dripping rheum.

Exercitus quoque, qui missus contra Filippicum fuerat, ad
the-army also which sent against Philippicus had-been to
partem se Filippici contulit eumque imperatorem fecit. Qui
the-side itself of-Philippicus brought and-him emperor made who
Constantinopolim contra Iustinianum veniens, cum eo ab Urbe
to-Constantinople against Justinian coming with him from the-City
miliario duodecimo pugnavit, vicit et occidit regnumque
at-the-milestone twelfth fought conquered and killed and-kingdom
eius adeptus est. Imperavit autem Iustinianus cum filio Tiberio
his gained has reigned moreover Justinian with son Tiberius
in hac secunda vice annos sex. Quem Leo in expulsione illius
in this second turn years six whom Leo in the-expulsion of-him
naribus detruncavit; qui post iterum adsumpto imperio,
in-the-nostrils mutilated who after again assumed the-empire
quotiens defluentem gutta reumatis manum detersit, pene totiens
as-often-as the-flowing drop of-rheum with-hand he-wiped nearly so-often
aliquem ex his qui contra eum fuerant iugulari praecepit.
someone of those who against him had-been to-be-slaughtered ordered

De obitu Petri patriarchae et sacerdotio Sereni

XXXIII · SERENUS PATRIARCH

When the patriarch Peter dies, Serenus takes up the rule of the church of Aquileia, a simple man devoted to the service of Christ.

Mortuo denique his diebus patriarcha Petro, regimen
dead finally in-these days patriarch Peter the-rule
Aquileiensis ecclesiae suscepit Serenus, qui fuit vir
of-the-Aquileian church took-up Serenus who was a-man
simplicitate praeditus et ad Christi servitium pronus.
with-simplicity endowed and to of-Christ the-service inclined

Quomodo Philippicum Anastasius superavit

XXXIV · PHILIPPICUS AND ANASTASIUS

Philippicus sends Cyrus back to his monastery and Pope Constantine letters of false doctrine, which the pope rejects, painting the six councils in Saint Peter's portico; the Romans refuse the heretic's name, charters, and coin. After a year and a half Anastasius deposes and blinds him, and writes to the pope as a supporter of the sixth council.

At vero Filippicus, qui et Bardanis dictus est, postquam
but indeed Philippicus who also Bardanes called is after
in imperiali dignitate confirmatus est, Cyrum, de
in imperial dignity confirmed he-was Cyrus about
quo dixeramus, de pontificatu eiecto, ad gubernandum
whom we-had-spoken from the-pontificate thrown-out for governing
monasterium suum Pontum redire praecepit. Hic Filippicus
monastery his to-Pontus to-return ordered this Philippicus
Constantino papae litteras pravi docmatis direxit, quas ille
to-Constantine pope a-letter of-depraved doctrine directed which he

cum apostolicae sedis concilio respuit; et huius rei causa
with of-the-apostolic see the-council rejected and of-this matter for-the-sake
fecit picturas in porticu sancti Petri, quae gesta sex sanctarum
made pictures in the-portico of-holy Peter which the-acts of-six holy
sinodorum universalium retinent. Nam et huiusmodi picturas,
synods universal hold for also of-this-kind pictures
cum haberentur in urbe regia, Filippicus iusserat auferri.
when they-were-kept in the-city royal Philippicus had-ordered to-be-removed
Statuit populus Romanus, ne heretici imperatoris nomen
decreed the-people Roman that-not of-the-heretic emperor the-name
aut chartas aut figuram solidi susciperent. Unde nec
or charters or the-figure of-the-solidus they-should-accept whence neither
eius effigies in ecclesia introducta est, nec nomen ad
his image into the-church brought was nor name at
missarum sollempnia prolatum. Hic cum annum unum et
of-masses the-solemnities uttered he when year one and
sex mensibus regnum gessisset, contra eum Anastasius, qui
six months the-kingdom he-had-held against him Anastasius who
et Artemius dictus est, insurgens, eum regno expulit
also Artemius called is rising-up him from-the-kingdom expelled
oculisque privavit, nec tamen occidit. Hic Anastasius litteras
and-of-the-eyes deprived nor yet killed this Anastasius a-letter
Constantino papae Romam per Scolasticum patricium et
to-Constantine pope to-Rome through Scholasticus patrician and
exarcum Italiae direxit, quibus se fautorem catholicae fidei
exarch of-Italy directed in-which himself a-supporter of-the-catholic faith
et sancti sexti concilii praedicatorem esse declaravit.
and of-the-holy sixth council a-proclaimer to-be declared

Quomodo Ansprand, auxiliante sibi Teudeperto cum Baioariis, Aripertum superavit, et de morte Ariperti in flumine, et de fuga germani eius Gumperti et regno Ansprandi et Liutprandi, filii eius

XXXV · ARIPERT DROWNS; ANSPRAND AND LIUTPRAND

Ansprand comes with a Bavarian army after nine years, and though the Bavarians give way, Aripert withdraws into Pavia and so gives his men despair. Fleeing to Francia, he drowns in the Ticino weighed down with gold. Ansprand, a man of rare wisdom, reigns only three months, and he rejoices to hear, while still living, that the Lombards make his son Liutprand king.

Igitur postquam Ansprand aput Baioariam iam novem
therefore after Ansprand in Bavaria already nine
expletis annis exulasset, promoto tandem Teutperto decimo
completed years had-been-in-exile moved at-last Theudebert in-the-tenth
anno Baioariorum ductor, exercitu venit Italiam pugnavitque
year of-the-Bavarians leader with-an-army came to-Italy and-fought
cum Ariperto, et facta est ex utraque parte multa strages
with Aripert and made was on each side much slaughter
populorum. Sed quamvis ad extremum nox proelium dirimisset,
of-peoples but although at the-last night the-battle had-broken-off
certum tamen est, Baioarios terga praebuisse et Ariperti
certain yet it-is the-Bavarians backs to-have-shown and of-Aripert
exercitum victorem ad castra remeasse. Sed dum Aripert
the-army victorious to the-camp to-have-returned but when Aripert
in castris manere noluisset, sed potius Ticinum civitatem
in the-camp to-remain had-refused but rather Pavia the-city
introisset, et suis hoc facto desperationem et adversariis
had-entered both to-his-men by-this deed despair and to-the-adversaries
audaciam praebuit. Qui postquam in civitatem regressus est, et
daring he-furnished who after into the-city returned has and

sensisset, quia pro hoc facto suum exercitum offensum haberet,
had-perceived that for this deed his army offended he-had
mox accepto consilio ut in Francia fugeret, quantum sibi
soon received counsel that into Francia he-should-flee as-much-as to-himself
utile duxit e palatio aurum sustulit. Qui dum fluvium
useful he-reckoned from the-palace gold took-up who while the-river
Ticinum gravatus auro transnatare voluisset, ibique corruens,
Ticino weighed-down with-gold to-swim-across wished and-there sinking
suffocatus aquis extinctus est. Cuius in crastinum diem
choked by-the-waters killed was whose on the-next day
corpus inventum, in palatio ordinatum ac deinde ad basilicam
the-body found in the-palace laid-out and then to the-basilica
domini Salvatoris, quam antiquus Aripert construxerat,
of-the-Lord Savior which the-ancient Aripert had-built
prolatum ibique sepultum est. Hic in diebus quibus regnum
carried-forth and-there buried was he in the-days in-which the-kingdom
tenuit noctu egrediens et hac illacque pergens, quid de eo
he-held by-night going-out and this-way and-that going what about him
a singulis civitatibus diceretur, per semet ipsum explorabat,
from individual cities was-said by himself very he-explored
ac diligenter, qualem iustitiam singuli iudices populo suo
and carefully what-sort justice the-individual judges to-people their
facerent, investigabat. Hic, advenientibus ad se exterarum
did he-investigated he arriving to him of-foreign
gentium legatis, vilibus coram eis vestibus sive pelliciis
nations envoys cheap before them garments or furs
utebatur; utque minus Italiae insidiarentur, numquam
used and-that less Italy they-might-plot-against never
eis pretiosa vina vel ceterarum rerum delicias ministrabat.
to-them precious wines or of-other things the-delicacies he-served
Regnavit autem cum patre Ragimperto sive solus usque
he-reigned moreover with father Raginpert or alone all-the-way

ad annum duodecimum. Fuit quoque vir pius, elymosinis
to the-year twelfth he-was also a-man pious to-almsgiving
deditus ac iustitiae amator; in cuius temporibus terrae
devoted and of-justice a-lover in whose times of-the-earth
ubertas nimia, sed tempora fuere barbarica. Huius germanus
the-fertility excessive but the-times were barbaric his brother
Gumpertus eo tempore in Franciam fugiens, ibidem usque
Gumpert at-that time into Francia fleeing there all-the-way
ad diem suae mortis permansit. Huic fuerunt filii tres, quorum
to the-day of-his death remained to-him were sons three of-whom
qui maior natu extitit Ragimpertus nomine nostris in
he-who greater by-birth was Raginpert by-name our in
diebus Aurelianensem civitatem rexit. Post cuius Ariperti funus
days the-Orléans city ruled after whose of-Aripert funeral
Ansprand Langobardorum regnum potitus, tres solummodo
Ansprand of-the-Lombards the-kingdom having-gained three only
menses regnavit; vir per omnia egregius et cuius sapientiae
months reigned a-man in all-things outstanding and whose to-wisdom
rari aequandi sunt. Cernentes Langobardi huius interitum,
few to-be-equaled are seeing the-Lombards his death
Liutprandum, eius filium, in regali constituunt solio; quod
Liutprand his son on the-royal establish throne which
Ansprand dum adhuc viveret audiens, valde laetatus est.
Ansprand while still he-lived hearing greatly rejoiced has

Quomodo Theodosius Anastasium superavit et regnum invasit, et de inundatione Tiberis

XXXVI · THEODOSIUS EMPEROR, AND THE TIBER FLOODS

Anastasius' fleet turns back to Constantinople and makes the orthodox Theodosius emperor, who defeats Anastasius, has him ordained a presbyter, and restores the image of the six councils. The Tiber floods so that the water stands a man and a half high in the Via Lata.

Hoc tempore Anastasius imperator classem in Alexandria
at-this time Anastasius emperor a-fleet to Alexandria
contra Sarracenos direxit. Cuius exercitus ad alium versus
against the-Saracens directed whose army to another turned
consilium, ab itinere medio Constantinopolitanam urbem
counsel from the-journey middle to-the-Constantinopolitan city
regressus, Theodosium orthodoxum inquirens, imperatorem
having-returned Theodosius orthodox seeking-out emperor
elegit atque coactum in solio imperii confirmavit. Qui
chose and compelled on the-throne of-the-empire confirmed who
Theodosius aput Niceam civitatem Anastasium gravi proelio
Theodosius at Nicaea city Anastasius in-heavy battle
vicit. Datoque sibi sacramento, eum clericum fieri ac
conquered and-given to-himself an-oath him a-cleric to-become and
presbiterum fecit ordinari. Ipse vero ut regnum accepit,
a-presbyter caused to-be-ordained he-himself indeed as the-kingdom he-received
mox in regia urbe imaginem illam venerandam, in qua
soon in the-royal city image that venerable in which
sanctae sinodus erant depictae et a Filippico fuerat deiecta,
the-holy synods were painted and by Philippicus had-been cast-down
pristino in loco erexit. His diebus ita Tiberis fluvius
former in the-place erected in-these days so the-Tiber river

inundavit, ut alveum suum egressus multa Romanae fecerit
flooded that bed its having-gone-out many on-the-Roman wrought
exitia civitati, ita ut in Via latam ad unam et semis
destructions city so that in the-Via Lata to one and a-half
staturam excresceret atque a porta sancti Petri usque ad
man's-height it-grew and from the-gate of-holy Peter all-the-way to
pontem Molvium aquae se descendentes coniungerent.
the-bridge Milvian the-waters themselves descending joined

De gente Anglorum et rege Francorum Pipino et bellis eius, et quia ei Carolus, suus filius, successit

XXXVII · ENGLISH PILGRIMS, AND PIPPIN

Many English, noble and humble, come from Britain to Rome. Among the Franks Pippin holds power, a man of wondrous daring who crosses the Rhine with a single attendant to kill an adversary in his chamber, and fights the Saxons and the Frisian king Radbod. His son Charles succeeds him.

His temporibus multi Anglorum gentis nobiles et
in-these times many of-the-English nation nobles and
ignobiles, viri et feminae, duces et privati, divini
commoners men and women dukes and private-persons of-divine
amoris instinctu de Brittaniam Romam venire consuerunt.
love at-the-prompting from Britain to-Rome to-come were-wont
Aput regnum Francorum tunc temporis Pipinus optinebat
in the-kingdom of-the-Franks then of-time Pippin held
principatum. Fuit autem vir mirae audaciae, qui hostes
the-princedom he-was moreover a-man of-wondrous daring who enemies
suos statim adgrediendo conterebat. Nam supra quendam
his at-once by-attacking crushed for over a-certain
suum adversarium, Rhenum transgressus, cum uno tantum
his adversary the-Rhine having-crossed with one only

satellite suo inruit eumque in suo cubiculo residente cum
attendant his he-rushed and-him in his bedchamber sitting with
suis trucidavit. Bella quoque multa cum Saxonibus, et
his-men slaughtered wars also many with the-Saxons and
maxime cum Ratpoto Frisionum rege fortiter gessit. Hic
especially with Radbod of-the-Frisians king bravely waged he
et alios filios habuit; sed ex his praecipuus Carolus extitit,
also other sons had but of these the-foremost Charles proved
qui ei post in principatu successit.
who him afterward in the-princedom succeeded

Quomodo Liutprand rex Rotharit suum rebellem occidit, et de audatia eiusdem regis

XXXVIII · LIUTPRAND AND ROTHARI'S PLOT

His kinsman Rothari plans to kill Liutprand at a banquet, is found wearing a breastplate, wounds the guard Subo, and is killed; his four sons are killed where they are found. Liutprand is so bold that when two armor-bearers plot to kill him he goes alone with them into a forest, draws his sword, and dares them, and when they confess he pardons them.

At vero Liutprand rex cum in regno confirmatus esset,
but indeed Liutprand king when in the-kingdom confirmed he-was
eum Rothari, eius consanguineus, perimere voluit. His enim
him Rothari his kinsman to-kill wished he for
convivium ei in domo sua aput Ticinum praeparavit, in qua
a-banquet for-him in house his at Pavia prepared in which
domo viros fortissimos, qui regem convivantem extinguerent,
house men most-brave who the-king feasting should-kill
armatos abscondit. Quod cum Liutprandum nuntiatum fuisset,
armed he-hid which when to-Liutprand announced had-been

eum ad palatium suum evocari praecepit. Quem, sicut ei
him to palace his to-be-summoned he-ordered whom as to-him
dictum fuerat, loricam sub veste indutum, eum ipse
said it-had-been in-a-breastplate under the-garment clad him he-himself
manu pertractans, repperit. Qui Rothari cum se detectum
with-hand handling found who Rothari when himself discovered
cognovisset, statim post se exiliens spatham evaginavit, ut
he-knew at-once behind himself leaping-out the-sword drew that
regem percuteret. Econtra rex suum ensem vagina
the-king he-might-strike on-the-other-hand the-king his sword from-the-sheath
exemit. Tunc unus e regiis satellitibus nomine Subo Rothari
drew then one of the-royal guards by-name Subo Rothari
a tergo conprehendens, ab eo in fronte vulneratus
from behind seizing by him on the-forehead wounded
est. Super quem Rothari et alii insilientes, eum ibidem
was upon whom Rothari and others leaping him there
occiderunt. Quattuor vero eius filii, qui non aderant, ubi
killed four but his sons who not were-present where
inventi, ibi et perempti sunt. Fuit autem rex Liutprand vir
found there also killed were was moreover king Liutprand a-man
multae audaciae, ita ut, cum eum duo armigeri eius occidere
of-much daring so that when him two armor-bearers his to-kill
cogitarent, et hoc ei perlatum fuisset, in profundissimam
were-planning and this to-him reported had-been into a-most-deep
silvam cum eis solus ingressus, mox evaginatum gladium
forest with them alone having-entered soon drawn the-sword
contra eos tenens, eisdem, quia eum occidere cogitaverunt,
against them holding to-them that him to-kill they-had-planned
inproperavit; quod ut facere deberent, hortatus est. Qui
reproached which that to-do they-ought exhorted has who
statim eius pedibus provoluti, ei sunt quae machinaverant
at-once at-his feet rolled-forward to-him have what they-had-contrived

cuncta professi. Et de aliis quoque hoc similiter fecit; sed
all confessed and about others also this likewise he-did but
tamen confessis mox tantae malitiae culpam pepercit.
yet to-the-confessing soon of-such-great malice the-fault spared

De morte Gisulfi ducis Beneventanis et ducatu filii eius Romualdi

XXXIX · ROMUALD DUKE OF BENEVENTO

When Gisulf, duke of Benevento, dies, his son Romuald takes up the rule of the Samnites.

Defuncto itaque Gisulfo Beneventano duce, Samnitum
having-died and-so Gisulf Beneventan duke of-the-Samnites
populum Romuald, eius filius, regendum suscepit.
the-people Romuald his son to-be-ruled took-up

Quomodo beatus Petronax monasterium sancti patris Benedicti aput Cassinum reparavit, et de monasterio sancti Vincentii

XL · PETRONAX RESTORES MONTE CASSINO

Petronax of Brescia, urged by Pope Gregory, settles at Cassino by Benedict's body and, about a hundred and ten years after it was deserted, restores the monastery, and Pope Zacharias gives him books and Benedict's own Rule. Three brothers build the monastery of Saint Vincent at the Volturno. The Lombards take Cumae, the duke of Naples retakes it by night, and the pope pays the seventy pounds of gold he promised for it.

Circa haec tempora Petronax, civis Brexianae urbis, divino
around these times Petronax citizen of-the-Brescian city by-divine
amore conpunctus, Romam venit hortatuque tunc Gregorii
love pricked to-Rome came and-at-the-urging then of-Gregory
apostolicae sedis papae hunc Cassinum castrum petiit,
of-the-apostolic see pope this Cassino fort sought
atque ad sacrum corpus beati Benedicti patris perveniens,
and to the-sacred body of-blessed Benedict father arriving
ibi cum aliquibus simplicibus viris iam ante residentibus
there with some simple men already before residing
habitare coepit. Qui eundem venerabilem virum Petronacem
to-dwell began who the-same venerable man Petronax
sibi seniorem statuerunt. Hic non post multum tempus,
for-themselves as-senior set-up he not after much time
cooperante divina misericordia et suffragantibus meritis
co-operating the-divine mercy and supporting the-merits
beati Benedicti patris, iamque evolutis fere centum et
of-blessed Benedict father and-now elapsed about a-hundred and
decem annis, ex quo locus ille habitatione hominum
ten years from when the-place that of-the-habitation of-men

destitutus erat, multorum ibi monachorum, nobilium et
destitute had-been of-many there monks noble and
mediocrium, ad se concurrentium pater effectus, sub sanctae
middling to him running-together father made under of-the-holy
regulae iugum et beati Benedicti institutione, reparatis
rule the-yoke and of-blessed Benedict the-institution restored
habitaculis, vivere coepit atque hoc sanctum coenobium in
the-dwellings to-live began and this holy monastery into
statum quo nunc cernitur erexit. Huic venerabili viro
the-state in-which now it-is-seen raised to-this venerable man
Petronaci in sequenti tempore sacerdotum praecipuus et Deo
Petronax in following time of-the-priests the-foremost and to-God
dilectus pontifex Zacharias plura adiutoria contulit, libros
beloved pontiff Zacharias many aids bestowed books
scilicet sanctae scripturae et alia quaeque quae ad utilitatem
namely of-holy scripture and other whatever which to the-benefit
monasterii pertinent; insuper et regulam, quam beatus pater
of-the-monastery belong moreover also the-rule which blessed father
Benedictus suis sanctis manibus conscripsit, paterna pietate
Benedict with-his holy hands wrote with-fatherly piety
concessit. Monasterium vero beati Vincentii martyris, quod
granted the-monastery but of-blessed Vincent martyr which
iuxta Vulturni fluminis fontem situm est, et nunc magna
beside of-the-Volturno river the-source situated is and now with-a-great
congregatione refulget, a tribus nobilibus fratribus, hoc est
congregation shines-forth by three noble brothers that is
[Tato, Taso et Paldo], iam tunc aedificatum, sicut viri
Tato Taso and Paldo already then built as of-the-man
eruditissimi Autperti eiusdem monasterii abbatis in volumine,
most-learned Autpert of-the-same monastery abbot in the-volume
quod de hac re conposuit, scripta significant. Superstite
which about this matter he-composed the-writings indicate surviving

sane adhuc beato papa Gregorio Romanae sedis, Cumanum
truly still blessed pope Gregory of-the-Roman see the-Cumae
castrum a Langobardis Beneventanis pervasum est; sed a
fort by the-Lombards Beneventan overrun was but by
duce Neapolitano noctu superveniente quidam ex Langobardis
the-duke of-Naples by-night coming-upon some of the-Lombards
capti, quidam perempti sunt. Castrum quoque ipsum a
captured some killed were the-fort also itself by
Romanis est receptum. Pro cuius castri redemptionem pontifex
the-Romans was retaken for of-which fort the-redemption the-pontiff
septuaginta libras auri, sicut primitus promiserat, dedit.
seventy pounds of-gold as at-first he-had-promised gave

Quomodo, defuncto imperatore Theodosio, Leo ei successit in regno

XLI · LEO EMPEROR

Meanwhile the emperor Theodosius, who has ruled only one year, dies, and Leo is made emperor in his place.

Inter haec defuncto imperatore Theodosio, qui uno
among these-things having-died emperor Theodosius who one
solummodo imperium rexerat anno, eius in loco Leo
only the-empire had-ruled year his in place Leo
augustus subrogatur.
augustus is-substituted

Quomodo Carolus Francorum princeps Raginfridum superavit

XLII · CHARLES DEFEATS RAGAMFRED

Among the Franks, Pippin's son Charles takes the princedom from Ragamfred through many wars, defeats him at last at Vinchy, gives him Angers to live in, and governs all the Franks.

Aput Francorum quoque gentem Pipino vita exempto,
among of-the-Franks also the-nation Pippin from-life removed
eius filius Carolus, de quo praemiseramus, licet per
his son Charles about whom we-had-spoken-before though through
multa bella et certamina, de manu Raginfridi principatum
many wars and contests from the-hand of-Ragamfred the-princedom
sustulit. Nam cum in custodia teneretur, divino nutu ereptus
took-up for when in custody he-was-held by-divine nod snatched
aufugit, ac primum contra Raginfridum cum paucis bis
he-fled and first against Ragamfred with few twice
terque certamen iniit novissimeque eum aput Vinciacum
and-thrice battle entered and-last him at Vinchy
magno certamine superavit. Cui tamen unam, hoc est
in-great battle overcame to-whom yet one that is
Andegavensem, civitatem ad habitandum concessit; cunctamque
the-Angers city for dwelling he-granted and-all
vero Francorum gentem ipse gubernandam suscepit.
indeed of-the-Franks the-nation he-himself to-be-governed took-up

Quomodo Liutprand rex donationem Romanae ecclesiae confirmavit, et quomodo filiam Theutperti in coniugium accepit

XLIII · LIUTPRAND CONFIRMS THE DONATION AND MARRIES

Liutprand confirms the donation of the Cottian Alps to the Roman church, and marries Guntrud, daughter of Theudebert of the Bavarians, with whom he was in exile; she bears him only one daughter.

Eo tempore Liutprand rex donationem patrimonii Alpium
at-that time Liutprand king the-donation of-the-patrimony of-the-Alps
Cottiarum Romanae ecclesiae confirmavit. Nec multum post
Cottian to-the-Roman church confirmed nor much after
idem regnator Guntrut, filiam Teutperti Baioariorum ducis,
the-same ruler Guntrud daughter of-Theudebert of-the-Bavarians duke
aput quem exularat, in matrimonium duxit; de qua
with whom he-had-been-in-exile in marriage took of whom
unam solummodo filiam genuit.
one only daughter he-begot

Quomodo Faroald dux Classem invasit, et quia Theudo Baioariorum dux ad apostolorum limina Romam venit

XLIV · FAROALD TAKES CLASSE; THEUDO AT ROME

Faroald of Spoleto seizes Classe, but it is returned to the Romans by Liutprand's order, and Faroald's son Transamund rises against him, makes him a cleric, and takes his place. Theudo, duke of the Bavarians, comes to Rome to pray at the apostles' tombs.

Per haec tempora Faroaldus Spolitanorum ductor Classem
through these times Faroald of-the-Spoletans leader Classe
civitatem Ravennantium invasit; sed iussu regis Liutprandi
the-city of-the-Ravennates invaded but by-order of-king Liutprand
hisdem Romanis reddita est. Contra hunc Faroaldum ducem
to-the-same Romans returned was against this Faroald duke
filius suus Transamundus insurrexit, eumque clericum faciens,
son his Transamund rose-up and-him a-cleric making
locum eius invasit. His diebus Teudo Baioariorum dux
place his invaded in-these days Theudo of-the-Bavarians duke
gentis orationis gratiam Romam ad beatorum apostolorum
of-the-nation of-prayer for-the-sake to-Rome to of-the-blessed apostles
vestigia venit.
the-footprints came

Quod, defuncto Sereno patriarcha, Calixtus regimen ecclesiae suscepit, et de bello Pemmonis adversum Sclavos

XLV · CALLISTUS PATRIARCH; PEMMO DEFEATS THE SLAVS

Callistus becomes patriarch of Aquileia with Liutprand's support. Pemmo, with the young men he has raised, slaughters a huge army of Slavs at Lauriana, losing only old Sicuald, who has twice avenged his sons and goes out a third time to die content. Pemmo then makes peace with the Slavs there, and from then on they dread the arms of Friuli.

Aput Foroiuli igitur sublato e rebus humanis patriarcha
at Friuli therefore removed from affairs human patriarch
Sereno, Calistus, vir egregius, qui erat Tarvisianae ecclesiae
Serenus Callistus a-man outstanding who was of-the-Trevisan church
archidiaconus, adnitente Liutprando principe, Aquileiensem
archdeacon supporting Liutprand prince the-Aquileian
ecclesiam regendam suscepit. Quo, ut diximus, in tempore
church to-be-ruled took-up which as we-have-said in time
Pemmo Foroiulanis praeerat Langobardis. Is cum iam nobilium,
Pemmo the-Friulian ruled Lombards he when already of-the-nobles
quos cum suis natis nutrierat, filios eos iam ad iuvenilem
whom with his children he-had-nourished the-sons them already to youthful
perduxisset aetatem, repente ei nuntius venit, inmensam
had-brought age suddenly to-him a-messenger came immense
Sclavorum multitudinem in locum qui Lauriana dicitur
of-the-Slavs a-multitude into the-place which Lauriana is-called
adventasse. Cum quibus ille iuvenibus super eosdem Sclavos
to-have-arrived with which he young-men upon the-same Slavs
tercio inruens, magna eos clade prostravit; nec amplius ibi
a-third-time rushing with-great them disaster laid-low nor more there

aliquis a parte Langobardorum cecidit quam Sicualdus, qui
anyone from the-side of-the-Lombards fell than Sicuald who
erat iam aetate grandaevus. Iste namque in superiori pugna,
was already in-age very-old he for in the-earlier fight
quae sub Ferdulfo facta est, duos filios amiserat. Qui cum
which under Ferdulf made was two sons had-lost who when
prima et secunda vice iuxta voluntatem suam se de
on-the-first and second turn according-to will his himself on
Sclavis ultus esset, tercia vice, prohibente duce et aliis
the-Slavs avenged had on-the-third turn forbidding the-duke and other
Langobardis, non potuit inhiberi, sed ita eis respondit:
Lombards not he-could to-be-restrained but thus to-them answered
'Iam satis', inquit, 'meorum filiorum mortem vindicavi, et iam,
now enough he-says of-my sons the-death I-have-avenged and now
si advenerit, laetus suscipiam mortem'. Factumque est, et
if it-shall-have-come glad I-shall-receive death and-done it-was and
ipse solus in eadem pugna peremptus est. Pemmo vero cum
he-himself alone in the-same fight killed was Pemmo but when
multos inimicorum prostravisset, metuens ne aliquem suorum
many of-the-enemies he-had-laid-low fearing lest anyone of-his-men
amplius in bello perderet, cum eisdem Sclavis in eodem loco
more in war he-should-lose with the-same Slavs in the-same place
pacis concordiam iniit; atque ex illo iam tempore magis
of-peace the-concord entered and from that now time more
ac magis coeperunt Sclavi Foroiulanorum arma formidare.
and more began the-Slavs of-the-Friulians the-arms to-dread

De adventu Sarracenorum in Hispaniam, et quomodo eos Carolus et Eudo in Gallia superarunt

XLVI · THE SARACENS IN SPAIN AND AQUITAINE

The Saracens cross from Africa and take all Spain, and ten years later come with their families into Aquitaine as if to settle. Charles joins Eudo of Aquitaine, though at odds with him, and the Franks kill three hundred and seventy-five thousand Saracens and lose fifteen hundred, while Eudo storms their camp.

Eo tempore gens Sarracenorum in loco qui Septem
at-that time the-nation of-the-Saracens in the-place which Septem
dicitur ex Africa transfretantes, universam Spaniam invaserunt.
is-called from Africa crossing-over all Spain invaded
Deinde post decem annos cum uxoribus et parvulis venientes,
then after ten years with wives and little-ones coming
Aquitaniam Galliae provinciam quasi habitaturi ingressi
Aquitaine of-Gaul the-province as-if about-to-dwell entered
sunt. Carolus siquidem cum Eudone Aquitaniae principe
have Charles for with Eudo of-Aquitaine prince
tunc discordiam habebat. Qui tamen in unum se
then discord had who yet into one themselves
coniungentes, contra eosdem Sarracenos pari consilio
joining against the-same Saracens with-equal counsel
dimicarunt. Nam inruentes Franci super eos, trecenta
fought for rushing the-Franks upon them three-hundred
septuaginta quinque milia Sarracenorum interimerunt; ex
seventy five thousand of-the-Saracens killed from
Francorum vero parte mille et quingenti tantum ibi
of-the-Franks but the-side thousand and five-hundred only there

ceciderunt. Eudo quoque cum suis super eorum castra
fell Eudo also with his-men upon their camp
inruens, pari modo multos interficiens, omnia devastavit.
rushing in-equal manner many killing all-things devastated

Quomodo Sarraceni Constantinopolim obsiderunt et a Bulgaribus devicti sunt

XLVII · THE SARACENS BEFORE CONSTANTINOPLE

The Saracens besiege Constantinople for three years until many die of hunger, cold, war, and plague, and they withdraw. Beaten by the Bulgars and caught by a storm at sea, they lose many more, and in Constantinople three hundred thousand die of plague.

Hoc etiam tempore eadem Sarracenorum gens cum inmenso
at-this also time the-same of-the-Saracens nation with immense
exercitu veniens, Constantinopolim circumdedit ac continuo
army coming Constantinople surrounded and continuously
per triennium obsedit, donec, civibus multa instantia ad
for three-years besieged until the-citizens with-much urgency to
Deum clamantibus, plurimi eorum fame et frigore, bello
God crying-out very-many of-them by-hunger and cold by-war
pestilentiaque perirent, ac sic pertaesi obsidionis abscederent.
and-pestilence perished and thus weary of-the-siege withdrew
Qui inde egressi, Vulgarum gentem, quae est super
who thence having-gone-out of-the-Bulgars the-nation which is above
Danubium, bello adgrediuntur; et ab hac quoque victi, ad
the-Danube in-war attack and by this also conquered to
suas naves refugiunt. Quibus, cum altum peterent, inruente
their ships flee-back to-whom when the-deep they-sought rushing-in
subita tempestate, plurimi etiam mersi sive contritis navibus
a-sudden storm very-many also sunk or with-shattered ships

perierunt. [Intra] Constantinopolim vero trecenta milia
perished within Constantinople but three-hundred thousand
hominum pestilentia interierunt.
of-men by-pestilence perished

Quomodo Liutprand rex corpus beati Augustini Ticinum advexit; quo etiam tempore Leo imperator igonas deiecit

XLVIII · AUGUSTINE'S BONES BROUGHT TO PAVIA

Hearing that the Saracens are defiling the place in Sardinia where Saint Augustine's bones were laid, Liutprand buys them at a great price and lays them at Pavia with due honor. The Lombards take Narni.

Liutprand quoque audiens, quod Sarraceni, depopulata
Liutprand also hearing that the-Saracens depopulated
Sardinia, etiam loca illa, ubi ossa sancti Augustini episcopi
Sardinia even places those where the-bones of-holy Augustine bishop
propter vastationem barbarorum olim translata et honorifice
on-account-of the-devastation of-the-barbarians once translated and honorably
fuerant condita, foedarent, misit, et dato magno pretio,
had-been laid were-defiling sent and given a-great price
accepit et transtulit ea in urbem Ticinensem ibique cum
received and transferred them into the-city Ticinese and-there with
debito tanto patri honore recondidit. His diebus Narnia
due to-so-great a-father honor laid-again in-these days Narni
civitas a Langobardis pervasa est.
the-city by the-Lombards overrun was

Quas civitates Romanorum Liutprand rex invasit, et [de] deterioribus factis Leonis augusti

XLIX · LIUTPRAND'S CONQUESTS, AND LEO'S ICONOCLASM

Liutprand besieges Ravenna and destroys Classe, and the Lombards of Spoleto and Tuscany defend the pope against the patrician Paul's assassins. Leo burns the images at Constantinople and orders the pope to do likewise, but he refuses, and the armies of Ravenna and Venetia would set up another emperor had he not forbidden it. Liutprand takes Bologna, the Pentapolis, and Osimo, and the patriarch Germanus is deposed.

Eoque tempore rex Liutprandus Ravennam obsedit, Classem
and-at-that time king Liutprand Ravenna besieged Classe
invasit atque destruxit. Tunc Paulus patricius ex Ravenna
invaded and destroyed then Paul patrician from Ravenna
misit qui pontificem interemerent; sed Langobardis pro
sent who the-pontiff should-kill but the-Lombards for
defensione pontificis repugnantibus, Spoletinis in Salario
the-defense of-the-pontiff fighting-back the-Spoletans at the-Salarian
ponte et ex aliis partibus Langobardis Tuscis resistentibus,
bridge and from other parts the-Lombards Tuscan resisting
consilium Ravennantium dissipatum est. Hac tempestate Leo
the-counsel of-the-Ravennates scattered was at-this time Leo
imperator aput Constantinopolim sanctorum imagines depositas
emperor at Constantinople of-the-saints the-images taken-down
incendit Romanoque pontifici similia facere, si imperialem
burned and-to-the-Roman pontiff like-things to-do if the-imperial
gratiam habere vellet, mandavit. Sed pontifex hoc facere
favor to-have he-wished sent-word but the-pontiff this to-do
contempsit. Omnis quoque Ravennae exercitus vel Venetiarum
scorned all also of-Ravenna the-army and of-the-Venetias
talibus iussis uno animo restiterunt, et nisi eos pontifex
such orders with-one mind resisted and unless them the-pontiff

prohibuisset, imperatorem super se constituere sunt
had-prevented an-emperor over themselves to-set-up have
adgressi. Rex quoque Liutprand castra Emiliae, Feronianum
undertaken the-king also Liutprand the-forts of-Emilia Frignano
et Montembellium, Buxeta et Persiceta, Bononiam et
and Monteveglio Busseto and Persiceto Bologna and
Pentapolim Auximumque invasit. Pari quoque modo tunc
the-Pentapolis and-Osimo invaded in-equal also manner then
et Sutrium pervasit. Sed post aliquod dies iterum Romanis
also Sutri overran but after some days again to-the-Romans
redditum est. Per idem tempus Leo augustus ad peiora
returned it-was through the-same time Leo augustus to worse-things
progressus est, ita ut conpelleret omnes Constantinopolim
advanced has so that he-compelled all at-Constantinople
habitantes tam vi quam blandimentis, ut deponerent
dwelling as-much by-force as by-blandishments that they-should-take-down
ubicumque haberentur imagines tam Salvatoris quamque
wherever they-were-had the-images as-much of-the-Savior as
eius sanctae genetricis vel omnium sanctorum, easque in
of-his holy mother or of-all saints and-them into
medium civitatis incendio concremari fecit. Et quia plerique
the-middle of-the-city by-fire to-be-burned caused and because very-many
ex populo tale scelus fieri praepediebant, aliquanti ex
of the-people such a-crime to-be-done were-hindering some of
eis capite truncati, alii parte corporis multati sunt. Cuius
them by-the-head cut-off others in-part of-the-body punished were to-whose
errori Germanus patriarcha non consentiens, a propria sede
error Germanus patriarch not consenting from his-own see
depulsus est, et eius in loco Anastasius presbiter ordinatus est.
driven was and his in place Anastasius presbyter ordained was

De Romuald Beneventano duce et Gisulfo, filio eius

L · ROMUALD AND HIS WIVES

Romuald, duke of Benevento, marries Gumperga, daughter of Liutprand's sister Aurona, and names their son Gisulf after his father. Afterward he has another wife, Ranigunda, daughter of Gaidoald of Brescia.

Romoald denique dux Beneventi uxorem sortitus est Gumperga
Romuald finally duke of-Benevento a-wife obtained has Gumperga
nomine, quae fuit filia Auronae, Liutprandi regis sororis.
by-name who was the-daughter of-Aurona of-Liutprand king of-the-sister
De qua filium genuit, quem nomine sui patris Gisulfum
from whom a-son he-begot whom by-the-name of-his father Gisulf
appellavit. Habuit rursum post hanc et aliam coniugem
he-called he-had again after her also another wife
nomine Ranigundam, filiam Gaidualdi Brexiani ducis.
by-name Ranigunda daughter of-Gaidoald of-Brescia duke

De inimicitiis Pemmonis contra Calixtum patriarcham

LI · PEMMO AGAINST CALLISTUS

The patriarch Callistus, resenting that a bishop lives with the duke at Friuli, drives Bishop Amator out and takes his house. Pemmo seizes Callistus, nearly throws him into the sea, and keeps him in prison, and Liutprand gives the duchy to Pemmo's son Ratchis. At judgment Aistulf nearly strikes the king, and Pemmo's men are seized, all but Herfemar, who fights his way to Saint Michael's.

Gravis sane per idem tempus inter Pemmonem ducem
heavy truly through the-same time between Pemmo duke
et Calistum patriarcham discordiae rixa surrexit. Causa
and Callistus patriarch of-discord a-quarrel arose the-cause
autem huius discordiae ista fuit. Adveniens anteriore tempore
moreover of-this discord this was arriving in-earlier time
Fidentius episcopus de castro Iuliensi, cum voluntate
Fidentius bishop from the-fort of-Julium with the-will
superiorum ducum intra Foroiulani castri muros habitavit
of-the-earlier dukes within of-the-Friulian fort the-walls dwelt
ibique sui episcopatus sedem statuit. Quo vita decidente,
and-there of-his episcopate the-seat established who from-life departing
Amator in eius loco episcopus ordinatus est. Usque ad
Amator in his place bishop ordained was all-the-way to
eundem enim diem superiores patriarchae, quia in Aquileia
the-same for day the-earlier patriarchs because in Aquileia
propter Romanorum incursionem habitare minime poterant,
on-account-of of-the-Romans the-incursion to-dwell by-no-means could
sedem non in Foroiuli, sed in Cormones habebant. Quod
the-seat not in Friuli but in Cormons had which
Calisto, qui erat nobilitate conspicuus, satis displicuit, ut in
to-Callistus who was in-nobility conspicuous very displeased that in

eius diocesi cum duce et Langobardis episcopus habitaret
his diocese with the-duke and the-Lombards a-bishop should-dwell
et ipse tantum vulgo sociatus vitam duceret.
and he-himself only with-the-common-people associated life should-lead
Quid plura? Contra eundem Amatorem episcopum egit
what more against the-same Amator bishop he-acted
eumque de Foroiuli expulit atque in illius domo sibi
and-him from Friuli expelled and in his house for-himself
habitationem statuit. Hac de causa Pemmo dux contra eundem
a-dwelling established this for reason Pemmo duke against the-same
patriarcham cum multis nobilibus Langobardis consilium iniit
patriarch with many noble Lombards counsel entered
adprehensumque eum ad castellum Potium, quod supra mare
and-seized him to the-fortress Potium which above the-sea
situm est, duxit indeque eum in mare praecipitare voluit,
situated is led and-thence him into the-sea to-cast-down wished
sed tamen Deo inhibente minime fecit; intra carcerem
but yet God restraining by-no-means did within prison
tamen eum retentum pane tribulationis sustentavit. Quod
yet him held with-the-bread of-tribulation sustained which
rex Liutprand audiens, in magnam iram exarsit, ducatumque
king Liutprand hearing into great anger blazed and-the-duchy
Pemmoni auferens, Ratchis, eius filium, in eius loco ordinavit.
from-Pemmo taking-away Ratchis his son in his place ordained
Tunc Pemmo cum suis disposuit, ut in Sclavorum
then Pemmo with his-men arranged that into of-the-Slavs
patriam fugeret; sed Ratchis, eius filius, a rege supplicavit
the-fatherland he-should-flee but Ratchis his son of the-king besought
patremque in regis gratiam reduxit. Accepta itaque Pemmo
and-the-father into of-the-king the-favor brought-back received and-so Pemmo
fiducia, quod nihil mali pateretur, ad regem cum omnibus
confidence that nothing of-evil he-would-suffer to the-king with all

Langobardis, quibus consilium habuerat, perrexit. Tunc rex
the-Lombards with-whom counsel he-had-had went then the-king
in iudicio residens, Pemmonem et eius duos filios Ratchait
in judgment sitting Pemmo and his two sons Ratchait
et Aistulfum Ratchis concedens, eos post suam sedem
and Aistulf to-Ratchis granting them behind his seat
consistere praecepit. Rex vero elevata voce omnes illos qui
to-stand ordered the-king but raised the-voice all those who
Pemmoni adhaeserant nominative conprehendere iussit. Tunc
to-Pemmo had-adhered by-name to-seize ordered then
Aistulfum dolorem non ferens, evaginato pene gladio rege
Aistulf the-pain not bearing drawn nearly the-sword the-king
percutere voluit, nisi eum Ratchis, suus germanus, cohibuisset.
to-strike wished unless him Ratchis his brother had-restrained
Hoc modo his Langobardis conprehensis, Herfemar, qui unus
in-this manner these Lombards seized Herfemar who one
ex eis fuerat, evaginato gladio, multis se insequentibus,
of them had-been drawn the-sword many himself pursuing
ipse se viriliter defensans, in basilica beati Michahelis
he-himself himself manfully defending into the-basilica of-blessed Michael
confugit, ac deinde regis indulgentia solus inpunitatem
fled and then of-the-king by-indulgence alone impunity
promeruit, ceteris longo tempore in vinculis excruciatis.
earned the-others for-long time in chains tormented

Bellum Ratchis contra Sclavos

LII · RATCHIS AGAINST THE SLAVS

Ratchis, duke of Friuli, invades Carniola and ravages it. When the Slavs fall on him before he has his lance, he clubs to death the first man to meet him.

Ratchis denique aput Foroiuli dux, ut dixeramus, effectus,
Ratchis finally at Friuli duke as we-had-said made
in Carniolam Sclavorum patriam cum suis ingressus,
into Carniola of-the-Slavs the-fatherland with his-men having-entered
magnam multitudinem Sclavorum interficiens, eorum omnia
a-great multitude of-the-Slavs killing their all-things
devastavit. Ubi cum Sclavi super eum subito inruissent, et
devastated where when the-Slavs upon him suddenly had-rushed and
ipse adhuc lanceam suam ab armigero non abstulisset,
he-himself still lance his from the-armor-bearer not had-taken
eum qui primus ei occurrit clava, quam manu gestabat,
him who first him met with-a-club which in-hand he-carried
percutiens, eius vitam extincxit.
striking his life put-out

Quomodo rex Liutprand Pipino, Caroli regis filium, capillum tetigit

LIII · LIUTPRAND CUTS PIPPIN'S HAIR

Charles, prince of the Franks, sends his son Pippin to Liutprand to have his hair cut by custom. Liutprand cuts his hair, becoming his father in this way, and sends him back with royal gifts.

Circa haec tempora Carolus princeps Francorum Pipinum suum
around these times Charles prince of-the-Franks Pippin his
filium ad Liutprandum direxit, ut eius iuxta morem capillum
son to Liutprand directed that his according-to the-custom hair
susciperet. Qui eius caesariem incidens, ei pater effectus
he-should-take who his locks cutting to-him father made
est multisque eum ditatum regiis muneribus genitori remisit.
was and-with-many him enriched royal gifts to-the-father sent-back

Sarraceni rursum Gallias repetentes a Francis superantur, et quomodo Liutprand in solacium Francorum ivit

LIV · THE SARACENS IN GAUL, AND LIUTPRAND'S WARS

Charles beats the Saracens near Narbonne, and when they take Arles he asks Liutprand's help, at whose coming they flee. Liutprand always wins against the Romans, except at Rimini in his absence and at Pilleo; at Ravenna the Venetians capture Hildeprand and kill Peredeo. When the Romans under Agatho of Perugia try to take Bologna, Walcari, Peredeo, and Rotcari rout them.

Per idem tempus Sarracenorum exercitus rursum in Galliam
through the-same time of-the-Saracens the-army again into Gaul
introiens, multam devastationem fecit. Contra quos Carolus
entering much devastation made against whom Charles
non longe a Narbone bellum committens, eos sicut et prius
not far from Narbonne battle joining them as also before
maxima caede prostravit. Iterato Sarraceni Gallorum fines
with-very-great slaughter laid-low again the-Saracens of-the-Gauls the-borders
ingressi, usque ad Provinciam venerunt, et capta Arelate,
having-entered all-the-way to Provence came and taken Arles
omnia circumquaque demoliti sunt. Tunc Carolus legatos cum
all-things round-about demolished have then Charles envoys with
muneribus ad Liutprandum regem mittens, ab eo contra
gifts to Liutprand king sending from him against
Sarracenos auxilium poposcit; qui nihil moratus cum omni
the-Saracens help demanded who nothing having-delayed with all
Langobardorum exercitu in eius adiutorium properavit. Quo
of-the-Lombards the-army to his help hastened which
conperto gens Sarracenorum mox ab illis regionibus aufugit;
learned the-nation of-the-Saracens soon from those regions fled

Liutprandus vero cum omni suo exercitu ad Italiam rediit. Multa
Liutprand but with all his army to Italy returned many
idem regnator contra Romanos bella gessit, in quibus semper
the-same ruler against the-Romans wars waged in which always
victor extitit, praeter quod semel in Arimino eo absente eius
victor he-proved except that once at Rimini him being-absent his
exercitus caesus est, et alia vice, cum aput vicum Pilleum,
army slain was and another turn when at the-village Pilleo
rege in Pentapoli demorante, magna multitudo horum qui
the-king in the-Pentapolis staying a-great multitude of-those who
regi munuscula vel exenia vel singularum ecclesiarum
to-the-king little-gifts or presents or of-individual churches
benedictiones deferebant, a Romanis inruentibus caesa vel
blessings were-bringing by the-Romans rushing slain or
capta est. Rursus cum Ravennam Hildeprandus, regis
captured was again when Ravenna Hildeprand of-the-king
nepus, et Peredeo Vicentinus dux optinerent, inruentibus
nephew and Peredeo of-Vicenza duke held rushing
subito Veneticis, Hildeprandus ab eis captus est, Peredeo
suddenly the-Venetians Hildeprand by them captured was Peredeo
viriliter pugnans occubuit. Insequenti quoque tempore Romani,
manfully fighting fell in-the-following also time the-Romans
elatione solita turgidi, congregati universaliter, habentes in
with-pride accustomed swollen gathered universally having at
capite Agathonem Perusinorum ducem, venerunt ut Bononiam
the-head Agatho of-the-Perugians duke came that Bologna
conprehenderent, ubi tunc Walcari, Peredeo et Rotcari
they-might-seize where then Walcari Peredeo and Rotcari
morabantur in castris. Qui super Romanos inruentes, multam
were-staying in camp who upon the-Romans rushing much
de eis stragem fecerunt reliquosque fugam petere conpulerunt.
of them slaughter made and-the-rest flight to-seek compelled

De Transamundo duce Spoletino et Gisulfo Beneventano et Gregorio et regno Hilprandi

LV · TRANSAMUND, GREGORY, AND HILDEPRAND

Transamund rebels and flees to Rome, and Hilderic is made duke of Spoleto in his place. At Benevento the people save the boy Gisulf from a plot; Liutprand takes him away to rear and marry, and makes his nephew Gregory duke there. When Liutprand falls ill, the Lombards raise his nephew Hildeprand as king, and a cuckoo lights on his pike, which wise men read as an omen of a useless reign. Liutprand takes this ill but recovers and keeps Hildeprand as partner, and Transamund returns, kills Hilderic, and rebels again.

His diebus Transamundus contra regem rebellavit. Super
in-these days Transamund against the-king rebelled upon
quem rex cum exercitu veniens, ipse Transamundus
whom the-king with an-army coming he-himself Transamund
Romam fuga petiit. In cuius loco Hildericus ordinatus est.
Rome by-flight sought in whose place Hilderic ordained was
Mortuo autem Romualdo iuniore Beneventanorum duce, qui
dead moreover Romuald the-younger of-the-Beneventans duke who
viginti et sex ducatum tenuerat annis, Gisulfus, eius filius
twenty and six the-duchy had-held years Gisulf his son
adhuc parvolus, remansit. Contra quem aliqui insurgentes,
still little remained against whom some rising-up
eum moliti sunt extinguere; sed Beneventanorum populus,
him strove have to-kill but of-the-Beneventans the-people
qui suis ductoribus semper fidelis extitit, eos perimerunt,
which to-its leaders always faithful proved them killed
sui ducis vitam servantes. Qui Gisulfus dum adhuc propter
of-its duke the-life preserving who Gisulf while still on-account-of
aetatem puerilem idoneus ad tantum populum regendum non
age boyish fit for so-great a-people to-be-ruled not

esset, Liutprand rex Beneventum tunc veniens, eum exinde
he-was Liutprand king to-Benevento then coming him thence
abstulit et aput Beneventum suum nepotem Gregorium
took-away and at Benevento his nephew Gregory
ducem ordinavit, cui in matrimonio uxor sociata Giselperga
duke ordained to-whom in marriage a-wife joined Giselperga
nomine fuit. Ita rex Liutprand rebus conpositis ad suum
by-name was thus king Liutprand matters settled to his
solium remeavit; Gisulfumque suum nepotem paterna pietate
throne returned and-Gisulf his nephew with-fatherly piety
erudiens, ei Scaunipergam nobili ortam progenie in
educating to-him Scauniperga from-noble sprung lineage in
matrimonium iunxit. Ipse rex eo tempore in langorem
marriage joined he-himself the-king at-that time into sickness
decidens, morti adproximavit. Quem Langobardi vita excedere
falling to-death drew-near whom the-Lombards from-life to-depart
existimantes, eius nepotem Hildeprandum foras muros civitatis
thinking his nephew Hildeprand outside the-walls of-the-city
ad basilicam sanctae Dei genetricis, quae ad Perticas dicitur,
at the-basilica of-the-holy of-God mother which at-the Poles is-called
regem levaverunt. Cui dum contum, sicut moris est,
king raised to-whom when the-pike as of-custom is
traderent, in eius conti summitate cuculus avis volitando
they-were-handing on his of-the-pike top a-cuckoo bird flying
veniens insedit. Tunc aliquibus prudentibus hoc portentu
coming settled then to-some prudent-men by-this portent
visum est significari, eius principatum inutilem fore. Rex
seemed it-was to-be-signified his rule useless to-be the-king
autem Liutprand cum hoc cognovisset, non aequo animo
moreover Liutprand when this he-had-learned not with-even mind
accepit; tamen de infirmitate convalescens, eum regni sui
took-it yet from the-infirmity recovering him of-kingdom his

consortem habuit. Evolutis dehinc aliquod annis, Transamundus,
partner had elapsed thereafter some years Transamund
qui Romam fugerat, Spoletium rediens, Hildericum extinxit
who to-Rome had-fled to-Spoleto returning Hilderic killed
rursumque contra regem rebellionis audaciam sumpsit.
and-again against the-king of-rebellion the-daring took-up

Quia, mortuo Gregorio, Godscalcus in Benevento dux factus est, et quomodo Liutprand bellum in Pentapoli gessit

LVI · GODESCALC, AND THE FIGHT IN THE PENTAPOLIS

Gregory dies after seven years, and Godescalc becomes duke of Benevento. Liutprand marches again toward Spoleto, and in a forest between Fano and Forum Sempronii the Spoletans and Romans do his army great harm. He sets Ratchis and Aistulf in the rear, where they bear the whole weight of the fight. Ratchis unhorses Berto and lets him crawl away, and Aistulf, attacked on a bridge, throws one man off it and kills the other.

At vero Gregorius dum aput Beneventum annis septem
but indeed Gregory when at Benevento for-years seven
ducatum gessisset, vitam exemptus est. Post cuius obitum
the-duchy had-held of-life deprived was after whose death
Godescalcus dux effectus, annis tribus Beneventanis praefuit;
Godescalc duke made for-years three over-the-Beneventans presided
cui in coniugio uxor sociata nomine Anna fuit. Rex igitur
to-whom in marriage a-wife joined by-name Anna was the-king therefore
Liutprand talia de Spoletio sive Benevento audiens, rursum
Liutprand such-things about Spoleto or Benevento hearing again
cum exercitu Spoletium petiit. Qui Pentapolim veniens, dum
with an-army Spoleto sought who to-the-Pentapolis coming while

a Fano civitatem Forum Simphronii pergeret, in silva, quae
from Fano to-the-city Forum of-Sempronius was-going in the-forest which
in medio est, Spoletini se cum Romanis sociantes, magna
in the-middle is the-Spoletans themselves with the-Romans allying great
incommoda regis exercitui intulerunt. Qui rex in novissimo
harms of-the-king on-the-army inflicted which king in the-last
loco Ratchis ducem et eius fratrem Aistulfum cum Foroiulanis
place Ratchis duke and his brother Aistulf with the-Friulians
constituit. Supra quos Spoletini et Romani inruentes, aliquos
stationed upon whom the-Spoletans and the-Romans rushing some
ex eis vulneraverunt. Sed tamen Ratchis cum suo germano
of them wounded but yet Ratchis with his brother
et aliquibus viris fortissimis omne illud pugnae pondus
and some men most-brave all that of-the-fight weight
sustinentes viriliterque certantes, multisque trucidatis, se
sustaining and-manfully contending and-many slaughtered themselves
suosque exinde, praeter ut dixi paucis sauciatis, eximerunt.
and-their-men thence except as I-said few wounded brought-out
Ibi quidam Spoletinorum fortissimus Berto nomine nominative
there a-certain of-the-Spoletans most-brave Berto by-name expressly
Ratchis adclamans, armis instructus super eum venit. Quem
Ratchis calling-out with-arms equipped upon him came whom
Ratchis subito percutiens, equo deiecit. Cumque eum
Ratchis suddenly striking from-the-horse threw and-when him
eius socii perimere vellent, eum pietate solita fugere
his companions to-kill wished him with-piety accustomed to-flee
permisit. Qui manibus pedibusque reptans, silvam ingressus
he-permitted who with-hands and-feet creeping the-forest having-entered
evasit. Super Aistulfum vero in quodam ponte duo fortissimi
escaped upon Aistulf but on a-certain bridge two most-brave
Spoletini a tergo venientes, unum eorum aversa cuspide
Spoletans from behind coming one of-them with-turned point

feriens de eodem ponte deiecit, alterum vero, subito ad
striking from the-same bridge threw-down the-other but suddenly to
eum conversus, vita privatum post socium mersit.
him turned of-life deprived after the-companion sank

LVII · LIUTPRAND AT SPOLETO AND BENEVENTO

Liutprand drives Transamund from Spoleto, makes him a cleric, and sets his nephew Agiprand in his place. As he hastens to Benevento, Godescalc tries to flee to Greece but is killed boarding his ship by Gisulf's faithful men, and his wife is carried to Constantinople.

At vero Liutprand Spoletium perveniens, Transamundum
but indeed Liutprand to-Spoleto arriving Transamund
ducatum expulit eumque clericum fecit. Cuius in
from-the-duchy expelled and-him a-cleric made of-whom in
loco Agiprandum, suum nepotem, constituit. Cum vero
the-place Agiprand his nephew appointed when indeed
Beneventum properaret, Gotscalcus, auditu eius adventu,
to-Benevento he-was-hastening Godescalc heard of-his coming
navem conscendere atque in Greciam fugere molitus est. Qui
a-ship to-board and into Greece to-flee strove has who
postquam uxorem et cuncta supellectilem suam in navi
after the-wife and all household-goods his into the-ship
inposuisset et novissime ipse ascendere vellet, inruentibus
he-had-put and last he-himself to-board wished rushing
Beneventanis Gisulfi fidelibus, extinctus est. Uxor sane illius
the-Beneventans of-Gisulf the-faithful killed he-was the-wife truly his
cum omnibus quae habebat Constantinopolim perlata est.
with all which she-had to-Constantinople carried was

Liutprand restores Gisulf at Benevento and founds many churches and monasteries, among them Saint Peter in Golden Heaven outside Pavia, and an oratory in his palace with priests for the daily offices. Holy men flourish in his time: Baodolinus, who greets the king's messenger knowing the wounded nephew dead; Teudelapius of Verona; and Peter, bishop of Pavia. Liutprand dies after thirty-one years and seven months: wise, pious, a lover of peace, mighty in war, unlettered but the equal of philosophers.

Tunc rex Liutprandum Beneventum perveniens, Gisulfum,
then king Liutprand to-Benevento arriving Gisulf
suum nepotem, iterum in loco proprio ducem constituit.
his nephew again in place own duke appointed
Rebusque ita conpositis, ad suum palatium remeavit. Hic
and-matters thus settled to his palace returned this
gloriosissimus rex multas in Christi honore per singula loca
most-glorious king many in of-Christ honor through individual places
ubi degere solebat basilicas construxit. Hic monasterium
where to-live he-was-wont basilicas built he the-monastery
beati Petri, quod foras muros Ticinensis civitatis situm
of-blessed Peter which outside the-walls of-the-Ticinese city situated
est et Caelum Aureum appellatur, instituit. In summa
is and Heaven Golden is-called established on the-top
quoque Bardonis Alpe monasterium quod Bercetum dicitur
also of-Bardo Alp a-monastery which Berceto is-called
aedificavit. In Olonna nihilominus suo proastio miro
he-built at Olona nonetheless his suburban-estate with-wondrous
opere in honore sancti Anastasii martyris Christo domicilium
work in honor of-holy Anastasius martyr for-Christ a-dwelling
statuit, in quo et monasterium fecit. Pari etiam modo
established in which also a-monastery he-made in-equal also manner

multa per loca singula divina templa instituit. Intra suum
many through places individual divine temples he-established within his
quoque palatium oraculum domini Salvatoris aedificavit et
also palace an-oratory of-the-Lord Savior he-built and
quod nulli alii reges habuerant, sacerdotes et clericos
what no other kings had-had priests and clerics
instituit, qui ei cotidie divina officia decantarent. Huius
he-established who for-him daily the-divine offices should-chant of-this
regis temporibus fuit in loco cui Forum nomen est,
king in-the-times there-was in the-place whose Forum name is
iuxta fluvium Tanarum, vir mirae sanctitatis Baodolinus
beside the-river Tanaro a-man of-wondrous holiness Baodolinus
nomine, qui multis miraculis, Christi gratia suffragante,
by-name who with-many miracles of-Christ the-grace supporting
refulsit. Qui saepe futura praedixit, absentia quoque
shone-forth who often things-to-come foretold things-absent also
quasi praesentia nuntiavit. Denique cum rex Liutprand in
as-if present announced finally when king Liutprand into
Urbem silvam venatum isset, unus ex eius comitibus cervum
Urbs forest to-hunt had-gone one of his companions a-stag
sagitta percutere nisus, eiusdem regis nepotem, hoc
with-an-arrow to-strike having-striven of-the-same king the-nephew that
est sororis eius filium, Aufusum nomine, nolens sauciavit.
is of-sister his the-son Aufusus by-name unwilling wounded
Quod rex cernens — valde enim eundem puerum
which the-king seeing greatly for the-same boy
amabat — cum lacrimis eius incommodum lamentari coepit
he-loved with tears his misfortune to-lament began
statimque unum e suis equitem misit, qui ad virum Dei
and-at-once one of his-men horseman sent who to the-man of-God
Baodolinum curreret eumque peteret, ut pro vita eiusdem
Baodolinus should-run and-him should-ask that for the-life of-the-same

pueri Christum supplicaret. Qui cum ad servum Dei
boy Christ he-should-beseech who when to the-servant of-God
pergeret, puer defunctus est. Cui Christi famulus ad se
he-was-going the-boy died has to-whom of-Christ the-servant to himself
pervenienti ita dixit: 'Scio, quam ob causam veneris; sed
arriving thus said I-know what for reason you-have-come but
illud quod postulare missus es iam fieri non potest,
that which to-ask sent you-are now to-be-done not can
quia puer ille defunctus est'. Quod cum his qui missus
because the-boy that died has which when he who sent
fuerat regi quod a servo Dei audierat renuntiasset,
had-been to-the-king what from the-servant of-God he-had-heard had-reported
rex, licet doluerit, quod effectum supplicationis suae
the-king though he-grieved that the-effect of-supplication his
habere non potuit, tamen quia vir Domini Baodolinus
to-have not he-could yet that the-man of-the-Lord Baodolinus
prophetiae spiritum habuerit, aperte cognovit. Huic quoque
of-prophecy the-spirit had openly recognized to-him also
non dissimilis aput Veronensem civitatem Teudelapius nomine
not unlike at the-Veronese city Teudelapius by-name
fuit, qui inter miranda quae patrabat praesago etiam
was who among the-wonders which he-wrought with-prophetic also
spiritu multa quae erant ventura praedixit. Eo quoque
spirit many-things which were to-come foretold at-that also
tempore floruit vita vel actibus Ticinensis ecclesiae episcopus
time flourished in-life and in-deeds of-the-Ticinese church bishop
Petrus, qui quia regis erat consanguineus, ab Ariperto
Peter who because of-the-king he-was kinsman by Aripert
quondam rege aput Spoletium exilio fuerat retrusus.
once king at Spoleto into-exile had-been thrust-away
Huic beati martyris Savini ecclesiam frequentanti isdem
to-him of-blessed martyr Savinus the-church frequenting the-same

venerabilis martyr praenuntiavit, quod episcopus aput Ticinum
venerable martyr foretold that bishop at Pavia
futurus esset. Qui postea, cum factum fuisset, basilicam
about-to-be he-was who afterward when done it-had-been a-basilica
eidem beato martyri Savino in solo proprio aput eandem
to-the-same blessed martyr Savinus on ground own at the-same
civitatem construxit. Hic inter reliquas optimae vitae quas
city built he among the-other of-best life which
habuit virtutes etiam virginitatis flore decoratus enituit.
he-had virtues also of-virginity with-the-flower adorned shone-out
Cuius nos aliquod miraculum, quod posteriori tempore
of-whom we some miracle which in-later time
gestum est, in loco proprio ponemus. At vero Liutprand,
done was in place its-own shall-put but indeed Liutprand
postquam triginta et uno annis septemque mensibus regnum
after thirty and one years and-seven months the-kingdom
optenuit, iam aetate maturus huius vitae cursum explevit;
he-held now in-age ripe of-this life the-course completed
corpusque eius in basilica beati Adriani martyris, ubi
and-body his in the-basilica of-blessed Hadrian martyr where
et eius genitor requiescit, sepultum est. Fuit autem vir
also his father rests buried was he-was moreover a-man
multae sapientiae, consilio sagax, pius admodum et pacis
of-much wisdom in-counsel shrewd pious very and of-peace
amator, belli praepotens, delinquentibus clemens, castus,
a-lover in-war very-powerful to-wrongdoers merciful chaste
pudicus, orator pervigil, elemosinis largus, litterarum
modest a-man-of-prayer wakeful in-alms generous of-letters
quidem ignarus, sed philosophis aequandus, nutritor gentis,
indeed ignorant but to-philosophers to-be-equaled nourisher of-the-nation
legum augmentator. Hic initio regni sui Baioariorum
of-the-laws augmenter he at-the-beginning of-reign his of-the-Bavarians

plurima castra cepit, plus semper orationibus quam armis
very-many forts took more always in-prayers than in-arms
fidens, maxima semper cura Francorum Avarumque pacem
trusting with-very-great always care of-the-Franks and-of-the-Avars the-peace
custodiens.
keeping
